July 1983 Volume 2 $2.00

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

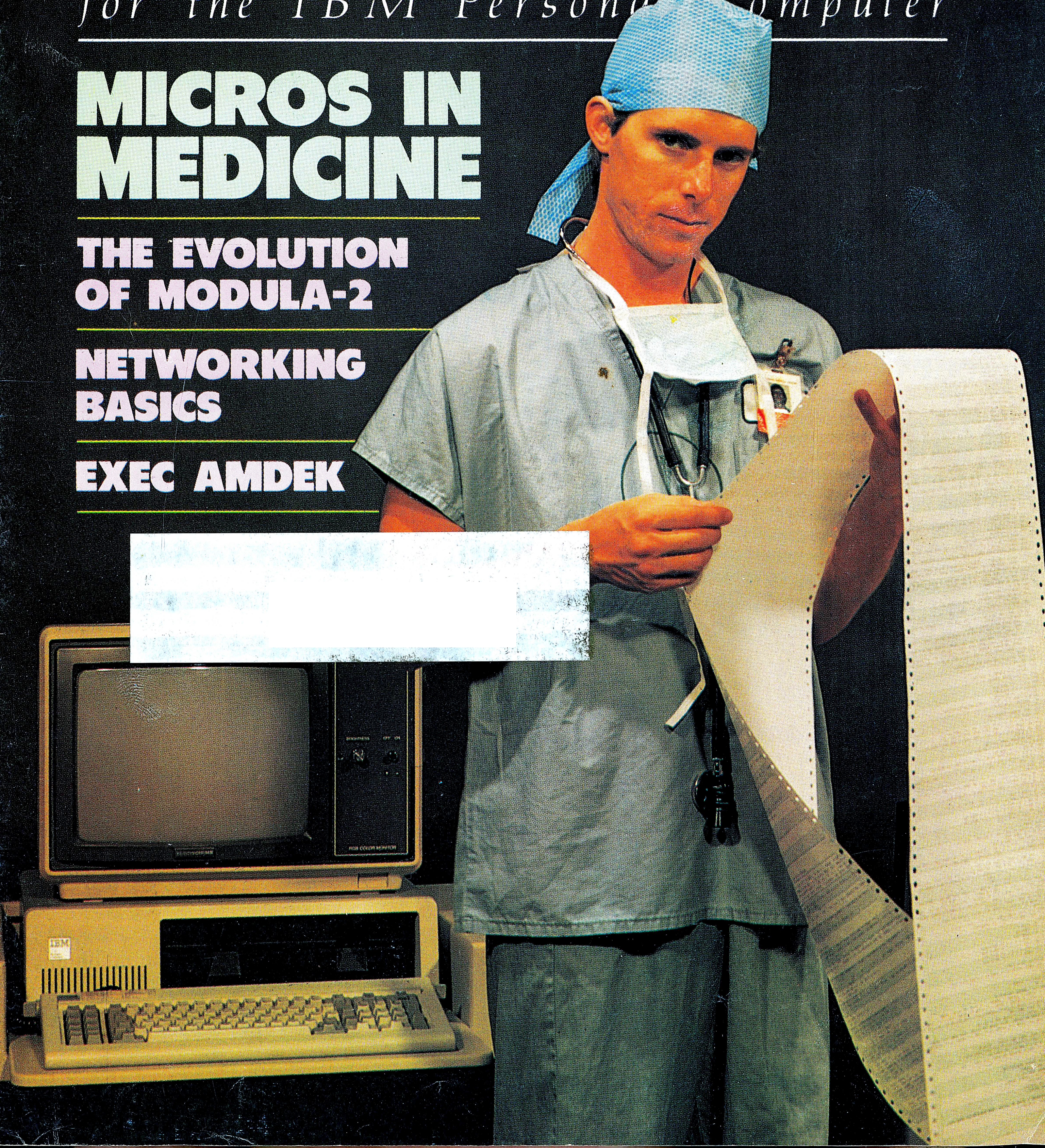
MICROS IN MEDICINE

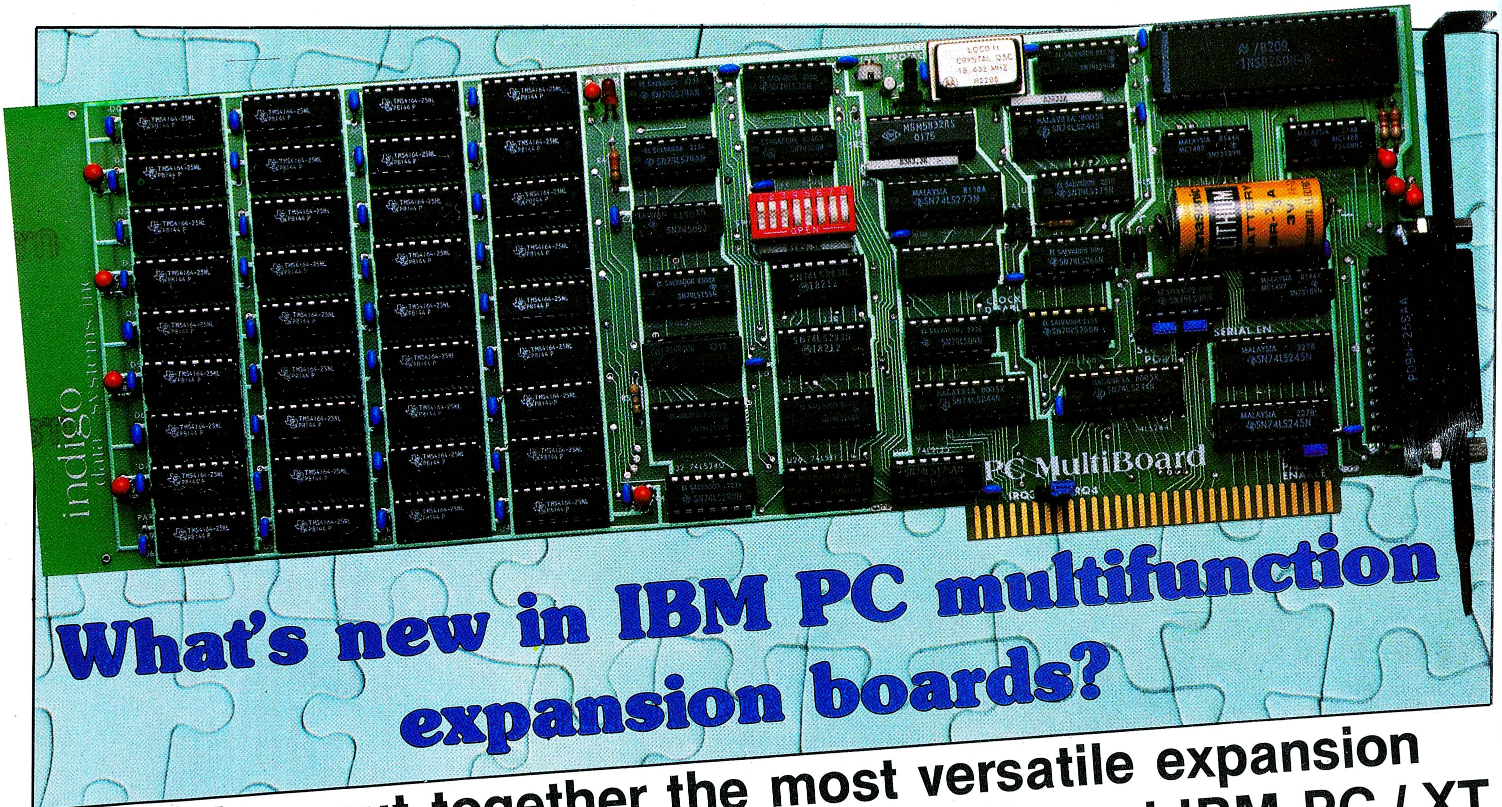
THE EVOLUTION OF MODULA-2

NETWORKING BASICS

EXEC AMDEK

[redacted]





What's new in IBM PC multifunction expansion boards?

Indigo has put together the most versatile expansion product available for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT

the PC MultiPak™

- **4 most requested hardware functions**
  The PC MultiPak™ includes a serial communications port, a real time clock calendar with a 10 year lithium battery, 0 to 256K memory and optional parallel printer port. The PC MultiPak™ without the parallel printer port is ideal for users with the IBM monochrome/parallel printer adapter installed.
- **Zero memory option**
  The PC MultiPak™ is available with no memory installed so you can fill your I / O needs today and still have memory expansion capability to an additional 256K for your future needs. This makes the PC MultiPak™ the perfect mate for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT.
- **4 software packages**
  The PC MultiPak™ includes our four most popular software packages. **Drive-It™** converts 32K to 320K of extra memory into an ultra-fast drive. **Spool-It™** utilizes up to 64K of extra memory as a printer buffer and eliminates valuable time spent waiting on the printer. **Print-It™** prints any IBM text or graphics screen to Epson printers. **Color-It™** prints screens to IDS printers. Color images can be printed on IDS prism printers. These software programs have received critical acclaim in Infoworld, Softalk, PC Age and Creative Computing magazines. Thousands have been sold separately. This $200 retail value is included in the PC MultiPak™ at no additional charge. DOS 2.0 Compatible.
- **5 year warranty**

$297
- ALL SOFTWARE INCLUDED
- NO INSTALLED MEMORY

64K-$365, 128K-$432, 192K-$499, 256K-$565
PARALLEL PORT OPTION ADD $30

64K MEMORY EXPANSION KIT $87

SOFTWARE AVAILABLE SEPARATELY
DRIVE-IT $59.95, **SPOOL-IT** $44.95
PRINT-IT $44.95, **COLOR-IT** $49.95

indigo
data systems, inc.

VISA

Indigo products may be found at **ComputerLand** and other fine stores.
Dealer And Customer Inquiries call TOLL FREE 1-800-231-9480
In Texas Call Collect (713) 488-8186

100 E. NASA Rd. 1, Suite 106, Webster, Texas 77598

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

Features

Exec Amdek
Success from the word Go.
David Hunter 26

How Basic Stores Variables
Second in a series on the inner workings of IBM Basic.
Gary Little 33

The Dregs of Computerdom
The winning entries in our April Snob Computer contest. 41

A Math Tutor for Everyone
An IBM employee puts his program in the public domain.
Jean Varven 47

A Snappy Graphics Screen Dump
More public-domain software.
Chris Lindell 51

Micros in Medicine
A pair of docs take the pc approach.
Michael Ferris 62

Put the Big Blue Logo on Your Program
A guide to IBM's software submissions policy.
Douglas Clapp 88

A Primer on Networking
Part one of a series on local area networking.
Bruce Churchill 96

Modula-2: An Answer to Ada?
A new language by the author of Pascal.
Allen Munro 109

Business Basic
Microsoft premieres seven languages.
Peter Norton 122

DOS 3.0
Multitasking is a coming attraction.
Kevin Goldstein 127

Departments

Contest 2
Crosstalk 6
Questions and Answers, by Nancy Andrews 17
Comm Lines, by Kevin Goldstein 22
Marketalk News 56
System Notebook, by Alan Boyd 72
The Profit Plot, by Jack Grushcow 80
Boards and Buses, by Steve Schmitt 91
The Basic Solution, by Joe Juhasz 105
Pascal from Begin to End, by Bruce Webster and Deirdre Wendt 118
Marketalk Reviews 131
Newspeak 137
Tradetalk 144
The Right To Assemble, by Ray Duncan 147
Beginners' Corner, by Craig Stinson 151
Bestsellers 155

In Next Month's Softalk

Exec Lotus . . . Close up with the Compaq . . . How Basic stores programs . . . On-line with the OAG . . . and more.

Index of Advertisers

Amdek Corp. 19
Ann Arbor Software 8
Apparat 104
Aspen Software 117
AST Research 78-79
Beaman Porter 21
Best Programs 107
Blaise Computing 148
Boise Computer 156
Bourbaki Inc. 141
Cameo Electronics 119
Cdex Corporation . . . . Cover 4
Classified Ads 15, 16
CMC 42-43
Computer Case Company 81
Continental Software 29
Courseware 61
Creative Computer Products 32
Cypher 92
Data Base Decisions 127
Datasmith 65
Davidson & Associates 153
Decision Support Software 16
Designer Software 151
Digital Engineering Group 66-67, 146
Ensign Software 126
E&S Software Services 147
Execuware 139
ExecSystems Corporation 15
FriendlySoft 25, 54-55
GKE Software 23
GMS Systems 14
Golden Software 143
Gourmet Software 74
Great Lakes Industries 120
Harper Business Systems 112
Hayes Microcomputer Products 102-103
Hercules Computer Technology 131
Hi Tech Computer Services 68
Howard Software Services 154
IDE Associates 12-13
Indigo Data Systems . . . . Cover 2
Individual Software 11
Information Unlimited Software 70-71
Innovative Software . . . . 77, 130, Cover 3
Institute for Scientific Information 46
The Iron Interface Group 150
KeySoftware 124
Laboratory Microsystems 58
Lifetree Software 149
Lighthouse Distributing 49
MediSoft 30
Mentor 73
Micro Investment Systems 50
Microlog 48
Micro-Mart Distributors 44
Microsoft 36, 114
Morgan Computing 128
Multisoft Corporation 85
Muse Software 110
NF Systems Ltd. 108
Northeast Expositions 40, 94-95
Omric Corporation 136
Orchid Technology 113
Orion Software 116
Panamax 17
PC TechniCorp. 82, 84
Peter Norton 91
Plantronics/Frederick Electronics 69
Professional Software 4-5
Quadram Corporation 86-87
Quest Research 28
Real-Time Computer Science Corporation 9
Rogue River Software 100
RoseSoft 93
Satori Software 99
Scion Corporation 3
Silent Butler Software 53
SilverSoft 45
SimSoft Inc. 125
Sof/Sys Inc. 83
SoftCraft 24
Software Arts 121
The Soft Warehouse 155
The Software Link 135
Software Quality Associates 133
Southwestern Data Systems 59
SSR Corporation 18
StarLogic 105
STB Systems 34-35
Stemmos Ltd. 75
Stone Software Marketing 145
Symmetric Software 132
Systemics 142
The Systems Group 39
Systems Management Associates 10
Tayco Business Forms 22
TCI Software 56
Tesserax 134
Transtar 101
Trintech 20
United Computer 7
Vista Computer Company 129
Vertex Systems 90

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer

Editor	Craig Stinson
Managing Editor	Michael Tighe
Art Director	Kevin McKeon
Associate Editor	Kevin Goldstein
News Editor	Michael Ferris
Copy Editor	Cordell Cooper
Editorial Coordinator	Betsy Barnes
Proofreaders	Harry McNeil, Judith Pfeffer
Guest Reviewers	Doug Clapp, Bruce Ascough, Diana Herron
Contributing Editors	
Assembly Language	Ray Duncan
Basic	Joe Juhasz
Financial Modeling	Jack Grushcow
Hardware	Steve Schmitt
Pascal	Bruce Webster, Deirdre Wendt
Questions and Answers	Nancy Andrews
Special Assignments	John Socha
Systems Software	Alan Boyd
Art Production	Don Robertson
Art Assistants	Michael G. Pender, Tim Durr, Lucas McClure

Softalk Publishing Inc.

Chairman	John Haller
Publisher	Al Tommervik
Editor-in-Chief	Margot Comstock Tommervik
Senior Art Director	Kurt Wahlner
Associate Publisher	Mary Sue Rennells
Director of Operations	Three Tyler
Accounting	Evelyn Burke
Accounting Assistants	Mary Jo Milam, Carla Swanson, Lois Mencsik
Book Sales	Meredith Tabor
Circulation	
Trial Subscriptions	Hal Schick, Deirdre Booth, Laurie O'Connell, Marsha Stewart
Paid Subscriptions	Pam Kelley
Dealer Sales	Judy Weinstein, Dan Yoder
Back Issues	Michael Jones
List Maintenance	Pat Adams, Tamera Moore
Assistant	Cliff Martinez
Systems	Sam Pawley
Advertising Coordinator	Linda McGuire
Assistant	Cathy Stewart
West Coast Sales	Mike Antich Softalk 11160 McCormick Street Box 60 North Hollywood CA 91603 (213) 980-5074
East Coast Sales	Ian Ross Paul McGinnis Advertising Sales 898 Broadway Massapequa, NY 11758
Midwest and Rocky Mountain Sales	Ted Rickard John Bollweg John Sienkiewicz Kevin Sullivan Market/Media Associates 435 Locust Road Wilmette, IL 60091 (313) 251-2541

Cover photo by Buzz Lawrence. Microwrap® and Microstand® furnished by Computer Furniture Systems, Glendale, CA.

Composition by Photographics, Hollywood, California. Printing by Volkmuth Printers, Saint Cloud, Minnesota.

IBM and Personal Computer are trademarks of International Business Machines, Armonk, New York.

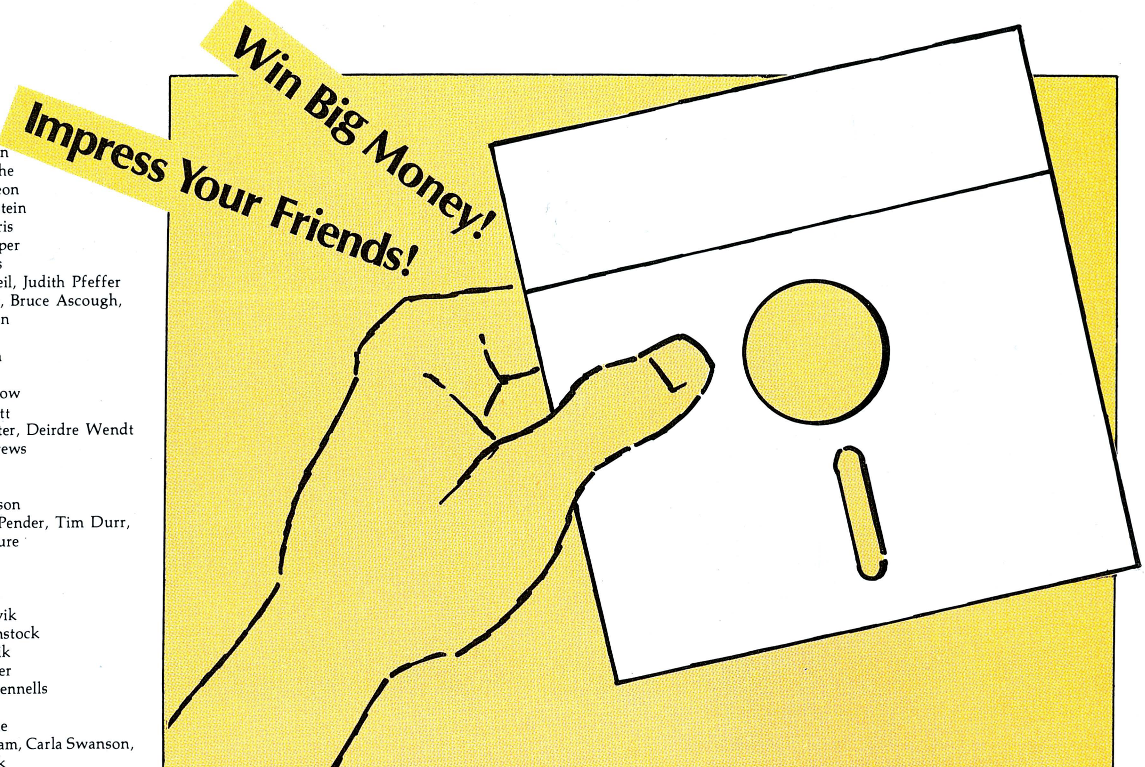
Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer. Volume 2, Number 2. Copyright © 1983 by Softalk Publishing Inc. All rights reserved. ISSN: 0733-2173. *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is published monthly by Softalk Publishing Inc., 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; telephone (213) 980-5074. Second-class postage pending at North Hollywood, California, and additional mailing offices.

Postmaster: Send address changes to Softalk/IBM, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

Subscriptions: Complimentary trial subscription to all owners of IBM Personal Computers in the USA. If you own a pc but you aren't receiving *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*, send your serial number and mailing address to Softalk/IBM Circulation, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603. Non-pc-owner subscriptions: $24 per year. Back issues (from June 1982): $3. *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is totally independent of International Business Machines.

Problems? If you haven't received your *Softalk* by the fifteenth of the month, or if you have other problems with your subscription, Hal Schick can help out. Call (213) 980-5074.

Moving? Send new address and old to Softalk/IBM Circulation, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603; telephone (213) 980-5074.


Win Big Money!
Impress Your Friends!

DESIGN THIS PACKAGE

"No calc is the best calc." That's the motto of a firm that makes *InvisiCalc*, the software novelty that doesn't ask "what if?," but "who cares?" *InvisiCalc* comes in a plain white envelope. Apparently the artwork vanished along with the floppy part of the disk.

This no-show spreadsheet has inspired our July contest. Dream up a software product—game, utility, spreadsheet, graphics, whatever—then design the package it comes in.

There are two categories: original art (pencil, paint, collage, and so on), and computer-generated art (plotter, light pen, and graphics software stuff). Please submit your entry for either category on a reasonably sized piece of paper, in the most finished form you can. Jumbo airbrush deluxe concoctions on megafine art boards are not necessary to win.

The contest will be judged on cleverness of product invented (the funny bone sits in on this one), appropriateness of graphics in relation to concept (does it have punch?), and overall quality of execution.

If your art skills are weak, what's to stop you from teaming up a killer idea with some borrowed talent? We won't tell, just as long as your entry has what it takes to win.

One winner in each category will be chosen. Each will receive one hundred dollars' worth of goodies from his local dealer. In the event of a dearth of decent entries (no more limericks, please!), only one winner will be chosen. If we get more than two pieces of great art, we'll display a few runners-up as well as the winners.

Send your art to Draw Me, Softalk/IBM, Box 60, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91603. Please include your name, address, city, state, zip, and phone number with each entry.

Postmark deadline is August 15. P.S.: No need to waste your money sending things express or registered mail; regular mail gets here quite regularly.

Name: ____________________________

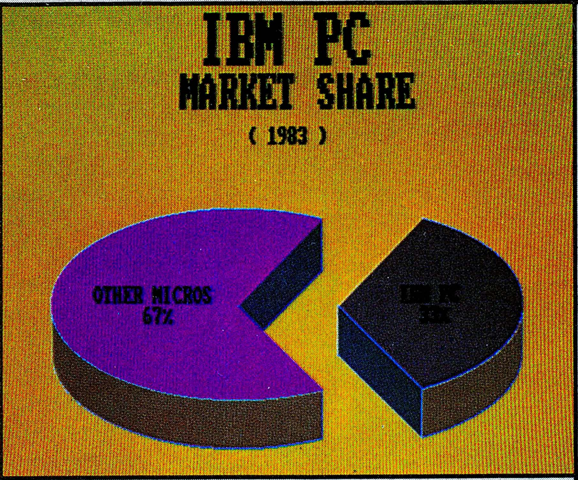
Address: ____________________________

City/State/Zip: ____________________________

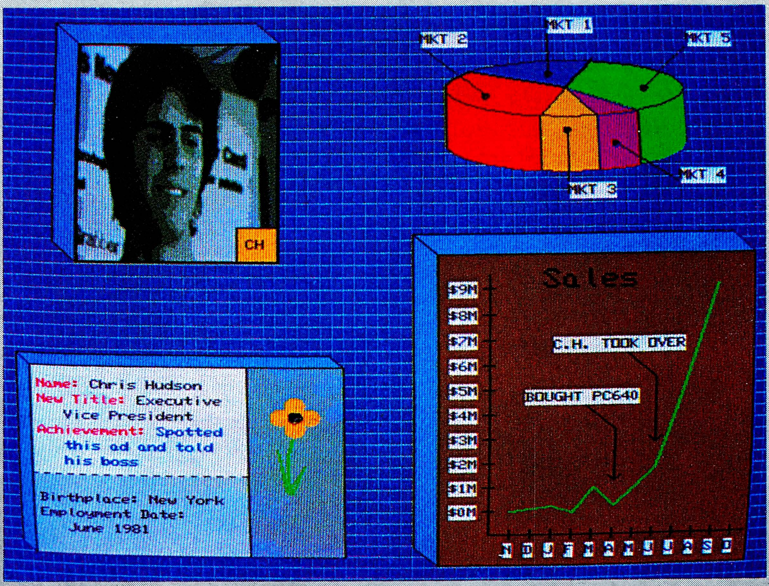
Phone: ________________

At Last!

Now there's a 640 x 480 Professional Color Graphics Board for the IBM PC...

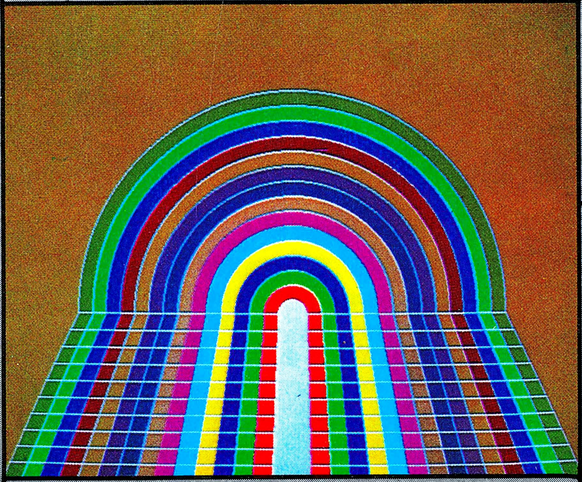


Unretouched photos shot from 13" screen with Canon AE-1 SLR at f5.6, 1 sec. using Kodachrome 25 film



Name: Chris Hudson
New Title: Executive Vice President
Achievement: Spotted this ad and told his boss

Birthplace: New York
Employment Date: June 1981



THE GOODS

Package 1	$1595
The PC640 board, the HALO* software, User's Manual, video cable	
Package 2	$2495
Package 1 + Cheetah* Fast Track (turns your PC into a full business graphics workstation)	

(High-res color CRTs also available)

*HALO is a trademark of Media Cybernetics, Inc.; Cheetah is a registered trademark of CENTEC Corp.

with

Dynamite Software!

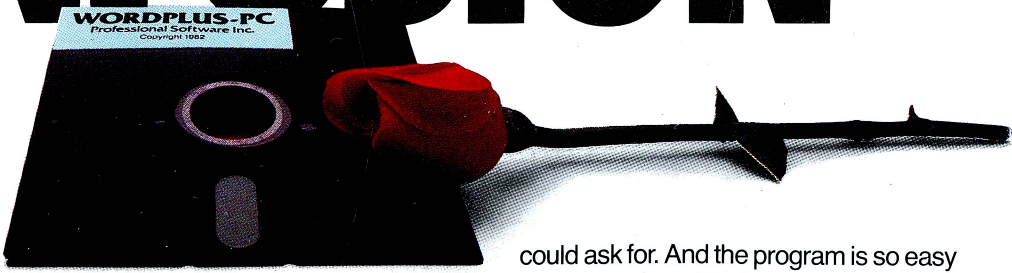
Introducing

The PC640 Professional Color™ System

640 x 480, 16 out of 4096 color hardware, the HALO* software library of 58 graphics primitives, and the Cheetah* Fast Track end-user business graphics software system

from **SCION** Corporation
Your leader in color graphics
12310 Pinecrest Road
Reston, Virginia 22091
(703) 476-6100
TWX: 710-833-0684

ANNOUNCING THE END OF WORD PROCESSOR CONFUSION



It's one confusing business, choosing a word processor. All those companies assuring you theirs is the most fantastic one of all. And leaving you to cut through all the smoke and hopefully whittle them down to the best one for you.

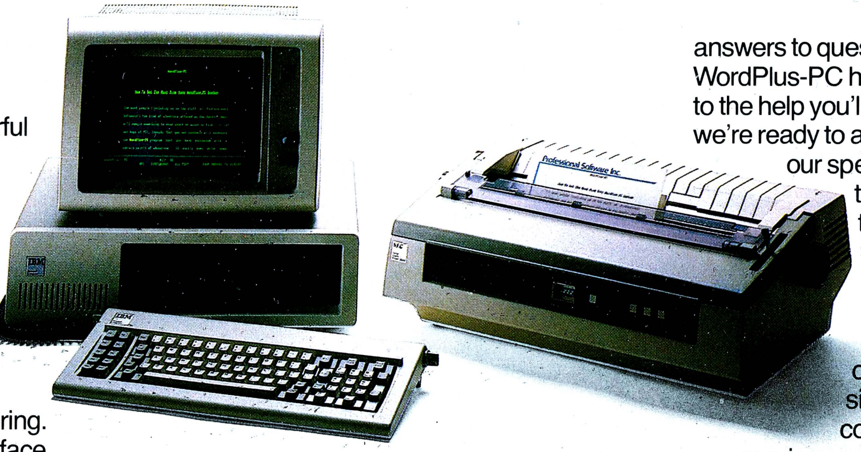
Well, we can help. If you'll just invest the next three minutes reading this, we'll tell you about a word processor that makes picking the right one a real breeze.

FIRST, A WARNING. There are two things you must do when evaluating any word processor. First, be careful. It's no secret that many of today's claims about being easy to learn and use just don't stand up to careful comparison. Watch carefully for complicated codes and programs that require "training sessions." Secondly, be selective. Buy a word processor you can use on a daily basis, not one that requires another "training session" when someone goes on vacation. In other words, be very careful to select the word processor that's absolutely the best and easiest to use. Which is what we'll now introduce you to.

WHY ONE WORD PROCESSOR MAKES THE MOST SENSE OF THEM ALL. Meet WordPlus-PC. It's the advanced, "user-oriented" software package that turns your IBM-PC computer into a word processor equipped with the sophisticated capabilities of far larger, more expensive systems.

THE REMARKABLE WORDPLUS-PC STORY. In a nutshell, it's this. WordPlus-PC was designed from the ground up to be the very latest in word processing technology. It has all the important features you could ask for. And the program is so easy to learn and use it defies comparison with other software.

HOW WE CAN BE SO SURE OF OURSELVES. We're Professional Software, a leader in word processing software with over 30,000 customers contentedly churning out letters and documents around the world on personal and business computer systems. We know precisely what a top quality word processor must do. And we've studied all the shortcomings of our competitors. That's how WordPlus-PC came to be the easiest-to-use word processor ever.



ALL THE FEATURES YOU'D EXPECT.

WordPlus-PC is both powerful and versatile. Its long list of major functions includes movement of paragraphs, global search-and-replace, and creation of multiple "boilerplate" and personal letters with the touch of a few buttons. There are 3-line headers and footers and automatic page numbering. When you underline or boldface words as you type, WordPlus-PC displays them in that form on the screen. You can merge information created by popular spread sheet programs. You'll create personal letters quickly and easily, or merge name and address information from other programs. You can easily create standard layouts for preprinted forms and use WordPlus-PC to prepare invoices or quotations. For large corporate customers, WordPlus-PC has the capability to merge information from files created by the firm's mini or mainframe computer. You can even type new documents while the system is printing other ones. And you'll find WordPlus fully compatible with virtually all popular ASCII letter-quality and dot matrix printers.

A BREEZE TO LEARN AND USE.

With WordPlus-PC's easy-to-use documentation, you'll be using your word processor right from the first minute. After an hour, you'll feel at home with all the basic functions and ready to explore the more sophisticated ones. After a few hours you'll put the manual away. There are never any complicated or confusing codes to memorize or look up. Rather, the screen's "message area" reminds you how to do what you want. WordPlus-PC's unique keyboard color coding makes things even easier. And whenever there's a question, simply press the HELP function to get back on track.

ALL THE HELP YOU NEED VIA TOLL-FREE PHONE. Learning something new goes best when you have encouragement, reassurance and answers to questions. That's how WordPlus-PC helps you learn. In addition to the help you'll get from your dealer, we're ready to assist you when you call our special toll-free number and talk to one of our carefully trained advisors. This service is available at no charge during the 90 days following receipt of your user registration card. It's all part of Professional Software's total commitment to customer service and support.

SEE WORDPLUS-PC FOR YOURSELF AT YOUR COMPUTER DEALER. Call us today. We'll answer all your questions. And we'll give you the name of the Professional Software dealership nearest you. Then go witness WordPlus-PC in action. Because once you're sitting in front of WordPlus-PC you'll quickly see where all our confidence and enthusiasm come from. After all, you already own the best personal computer. The best word processor is only $395. So call us today.

CALL US TOLL FREE:

1-800-343-4074

GUARANTEE

Professional Software Inc. guarantees its WordPlus-PC customers:

1. Free telephone assistance for 90 days after receipt of customer registration card.
2. Free updated program diskette if any software improvements are made within 90 days of purchase.

Professional Software Inc.

51 Fremont Street, Needham, MA 02194 Telephone (617) 444-5224

Dealer, distributor, OEM manufacturer, and corporate inquiries are invited. Call us at (617) 444-5224.
WordPlus-PC is a trademark of Professional Software Inc.
Specifications are subject to change without notice.
WordPlus-PC was designed and written by Andres Escallon.

crosstalk

A Solution to Scrollk.com vs. Prokey

Your article in the May issue by John Socha titled "The Scroll Lock Mystery" was very good. I punched in the Basic program and it worked very well. It is truly a nice utility.

There is, however, one very major problem for me and I gather a lot of other pc users in the crowd. Scrollk.com interferes with the really fabulous utility—Prokey, by RoseSoft. I'm sure most people know the power of this keyboard utility and I am sure those who do cannot live without it once they have gotten used to it, as I have.

The problem is that after running Scrollk.com, Prokey continues to function until you actually access the main file, Prokey.exe. This is necessary when one wants to change Prokey files, clear Prokey, and quit or enter Prokey. When that file is accessed, the computer locks up in the middle of disk drive access. Not even the warm boot is possible.

This leaves me and many others with a choice of a utility that really should be a part of DOS and one that is a part of every program I own. If you're wondering, the answer has to be Prokey.

We look to you and/or John Socha for help. His program is too good to leave lying on the disk. There must be some way to undo Scrollk.com so that Prokey.exe can be accessed. Once the Prokey command is accomplished, Scrollk.com can then be called back in to work its wonders. Please send me the little program that will undo Scrollk.com or that will fix it so it will not interfere with Prokey. Hopefully you or John himself can solve this problem.

If an answer is found, I imagine it should be published for all those that did not have time to write about the "bug."

I guess we pcers have just gotten used to having our cake and eating it too.

K. D. Bremer, Austin, TX

RoseSoft has made a change to Prokey that makes Prokey work together with Scrollk.com. We're making the revision available to any registered Prokey owner for $5. Just write us a letter and send a check or call us. Ask for version 2.20. Version 2.20 has some other new features that any Prokey user will be interested in.

David Rose
RoseSoft

Scrollk.com Kudos

May has been a very good month for me and my pc. John Socha's "The Scroll Lock Mystery" has to rank with the best of all technical articles for pc buffs. To be able to patch DOS to allow for scrolling control and then begin to understand what is actually taking place is a really great experience. Thanks, John.

As to the Exec story on AST, I would add only a customer's note of appreciation for AST's excellent service. Its newly added expansion board features providing for printer spooling and electronic disk emulation were offered free to purchasers of older boards; one had only to send in a formatted disk. If you like the speed of *WordStar* and *SuperCalc* on the pc, wait till you try them using an electronic disk.

You might want to write a story on the use of Sony Profeel monitors with the IBM pc. I have a nineteen-inch SK-1901 and, since a friend of mine designed and my son built the interface "black box" and cable, I've been very pleased with the clarity of both the RGB and composite pictures. I am still not able to get more than eight colors in RGB mode (I have seen a twelve-inch deliver all sixteen). Fortunately, however, a Sony representative, at its NCC show booth in Anaheim, California, the week of May 16, indicated that the company has developed a solution to the problem for the original nineteen-inch and twenty-five-inch monitors and will get back to me when the show is over. Apparently the deliveries in the future will have the necessary modification in place, and IBM has just come out with a cable that works with the twelve-inch Sony Profeel.

Ken Hunt, Hacienda Heights, CA

The article by John Socha, "The Scroll Lock Mystery," in the May issue contains much helpful information on the uses of the byte at 417H, but it also contains a subtle error. Socha writes that bit 7 is set when the insert state is active. Actually bit 7 is set when the insert key is pressed; it's cleared the next time this key is pressed. This causes no problems in cases where insert mode is turned on and off by pressing the insert key, but this is not the case in Basic. In Basic, the insert mode can be turned off by moving the cursor or pressing the enter key—this does not affect bit 6. It is important to be aware of this when working on Basic programs that read byte 417H. If one is alternately running and editing such a program, it cannot be assumed that bit 6 is clear when the program begins. The best way to avoid trouble is to initialize the byte in programs that use it. This can be done with the following sequence:

```
DEF SEG=0:POKE &H417,0.
```

Harold Brown, DeKalb, IL

Held Accountable

In December you published my letter in which I indicated some problems with BPI's General Accounting package. In February you published a reply from Bob Orr, BPI's sales manager. He invited anyone with problems to contact him. I did, and he was very helpful and enabled me to iron out the problem that I either had or thought I had. I wish I had been put in touch with him when I originally called BPI. It would have saved me a lot of time and trouble.

My statement about Basic lines longer than 254 characters got turned around. My letter said, "They work." It was turned into "They don't work." The main implication was that I don't know of any method (published by IBM) to generate Basic lines greater than 254 characters. Does anyone else know?

Your articles on Pascal extensions are excellent. I wish they had come along in your first few issues. I suppose that you have already heard enough about the three typos in figure 3 on page 117!

How about some articles on how to build your own copy-protection scheme? Perhaps the title should be "How the Floppy Disk Controller Works and Some Advanced Projects with It."

I have just recently received a copy of Leo J. Scanlon's new book, *IBM PC Assembly Language*. It is subtitled, *A Guide for Programmers*. I simply fail to understand why it has received such good reviews (in a number of places). He admits to ducking RECORD and STRUC as being too complicated and rarely used (page 72). He also ducks other important things (such as label pseudo-op, PTR attribute, and so on). My own conclusion is that the subtitle ought to be *A Beginner's Guide to Assembler Language on the IBM PC*. A serious programmer will probably learn little or nothing from this book. I haven't and am hoping I can send the book back.

Thomas B. Reifsnyder, Orange, CT

New User Group—Iowa

I noticed in your May issue of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* that you listed two user groups for the IBM computer in Iowa. A third group exists and is located in Cedar Rapids-Iowa City, Iowa. Please add this user group to any future updates or to any information you are sending to user groups. The address is Hawkeye-PC, 385 Collins

☐ APPLE ☐ EAGLE ☐ IBM, PC ☐ NORTHSTAR ☐ TRS-80 II 8" ☐ OSBORNE ☐ FRANKLIN ☐ STANDARD CP/M 8" ☐

XEROX 820 ☐ GAMES ☐ COMPILERS ☐ UTILITIES ☐ BUSINESS ☐ ACCOUNTING ☐ SPREAD SHEETS ☐ MEDICAL ☐ DENTAL ☐ PAYROLL ☐ GENERAL LEDGER

RENT SOFTWARE BEFORE YOU BUY!

from our

SOFTWARE RENTAL LIBRARY

You can now RENT the most popular software available for just 20-25%* of Manufacturers' Retail Price

- Eliminate the risk—rent first!
- 100% of rental fee applies toward purchase
- Rentals are for 7-days (plus 3 days grace for return shipping)

SPECIAL INTRODUCTORY OFFER

There are now 2 different plans to choose from:

Join the **Game Group,** $25.00 per year and rent as many games as you like for only 20-25% of Mfrs. Sugg. Retail Price.* Minimum order, 3 game rentals	Join the **Business Group,** $50.00 per year and rent as many business application programs as you like for only 20-25% of Mfrs. Sugg. Retail Price.*

REMEMBER, THESE ARE NOT DEMOS, BUT ORIGINAL UNRESTRICTED SOFTWARE PROGRAMS

(complete with manuals in original manufacturers' packages)

To Immediately Order, or for more information:

UNITED COMPUTER CORP.
Software Rental Library
Culver City, California

Toll Free CALL 1-800 992-7777
In California CALL 1-800 992-8888
In L.A. County CALL 1-213 823-4400

Canadian Orders Welcome

MasterCard AMERICAN EXPRESS VISA

*Plus postage and handling.

☐ EDUCATIONAL ☐ ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE ☐ WORD PROCESSORS ☐ DATA BASES ☐ LANGUAGES ☐ GRAPHICS ☐

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE ☐ MAILING ☐ SPELLING ☐ COMMUNICATIONS ☐ REAL ESTATE ☐ TAXES ☐ STOCK MARKET ☐ INVENTORIES ☐ HEATH/ZENITH 89 8"

Road N.E., Suite 201, Cedar Rapids, IA 52402 (company president Ben Blackstock: 319-393-5416).

Hawkeye-PC publishes a monthly newsletter. The editor of the newsletter is Brad Hanson, 3685 Eastwood Court, Bettendorf, IA 52722. Hawkeye-PC operates a twenty-four-hour bulletin board in Cedar Rapids. The bulletin board can be accessed by calling (319) 363-3314. It supports downloading, uploading, and the exchange of messages. It currently operates at 300 baud but will soon be operating at 1200 baud as well. Meetings are held monthly and alternate between Cedar Rapids and Iowa City. More information can be obtained by contacting Ben Blackstock.

User groups are a valuable resource and I hope this information proves useful to Iowa readers.

Benjamin W. Blackstock,
Cedar Rapids, IA

User Group Number Change

In the May issue you published my name and work phone number as a source of information concerning the IBM pc and user groups. I am willing and able to help. However, I work a regular day for the United States Navy, and the number of calls I receive at work is inappropriate and disruptive to my organization.

In most of the announcements I've seen, I am associated with a user group named IBMicro, the original name of Capital PC User Group, which I founded. I am now using the name IBMicro Applications in my pc-related business ventures.

For the purposes of correcting my situation at work and continuing my availability to help people with the pc, I am providing the following:

Capital User Group
Box 3189
Gaithersburg, MD 20878
Information: contact Jan Withro (703) 978-1530

IBM PC Special Interest Group (CompuServe)
4910 Forty-third Street N.W.
Washington, DC 20016
Information: contact Mike Todd (202) 364-2467
On the CompuServe, contact Mike Todd, 70001,1264 or Wes Meier, 70215,1017

For personal assistance and information contact:
Mike Todd (202) 364-2467
4910 Forty-third Street N.W.
Washington, DC 20016

You may use this information for any purpose. Please do not publish my old work number. Thank you!

Mike Todd, Washington, DC

B-1 Bombed

I am rarely moved to write a letter in response to a magazine article; however, you have provoked me. As a new IBM pc owner I purchased the April 1983 *Softalk*, feeling pleased that I had found another periodical dedicated to the pc user. My pleasure turned to dismay as I read David Hunter's "Aerocomputing—Boeing Gets Personal."

That Boeing uses some pcs is hardly exciting news, but that you should take as your cover story an article devoid of useful information is simply incredible. I was further dismayed to find Hunter referring to a war plane, the B-1B bomber, as a "sleek, sexy plane . . .".

If this is the best cover story you could develop, it is little wonder you give *Softalk* away to pc owners; few would subscribe.

Greg Petroski, Saint Louis, MO

Beyond Basic

Thank you; Dara Pearlman's article on Pascal extensions has been a real help. I have been writing programs regularly in IBM's Pascal for courses I have been taking, but

TEXTRA! TEXTRA!

(Read all about it.)

Low cost TEXTRA™ makes the competition see red...

Ever since the days of the vacuum tube, the computer industry
has travelled at the speed of light, and the result is clear—
more power at less cost.
So now, when Textra makes word processing *faster & easier*
to use at a fraction of the cost, it's not surprising—
just another sign of the modern times.

See it for yourself

Textra has created a software revolution because we let you protect your money decisions until you've tested the product. Our TEST DISK contains an 'on-line tutorial' and a copy of Textra that you can use for testing the features. It costs $3, and we'll even refund $2 if you send us the disk back. See our ordering instructions below.

Take a closer look

When we say faster, we mean instantly. Paging, searching, reformatting—they all work instantly, speeding you through your work. Textra is easier to use because it's an original design for the IBM Personal Computer. It has labeled function keys instead of awkward "control codes", full use of the cursor moving keys, and a list of features that just won't quit.

Features

- full screen editing
- modeless insert and delete (overstrike and undelete also available)
- powerful search and replace
- copy and move blocks
- tabs, margins, word wrap, auto-indent, paragraphs, line shifting and centering
- extensive reformatting abilities
- full printing capabilities including print-while-you-edit, page numbering, headers, footers, and much more
- numerous other features which make your time at the keyboard more productive
- word processing or program editing

Textra requires PCDOS and 64K (DOS 2.0 requires 96K) and a monochrome or color monitor.

Textra, and the A² Software logo are trademarks of Ann Arbor Software Associates.

Watch our documentation

Relax. Sit back and watch it. Dim your lights a little and let it roll. Our 'on-line tutorial' is a series of short films which automatically roll by on the screen, showing you how to use Textra. In less than an hour, you'll be using Textra efficiently. Of course, a thorough reference manual is included if you have any questions.

CAUTION: Textra is addictive. If you already have another word processor, you might be into antique collecting.

$95

*A² Software

*Ann Arbor Software, 407 N. Main Street
P.O. Box 7345, Ann Arbor, MI 48107

Order by calling us today at:
313-769-9088
You can pay COD or charge your order with Visa/Mastercard, or mail as instructed below and your copy of Textra will be on its way.

Mailing instructions:
☐ Send me a copy of Textra for $95
☐ Send me the *Test Disk for $3
Michigan residents add 4% sales tax.
Name__________
Address__________
City______ State______ Zip______
☐ Visa ☐ Mastercard
#__________ Exp. Date______
*(We'll refund $2 if you send the disk back)
Mail to: Ann Arbor Software, Box 7345,
Ann Arbor, MI 48107
Dealer inquiries invited

I've never had the time to unscramble the extensions. Microsoft must have hired the person that wrote the documentation for IBM's Job Control language—both are equally clear. The pc and the Pascal language for it are beautiful products, but the documentation is not always their equal. Even if they were, it is always helpful to read a second description.

It is refreshing to read a magazine on the pc that has articles beyond basic Basic. I have found your regular sections, such as The Right To Assemble, System Notebook, Marketalk News, and Boards and Buses, very helpful and hope Pascal Extended will become a regular.

Your magazine is read immediately upon arrival but not from cover to cover (I skip the articles on Basic). I have not written anything in Basic for over a year and hope I never have to write or read anything written in Basic longer than twenty lines.

James O. Olson, West Lafayette, IN

See Basrun

I would like to point out a peculiarity of IBM-compiled Basic, in case some users are not already aware of it. The problem occurs in programs using the Basrun run-time module with chaining. The symptom is a "String Space Corrupt" error when the chained-to overlay begins execution, and the source of the problem appears to be related to the function key definitions.

Figure 1 shows a simple test program consisting of two overlays, Test1 and Test2. In this case, the error occurs when control passes from the second overlay back to the first one. By adding a simple comment to each overlay, as in figure 2, the error can be encountered when the second overlay is invoked. Figure 3 shows that when the *key* statements are removed, the program chains correctly. Although it may not be clear from these examples that the function key definition is truly the source of the problem, I've also found that in a much larger program the same problem was eliminated by removing the *key* statements.

It appears that it is the *key* statement in the chained-to overlay that causes the problem. However, it is not sufficient to define the function keys only in an initialization overlay, since their values can be destroyed by the chaining operation. This was found to be the case in larger programs. The solution is to not use *key* but rather to check for the extended ASCII code returned by the function keys.

George Bohannon, Redondo Beach, CA

```
TYPE TEST1.BAS
10  PRINT "         TEST1"
20  PRINT
30  KEY 1, "ABCD"
40  INPUT"Hit return to begin
    chain...",REPLY$
50  CHAIN "test2.exe"

B>TYPE TEST2.BAS
10  PRINT "         TEST2"
20  PRINT
30  KEY 1, "ABCD"
40  INPUT"Hit return to continue
    chain...",REPLY$
50  CHAIN "test1.exe"

B>TEST1

B>
    TEST1
Hit return to begin chain...
    TEST2

Hit return to continue chain...
    TEST1

Internal Error - String Space Corrupt

B>
```

Figure 1.

```
type test1.basTYPE TEST1.BAS
10  PRINT "         TEST1"
20  PRINT "Test of compiled Basic
    chaining.
30  PRINT
40  KEY 1,"ABCD"
50  INPUT"Hit return to begin
    chain...",REPLY$
60  CHAIN "test2.exe"

B>TYPE TEST2.BAS
10  PRINT "         TEST2"
20  PRINT "Test of complied Basic
    chaining.
30  PRINT
40  KEY 1,"ABCD"
50  INPUT"Hit return to continue
    chain...",REPLY$
60  CHAIN "test1.exe"

    TEST1
Test of compiled Basic chaining.

Hit return to begin chain...
    TEST2
Test of compiled Basic chaining.

Internal Error - String Space Corrupt

B>
```

Figure 2.

```
TYPE TEST1.BAS
10  PRINT "         TEST1"
20  PRINT "Test of compiled Basic
    chaining.
30  PRINT
40  INPUT"Hit return to begin
    chain...",REPLY$
50  CHAIN "test2.exe"
```

JOIN THE PROFESSIONALS

RTCS Products give your PC/MDOS computer, professional program development capabilities, just like Intel's Series III or System 86/330.

RTCS offers a family of Operating System Development Tools.

RTCS UDI

The UDI allows your PC to execute Intel's Compilers, Assemblers and Utilities.

Features:
- Memory Management
- File Management
- PC/MSDOS File Structures
- 8087 Support

REDUCED! ~~$995.00~~ $500.00

RTCS PC/RMX

The RTCS PC/RMX lets your PC run under Intel's Real-Time Operating System, iRMX.

Features:
- Up to 65536 tasks
- Hierachial Directories
- Multi-User Capabilities
- Supports IBM Peripherals
- Hard Disk Support
- Ethernet Support

$2250.00

RTCS UDEBUG

THE RTCS UDEBUG is a powerful system debugger. 8087 support. Symbolic debugging.

REDUCED! ~~$750.00~~ $195.00

RTCS PC/SBC Execution Vehicle

The PC/SBC allows your PC to control the execution of any of Intel's SBC Computers. Both download and upload capability.

REDUCED! ~~$750.00~~ $195.00

MDOS IS A TRADEMARK OF MICROSOFT CORP.
SBC & iRMX ARE TRADEMARKS OF INTEL CORP.

RTCS
REAL–TIME COMPUTER SCIENCE CORPORATION
P.O. Box 3000-886 (805) 482-0333
Camarillo, CA 93011
TELEX #467897

```
B>TYPE TEST2.BAS
10  PRINT "         TEST2"
20  PRINT "Test of compiled Basic
    chaining.
30  PRINT
40  INPUT"Hit return to continue
    chain...",REPLY$
50  CHAIN "test1.exe"



          TEST1
Test of compiled Basic chaining.


Hit return to begin chain...
          TEST2
Test of compiled Basic chaining.

Hit return to continue chain...
          TEST1
Test of compiled Basic chaining.


Hit return to begin chain...

          TEST2
Test of compiled Basic chaining.

Hit return to continue chain...
*Break*

B>
```

Figure 3.

Pascal Correction

I wish to compliment you on your May issue. I do, however, wish to point out a couple of typographical errors that would be difficult to catch for novices with the Pascal language.

On page 117 you present a listing of a program that has been set in type rather than reproduced directly from a computer printout (usually a bad policy). In the course of the translation two minus signs were transformed into equals signs; the obvious result is that the program will not compile as printed. In the first instance, the line appears correctly in the text of the article, but the other is again reproduced in its incorrect form on page 118.

To those who may have experienced difficulty, I offer the following corrections: Left-hand column, page 117, near the bottom, should read:

```
type
crt_buffer = array[0..crt_buffer_size
 - 1] of char;
```

Right-hand column, page 117, two-thirds of the way down, should read:

```
movesl (screen, ads screen∧[2],
crt_buffer_size - 2);
```

I hope this clears up the difficulty that some of your readers may have had.

Harry W. Kroeger, Jr., Lawrence, KS

A Lone-Star Offer

Increasing numbers of letters to Crosstalk recently have been written by scientific professionals with highly specialized software needs. Many of them are probably writing their own programs and subroutines. To avoid unnecessary duplication of effort, I would like to encourage authors to share such programs.

I have been offering a simple statistical package free of charge to other IBM pc users. The program, called *Epistat*, is written in BasicA and can assist in the analysis of small- to medium-sized data samples (less than one thousand observations per sample). It provides for data entry, editing, sorting, printing, graphing histograms, and saving data to disk files. It also performs thirty-four common statistical tests or functions, including analysis of variance, binomial distribution, Chi-square test, correlation coefficient, Fisher's exact test, linear regression, mean, median, normal distribution, Poisson distribution, rank sum and signed rank tests, rate adjustments, sample size calculations, standard deviation, and Student's t-test.

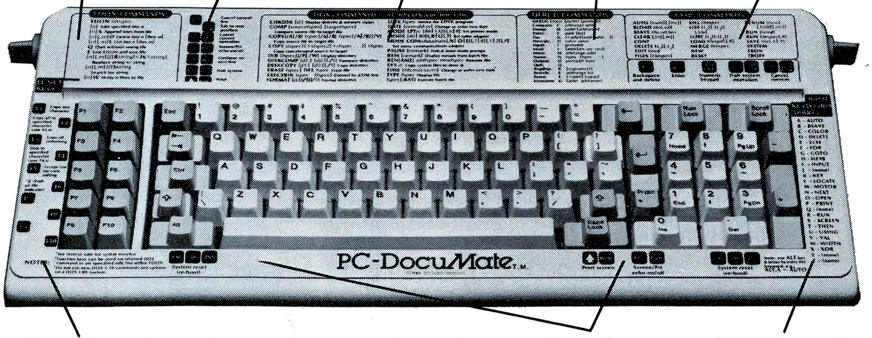
I will be happy to distribute this package to anyone who will provide a 160K floppy disk and a self-addressed stamped mailer (or send $20 and I will supply the disk and mailer). My address is 1705 Gattis School Road, Round Rock, TX 78664.

Tracy L. Gustafson, M.D.,
Round Rock, TX ▲

Take Your Computer's Commands And Put Them Where They Belong. On Your Keyboard.

PC-DocuMate™ is a documentation template that fits the keyboard of your IBM PC. So the information you want is where you need it. PC-DocuMate templates are professionally designed, logically organized and comprehensive. Each template is printed on both sides on durable, non-glare polystyrene and is color-matched to your PC keyboard.

PC-DocuMates now available for:
- DOS/BASIC (as shown)
- VISICALC™
- MULTIPLAN™
- 1-2-3™
- WORDSTAR™
- VOLKSWRITER™
- SUPERCALC™
- EASYWRITER II™
- Plus a custom "do-it-yourself" template (includes special pen and eraser)
- dBASE-II™



Control key usage for **ESC, CTRL, TAB, SHIFT**

DEBUG commands & more control key documentation

EDLIN commands are documented

Complete Reference for **DOS** commands and formats

Reference list of **BASIC** commands

Easy reference for function key use

Reverse side contains reference data on over **130 BASIC** statements and functions (includes advanced **BASIC**)

Control key usage for **ALT** & **PrtSc**

BASIC keyword abbreviations

EACH TEMPLATE IS ONLY $14.95 (includes shipping) VISA MasterCard

No-Risk, Moneyback Offer: If you are not completely satisfied, return your PC-DocuMate template to us (undamaged) within 10 days for a full refund.

Please send personal check, money order, or credit card information. Foreign orders add $5.00 (except Canada). No COD's please. Telephone orders: Call 919/787-7703 (24 hrs) NC residents add 4% sales tax.

Systems Management Associates
P.O. Box 20025, 3700 Computer Dr.
Raleigh, N.C. 27619 Dept. D-2
Dealer Inquiries Invited.
SMA

Your Personal Computer System - Managed by DOS
Diskette
DOS
in A
Printer

* DOS likes to announce itself by typing A>. The cursor sits next to the >. This is called the "DOS PROMPT". When you see the DOS prompt you can count on this:

DOS IS ALIVE AND IS PATIENTLY WAITING FOR YOU TO COMMAND IT.

GIVE DOS YOUR FIRST NAME

Incredible Trainers!

No matter what level IBM Personal Computer training you want, our interactive tutorial software gives you the answers. Easier, faster, smarter.

Take **The INSTRUCTOR,** for first-time users. PC Magazine called it, **"The best . . . introduction to the PC around."** It's #1 because it takes the work out of learning initial PC operations.

And **Now! Brand New!** Setting a new standard for interactive training, we give you . . .

PROFESSOR DOS.

You've got to see (and hear) it to believe it! Designed for PC users ready to learn higher level PC concepts, including DOS commands. Professor DOS will challenge you, amuse you, and amaze you.

Both programs use vivid graphic images, creative animation, sound and living color to take you from mystery to mastery of your IBM PC. Each is totally self-paced. And they're "people-literate." So you really do learn.

The most sought-after computer-assisted training anywhere. Available at IBM PC dealers and software retailers everywhere, separately or in a tutorial set. Affordable at a suggested list price of **ONLY . . .**

$44.95 — The INSTRUCTOR
$59.95 — Professor DOS
or
$94.95 — Tutorial Set

We've made **The INSTRUCTOR** and **Professor DOS** so realistic, you'll agree . . . **THEY'RE INCREDIBLE!**

individual
SOFTWARE INCORPORATED

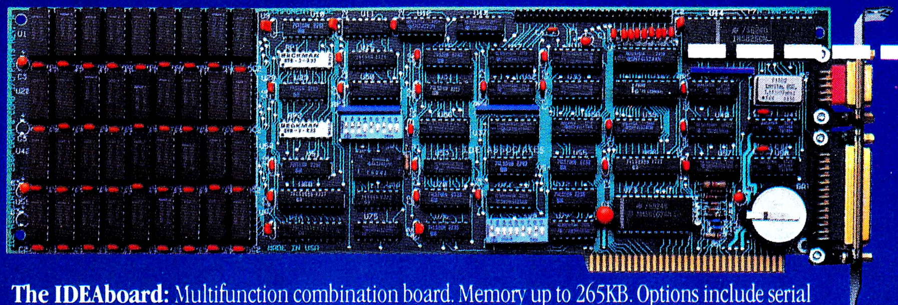
24 Spinnaker Place
Redwood City, CA 94065
(415) 591-4166

Requires MS-DOS, any IBM Personal Computer or Compaq Personal Computer with at least one diskette drive and a monochrome or color display.

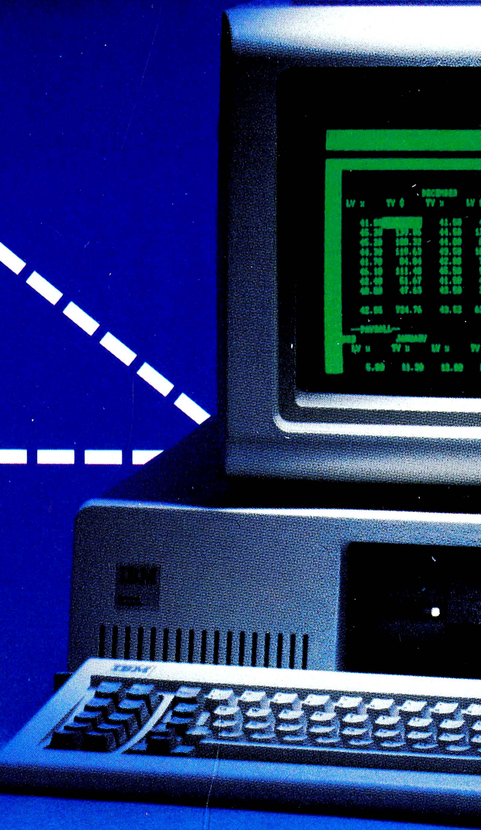
Phone and dealer inquiries welcome.

IDE ASSOCIATES

The Memory Board: Expandable, from 64KB for $245 to 256KB for $545.



The IDEAboard: Multifunction combination board. Memory up to 265KB. Options include serial interface, parallel interface (printer or SASI hard disk) and/or clock/calendar with battery backup. Prices range from $320 for 64KB with 1 option to $695 for 256KB with 3 options. All prices include RAMFLOPPY disk emulation software.



Five better ideas from IDE for expanding your IBM PC.

We think the IBM Personal Computer is the best on the market. That's why we've concentrated our efforts on making add-ons strictly for the IBM PC.

We have ideas that can make your IBM PC even better. And more affordable.

Granted, those are ambitious goals. Goals that take quite a bit of imagination – and nerve – to reach.

And at IDE, we think we have the ideas it takes.

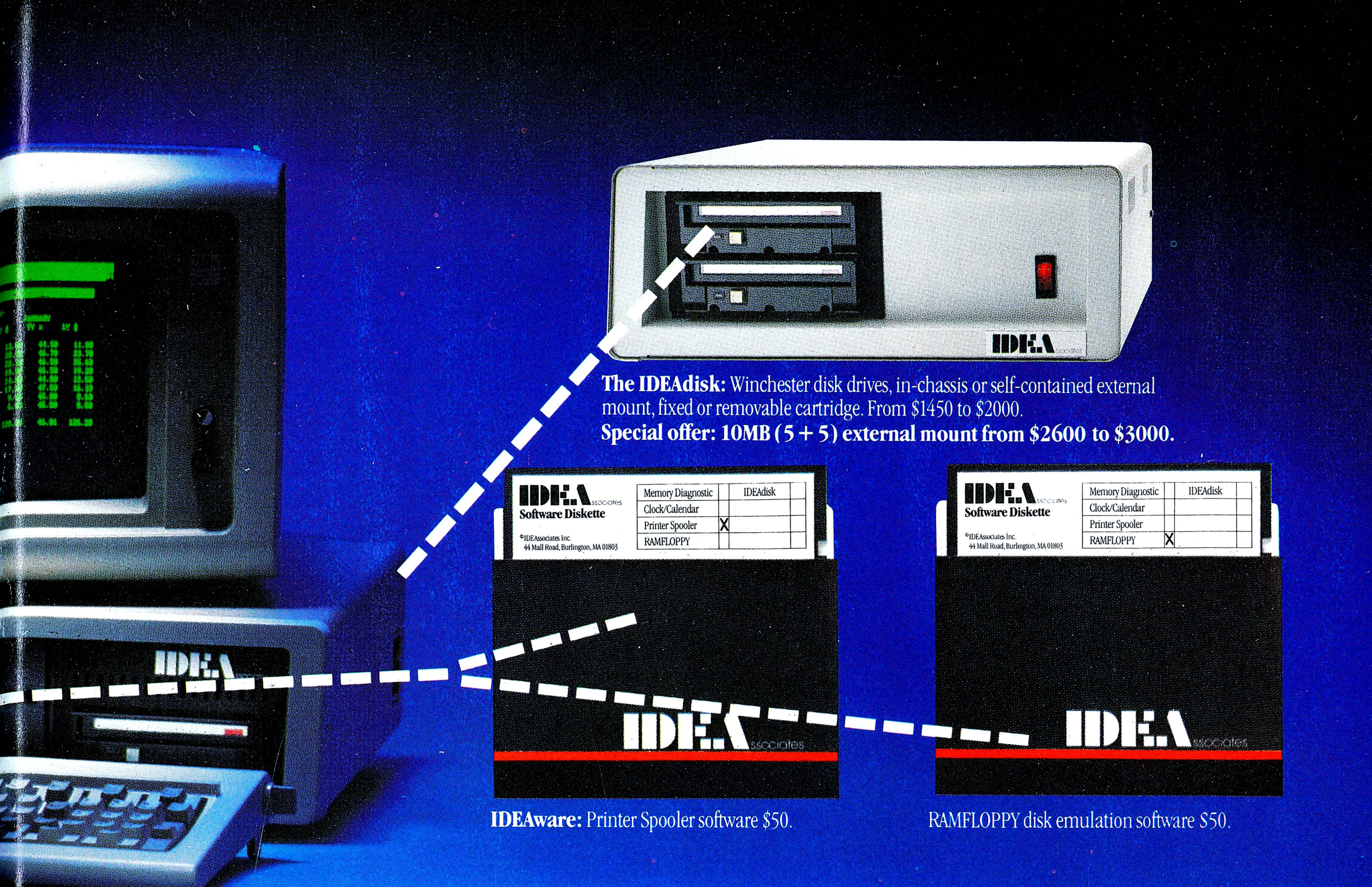
Better Idea No. 1: Innovative products.

We're leaders, not followers. IDE was first with a Combination Board for the IBM PC that includes a Winchester disk drive interface. On the board itself.

We were the first to let you cable both serial *and* parallel interfaces from the back of the board. Without any troublesome jury rigging, without wasting expansion slots, and with the unit's protective cover in place.

And the innovations don't stop there. Removable Winchester disk drives. Expandable memory boards. Printer spooler software. Disk emulation software. A broad array of products…with still more to come.

IDE Dealers: Alaska: VFM Electronics, Fairbanks □ **Arizona:** Abbot Data Products, Glendale; Computer Emporium, Tucson □ **California:** Q-Bits, Mountain View; MicroHelp, El Cajon; Stoneware Ltd., La Jolla; Precision Design Corp., San Diego □ **Connecticut:** The Computer Establishment, Old Saybrook; MicroAge, Danbury; American Business Computers, Groton; Creative Systems, E. Granby □ **Iowa:** ComputerLand, Des Moines □ **Kansas:** CompuType, Manhattan □ **Massachusetts:** Arby Corporation, Cambridge; TEK Microsystems, Boston; MTS Microproducts, Arlington □ **Michigan:** The Computer Workshop, Houghton; TransNational Corp., Troy □ **Minnesota:** Computer Depot/Daytons Computer Centers, Minneapolis, St. Paul, Burnsville Center, Ridgedale, Rosedale, Southdale □ **Nebraska:** Computerland, Lincoln; ComputerLand, Omaha □ **New Hampshire:** Software



The IDEAdisk: Winchester disk drives, in-chassis or self-contained external mount, fixed or removable cartridge. From $1450 to $2000.
Special offer: 10MB (5 + 5) external mount from $2600 to $3000.

IDEAware: Printer Spooler software $50.

RAMFLOPPY disk emulation software $50.

Better Idea No. 2: One year warranty.

We believe in the quality of our products. We buy only burnt-in components; we do extensive burn-in ourselves; and we customize final testing to match customers' configurations.

That's why we offer a full year warranty with all IDE products. 365 days. Not 90.

And we back it up with full software support and diagnostics, including software updates as necessary.

Better Idea No. 3: Unique upgrade policy.

When you buy any IDE product, you buy only the options you want. So you never have to pay for something you don't need.

Then you can add extras as you need them.

Take our boards, for example. For one year, you can trade up a board for one with more memory and/or options for the price differential plus $25. In fact, you can trade up any IDE product for anything else in our product line the same way.

And that's unique.

Better Idea No. 4: Service that really delivers.

Our products are available through IDE dealers and representatives around the country. And our network is growing quickly.

We offer free installation in the metropolitan areas listed below, and our retailers will install any of our products for you right in the store.

If you'd rather do it yourself, we provide every IDE product with all the documentation you need to perform the installation yourself. In minutes.

Better Idea No. 5: High value; low price.

Since our products are made strictly for the IBM PC, we can concentrate our efforts. Run our company more efficiently. And keep costs down.

But keeping costs down isn't enough for us. We pursue an aggressive pricing policy, too. Because we believe that by selling more add-ons at lower prices, we will become a leader in the industry. Our ideas will see to that.

You'll find all of IDE's better ideas on display at the fine retailers shown below.

If you don't see one for your area, call us toll-free. The list is growing all the time, and we'll give you the name of a dealer near you. Or take your order directly by phone.

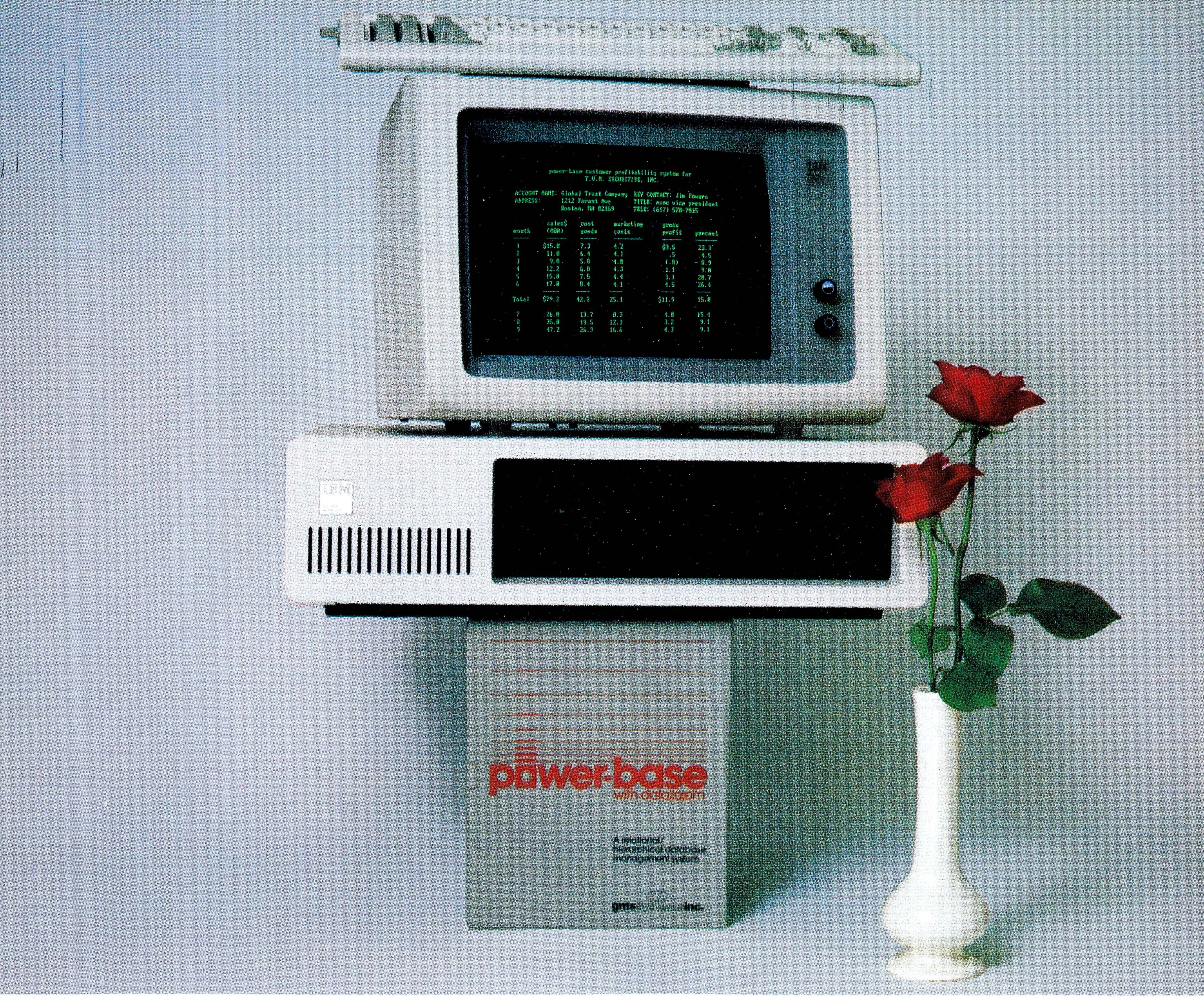
And remember: when you think of expanding your IBM PC, think of IDE first. We have five great ideas for you.

1-800-257-5027
(In Massachusetts call (617) 275-4430)

IDEAssociates
Better ideas for personal computers.
IDE Associates, Inc., 7 Oak Park Drive, Bedford, MA 01730

Designs, Derry ☐ **New York:** Future Data, Oppenheimer Software, N.Y.C.; Yankee Computer Services, Putnam Valley ☐ **North Carolina:** Surveyor's Supply, Apex; Computer South, Charlotte; Microcomputer Sales, Fayetteville ☐ **Ohio:** U-Compute, Toledo ☐ **South Carolina:** Berry's Office Automation, Lugoff ☐ **Texas:** MicroSpec, Video Station, Plano; Southwest Automation, Houston ☐ **Utah:** Weidner Communications Corp., Provo ☐ **Virginia:** Micro Solutions, Reston ☐ **Washington:** COMCO, Seattle

IDE Representatives: Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Washington D.C., Atlanta, Houston, Chicago, Los Angeles. **International Distributors:** Austria, Switzerland, West Germany: Computer 2000 GmbH, Munich ☐ Israel: O.D.C. Systems, Natanya.



```
        power-base customer profitability system for
                  T.U.N. SECURITIES, INC.

ACCOUNT NAME: Global Trust Company  KEY CONTACT: Jim Powers
ADDRESS:      1212 Forest Ave       TITLE: exec vice president
              Boston, MA 02169      TELE: (617) 570-7815

        sales$   cost    marketing    gross
month   (000)    goods   costs        profit   percent
-----   -----    -----   ---------    ------   -------
  1     $15.0    7.3     4.2          $3.5     23.3
  2      11.0    6.4     4.1            .5      4.5
  3       9.0    5.8     4.0          (.0)    - 0.9
  4      12.2    6.0     4.3           1.1      9.0
  5      15.0    7.5     4.4           3.1     20.7
  6      17.0    8.4     4.1           4.5     26.4
        -----    -----   -----        ------   -----
Total   $79.2    42.2    25.1         $11.9    15.0

  7      26.0    13.7    8.3           4.0     15.4
  8      35.0    19.5    12.3          3.2      9.1
  9      47.2    26.3    16.6          4.3      9.1
```

Powerbase for the powerhouse

At last: a completely new relational data base management system that fully utilizes and enhances the power of the best micro on the market today. And makes it available to those whose expertise is business, not computers.

We call it POWERBASE.™ Software clever enough to meet your information needs, easy enough to be mastered in half an hour. No fancy programming. No unnecessary computer jargon. You simply paint your screens and define the information you need. PowerBase does the rest. Pleasurably.

PowerBase introduces DATAZOOM™ and the exclusive Zoom Key which, at the touch of your fingertip, explodes data to deeper and deeper levels of revealing detail. Other features include ultra-fast b-tree access, multiple files, powerful editing and table look-up functions, flexible report writer, the ability to search, sort, and scan other files... and many more.

Master data without having to master computers. The power of the micro is now *fully* yours with PowerBase, the new breed of software that makes data management basically simple.

power-base™
with datazoom™

power-base
power-base

Call or write for our free informative brochure.

gmssystemsinc.
12 W. 37th Street N.Y., N.Y. 10018
(212) 947-3590
Dealer inquiries invited.

POWERBASE and DATAZOOM are trademarks of G M S Systems, Inc.

SOFTALK CLASSIFIED ADVERTISING

SUPER PRICES!

ON ALL OF OUR MONITORS, DISK DRIVES, DISKETTES, AND GAME CONTROLLERS, ETC. . . . CALL WHOLESALE COMPUTER PRODUCTS (3:30-4:30 EST) (203) 324-4928; dealer inquiries invited.

IBM PC ACCESSORIES!!

A kit full of useful accessories for you. *QWIK-LABEL—Set of 13 preprinted labels that identify every slot, connector & knob. *QWIK-KEY—Set of 3 plastic overlay cards that can be easily marked to indicate each function key's purpose for any program. *QWIK-GUIDE—Set of durable cards that present all important operating instructions for ready reference.** All of above—$7.75. *NEW!* CALC/PAD—Uniquely designed layout pad for spreadsheet users. $4.75 each. MC/VISA O.K. Add $1 shipping to total order. COMPU-QUOTE, 6914 Berquist Ave., Dept. ST, Canoga Park, CA 91307; (213) 348-3662.

STATISTICIAN'S MACE

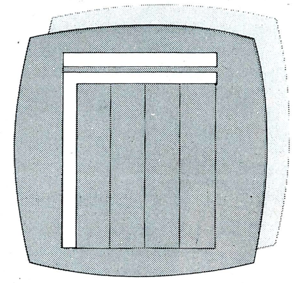
Turn your IBM pc into a number cruncher! Calculate statistics frequently used by scientists, business researchers, engineers, statisticians, and others who need to analyze data obtained from surveys and experiments. **Statistician's MACE** accepts data from the pc's keyboard, from disk files created by **Statistician's MACE**, or from disk files prepared by your text editor. First-time users can immediately begin analyzing sets of data containing just a few, or thousands of elements, *without* having to first understand numerous complex commands. Computes simple and multiple regression estimates, and correlations. ANOVAs allow missing data and include; completely randomized, factorial, blocked, split plot, repeated measures, and least squares designs. The only program we know of, for *any* computer, which performs the Hodges-Lehman aligned ranks test. Of course **Statistician's MACE** does much more. Written in Pascal. Requires 128K. Introductory price $145. (Documentation without program $25, applicable towards subsequent purchase of program.) MACE, Inc., 2313 Center Av., Madison, WI 53704; (608) 241-4566.

H/WARE BUF & CHAR GENR

PIC-82 is an intelligent hardware spooler & a character generator for the IBM pc. It comes with an interactive software package to gener different char type and size, graphic symbols, logos, or any kind of picture to print using a dot-matrix printer. Buffer size 64-256K. Interface via a parallel port. It comes with Nova, Old English and Commercial char sets; also, you can make your own set. Retails for $450-$750.

BASC
P.O. Box 32113
San Jose, CA 95152
(408) 251-0161

The VISICALC® Audio Course™



'What If . . .'

you could have a Personal Tutor come into your office (or home) and systematically teach you the 'Ins and Outs' of the powerful VisiCalc® electronic spreadsheet program? Would you be interested? (OF COURSE!)

Now you can have your own Personal Tutor™ instructional VisiCalc® Audio Course™ for only

$49.95!

Produced By VisiCalc® Specialists:

The VisiCalc® Audio Course was written by and produced in conjunction with SpreadSoft™, The Electronic Spreadsheet Support People™. The programmers at SpreadSoft™ are experts at VisiCalc® applications, and provide insights and programming tips gained from their creation of VisiCalc® Business Financial and Management templates.

Contents:

TAPE ONE: The VISICALC® Beginner™
A 90-minute instructional tape introducing the VisiCalc commands. The Beginner will lead you step by step through both the major commands and sub-commands. The emphasis is on a practical demonstration of each command using a 'hands on' 'try it out and learn' approach.

TAPE TWO: The VISICALC® Functions™
A 90-minute instructional tape that will teach you how to use VisiCalc's:

a. Arithmetic Functions @INT, @ABS, @EXP, @LN, @LOG10
b. Listing Functions @SUM, @COUNT, @AVE, @MIN, @MAX
c. Trigometric Functions @SIN, @COS, @TAN, @ASIN, @ACOS, @ATAN
d. Logical Functions @TRUE, @FALSE, @AND, @OR, @NOT, @IF, @ISNA, @ISERROR
e. Special Functions @NA, @ERROR, @PI, @NPV, @LOOKUP, @CHOOSE
f. Nested Functions and Boolean operators.

This tape guides the new user of VisiCalc without insulting the advanced user. The Functions tape will give you a new appreciation of how to get the most out of the built-in VisiCalc functions and their usefulness.

TAPE THREE: VISICALC® Templating™
A culmulating high-point instructional 90-minute tape designed to introduce and teach you how to design and produce VisiCalc® templates and overlays. Using all you have learned from the Beginner and Functions tapes you will design specific templates (spreadsheet models) and save to disk and reload. Detailed discussions (with examples) will address input areas, calculation areas, reports, output areas and documentation of templates. Example templates include budgeting, planning, inventory, and more!

Featuring:

1. Three detailed 90-minute instructional tapes presented in a natural conversational manner (no interrupting bells or beeps or flipping of the tape in the middle of the subject);
2. A diskette complete with examples, templates, overlays and exercises;
3. A detailed Reference Guide;
4. Rugged book-like vinyl binder to store and protect your VisiCalc® Audio Course™.

Advantages of the VisiCalc® Audio Course™:

- Easy to use, effective Audio course.
- Course authored by VisiCalc® Programmers.
- The course doesn't take control of your computer away from you, but instead allows you to obtain hands-on experience with VisiCalc®.
- You don't have to be a computer programmer to learn how to use the best-selling VisiCalc®, this Personal Tutor™ will bring it to life at your pace.
- Excellent for small business seminar presentations on VisiCalc®.

Requirements:

Your computer system, VisiCalc® program, Audio cassette player [no computer hookup is necessary for the cassette player.] Specify computer system.

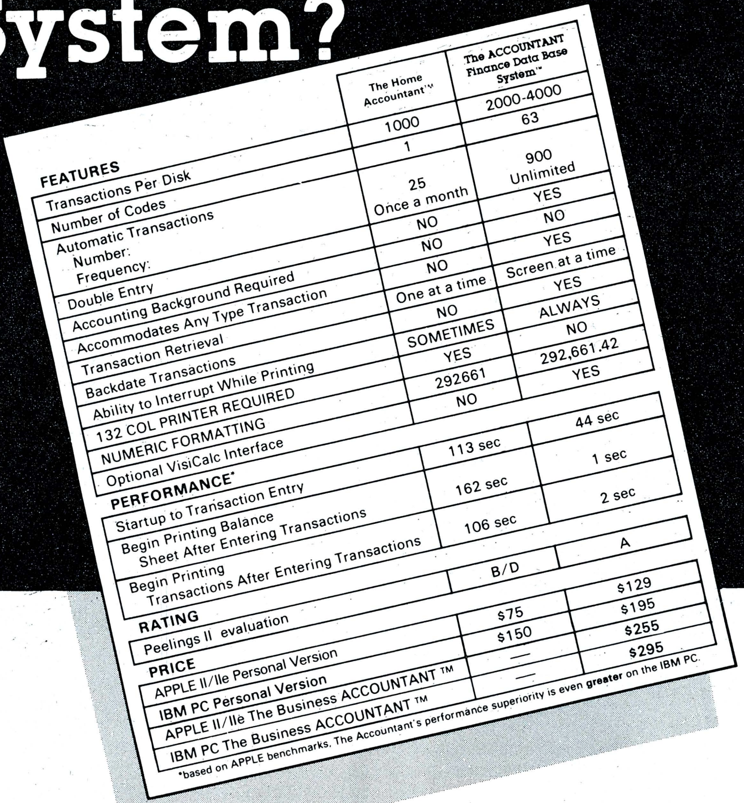
To order . . . See your local computer dealer or order direct.
Visa/MC, money order, or check acceptable.
Add $2.50 shipping & handling.
Dealer Inquiries.

Personal Tutor™ Associates

A Division of ExecSystems Corporation
Post Office Box 246, Clinton, MD 20735
301/856-2280

Personal Tutor™
Instructional Tapes

Do you want the #1 Seller or the #1 Financial System?



FEATURES	The Home Accountant™	The ACCOUNTANT Finance Data Base System™
Transactions Per Disk	1000	2000-4000
Number of Codes	1	63
Automatic Transactions Number:	25	900
Frequency:	Once a month	Unlimited
Double Entry	NO	YES
Accounting Background Required	NO	NO
Accommodates Any Type Transaction	NO	YES
Transaction Retrieval	One at a time	Screen at a time
Backdate Transactions	NO	YES
Ability to Interrupt While Printing	SOMETIMES	ALWAYS
132 COL PRINTER REQUIRED	YES	NO
NUMERIC FORMATTING	292661	292,661.42
Optional VisiCalc Interface	NO	YES
PERFORMANCE*		
Startup to Transaction Entry	113 sec	44 sec
Begin Printing Balance Sheet After Entering Transactions	162 sec	1 sec
Begin Printing Transactions After Entering Transactions	106 sec	2 sec
RATING		
Peelings II evaluation	B/D	A
PRICE		
APPLE II/IIe Personal Version	$75	$129
IBM PC Personal Version	$150	$195
APPLE II/IIe The Business ACCOUNTANT ™	—	$255
IBM PC The Business ACCOUNTANT ™	—	$295

*based on APPLE benchmarks. The Accountant's performance superiority is even **greater** on the IBM PC.

MONEY MAGAZINE — Nov. 1982
"Among bookkeeping programs, earns high marks and is easy to use."

CREATIVE COMPUTING — Jan. 1983
"The documentation is thorough, easily read, and complete."
"The program is so easy to use that rarely will reference have to be made to the manual."

Now available for IBM PC

SOFTALK — Jan. 1982
"For the home user (and perhaps in some less complex small business), *the best package we evaluated was The ACCOUNTANT by Decision Support Software."*
"The ACCOUNTANT does, indeed, make financial management a simple and straightforward procedure."

INFOWORLD — Jan. 3/10, 1983
"Complete flexible financial data base package for the home user."
" . . . exceptionally fast. . . . highly recommend."

The ACCOUNTANT
Finance Data Base System™

Decision Support Software Inc.
1438 Ironwood Drive, McLean, VA 22101 • (703) 241-8316 • Orders Only: (800) 368-2022

Apple™, IBM®, VisiCalc™, The Home Accountant™ are trademarks of Apple, IBM, VisiCorp., and Continental Software respectively.

CLASSIFIED

LOWEST S/W & H/W PRICES

No overhead produces the lowest possible prices ever. No corner is left uncut. Write today for free catalog. Softmail, 3061 Skipper St., San Diego, CA 92123.

GRAPHICS CRAYON

PCcrayon for business, hobbyist, even kids. A TOTAL Graphics package with which you can:

- Easily create drawings and animated slide-show presentations
- Generate hard copy of drawings
- Use our font or create your own
- Source code is included to allow you to add your creations to your own programs

We guarantee that this program will be the ONE to show to your friends.
Send check for $44.95 to:
PCsoftware of San Diego
9120 Grammercy Drive, Suite 416
San Diego, CA 92123
Requires 64K, 2 disk drives, color adapter.

PRINTER UTILITY

GET MORE OUT OF YOUR PRINTER—The SurePrint Printer Support Utility for the IBM pc gives you menu-driven control of your printer's options from DOS, Basic, and Directly On-Line. Available for IBM, Epson, Okidata, C. Itoh and NEC models. Inquire about yours at:

Dickinson Associates Inc.
P.O. Box 1358
Melville, NY 11747

All for $30 plus $5 shipping (NYS residents add 7¼% sales tax).

Softalk/IBM's classified advertising section offers a considerably less expensive way than display advertising to reach tens of thousands of IBM Personal Computer owners.

Classified advertising space is available at the rate of $10 per line for the first ten lines, with a five-line minimum. Each line over ten lines is $25 per line. Ad copy should be received no later than the 10th of the second month prior to the cover date of the issue in which you want the ad to appear. Payment must accompany ad copy.

The publisher reserves the right to reject any advertising that he feels is not in keeping with the publication's standards.

Heads will be set in 10-point boldface, all capitals only. Italics are available for body text only; please underline the portions you would like italicized.

The body text of the ad will hold roughly 45 characters per line. Spaces between words are counted as one character. Heads will hold roughly 24 characters per line, with spaces between words counted as one character. Please indicate whether you would like the head centered or run into the text.

Please write or call for additional information.

Softalk/IBM Classified Advertising
11160 McCormick
Box 60
North Hollywood, California 91603
Attention: Linda McGuire
213-980-5074

QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

by Nancy Andrews

Q: I recently purchased an Okidata 92 printer. While I am highly satisfied with the speed and quality of the output, I have been unable to print graphics using the IBM pc.

I am using DOS 2.0 graphics commands, which work fine on my Epson MX80 with Graftrax. I suspect the problem is in the character conversion area and would appreciate any assistance you could give me.

Thomas A. Ewing

A: It looks like your guess is right: Okidata is currently beta testing new PROMs that support IBM graphics. The new PROMs should be available the third week in June at a cost of about thirty-five dollars. If your local dealer doesn't have the PROMs by then, contact the logistics department at Okidata: (609) 235-2600.

Q: I have a pc with two serial ports. Your May column told how to switch between parallel and a serial port, but this didn't work for me.

Here's my problem: I use *Crosstalk*, which only uses Com1: so I have my modem attached to Com1:. I also use *Wordstar*, and since it too sends its output to Com1:, I must continually switch my printer and modem. Can you help me route either *Wordstar* or *Crosstalk* to Com2:?

Rene Resado

A: Microstuf has a new release of *Crosstalk*, version 3.0, which lets you specify which port to use. This should solve your problem. Microstuf is making the new release available to current users for $15. Send Microstuf your original distribution disk and a check for $15, and the company will send you version 3.0 within twenty-four hours. Microstuf's address is 1845 The Exchange, Suite 140, Atlanta, GA 30339.

Q: What is the fastest way to write a page of characters to the screen? By a page, I mean eighty columns by twenty-four or twenty-five rows.

One of the slowest ways would be to use interpreted Basic with a combination of *locate* and *print* commands or *peeks* and *pokes* from memory to the screen. Of course, compiling the code might speed things up by a factor of about ten. Other compiled languages would also be fast, but I think there are even quicker ways.

When using assembler, there appear to be at least two methods to write characters from memory to the screen. The first is to call DOS interrupt 21 (hex), function 9. This prints a string of characters up to but not including the terminating dollar sign. Repeating this instruction in an assembly language program will cause a page to be written to the screen. However, although this method is fast, it is not nearly as fast as some applications I have seen—such as IBM's *Time Manager*. This program can write a page of characters to the screen instantly—no scrolling effect whatever can be seen.

The second assembly language method is to call ROM BIOS interrupt 10H. But alas, due to my inexperience in assembly language programming, I can only write a page to the screen consisting of a single character. This page is written superfast, but writing a character at a time is hardly what I had in mind.

I suspect these applications use some type of DMA, but I have no idea how to go about accessing this in an assembly language program. Do you have any suggestions?

A: Yes, but first let's straighten up a misconception about DMA. DMA, which stands for Direct Memory Access, is a technique whereby peripherals read or write a block of *their own data* from (or into) the computer's memory, without interference from the processor. The processor waits for the peripheral to complete the data transfer; the peripheral can complete the transfer faster on its own than it could by letting the processor read a byte at a time and then store that byte in memory. The video monitor has no internal memory of its own; it is refreshed directly from the memory on the graphics card, which, to the processor, looks just like any other block of memory locations. Thus in this case there is no "peripheral" trying to transfer its own data from (or into) the computer, and hence no chance for DMA. What you are trying to do is simply move blocks of data from one area of processor memory to another.

Now as to your question, there are two ways to rapidly change the entire screen display. The first and fastest is based on switching active pages. Since the video display fades if it is not constantly rewritten, circuitry on the display card constantly refers to a certain area of memory and writes whatever is in that area to the display, a process known as refreshing the display. Because the memory on the display card is wired so that to the processor it looks like any other normal chunk of memory, this technique is known as memory-mapped video. The monochrome display card and the graphics card in alphanumeric black-and-white mode contain more memory

Give your sensitive electronic equipment the protection it deserves!
Shown here [illegible]
at $107

PANAMAX *surge suppressors provide the fastest response time and highest energy dissipation to eliminate damaging overvoltage "spikes and glitches." Starting at only $59.*

PANAMAX

150 Mitchell Boulevard San Rafael, CA 94903
(415) 472-5547; outside California, TOLL FREE 1-800-472-5555

INVENTORY MANAGERS

DOES YOUR PRESENT SYSTEM PROVIDE YOU WITH THE INFORMATION YOU WANT WHEN YOU WANT IT AND IN THE FORMAT YOU WANT IT?

S.S.R.'s provided computerized business solutions for 13 yrs. We've learned what you need and we'll satisfy those needs with **INFOTORY**™. Our software utilizes all the flexibility and potential of the **IBM PC. INFOTORY**™ provides you with a system that's **easy to learn and use,** that satisfies the requirements of **inventory accounting,** and most importantly, provides you with **information reporting capability** that **can't be provided manually** and isn't provided in any other computerized inventory system.

We accomplished this with **ANYREPORT**™, our unique reporting feature that **sets INFOTORY™ apart from any other system.** Using it, you can get:

- Quantities, amount sold, cost of sales by vendor, by product type, or even by key words like "green" or "5/8 inch" within the description (sect. green sofa or fitting 5/8 inch copper).
- Any data you want—in alphabetical, description, p/n, location, descending sales order, or in whatever order and with whatever data your purchasing function, accountant, warehouse or sales people need to perform their jobs better.
- Summarized sales and cost of sales information by product category, by vendor or by each item—MTD and YTD.

How long would it take you to sort through and list, in whatever order, your inventory items costing between $13.00 & $21.00, purchased from XYZ company, that have a gross profit of between 25% & 32%, that you have more than 10 of in stock? Use **ANYREPORT**™, walk away and the report's ready when you return. **This is only one of the many benefits of ANYREPORT**™.

To learn more about the many benefits that **INFOTORY**™ can bring to your business, **give us a call or stop in at your nearest dealer.**

SSR

S.S.R. Corp.
1600 Lyell Avenue
Rochester, NY 14606
[716] 254-3200

Anytime Support

than is required to display one screen (or page) of text, however. Thus the fastest method to update the display is to write the new screen data into an inactive page and then switch to that page. This results in a virtually instantaneous rewrite of the entire screen, since the data is already in memory and the refresh circuitry need only look to the new page when it starts the next refresh cycle.

In the second method, the active page is not changed, but new data is written directly to it *while* it is active. Although this can involve moving up to two thousand characters (twenty-five lines of eighty characters), if it is done in a tight assembler loop (and such a loop can be extremely tight), to the eye it would appear to be virtually as fast as simply switching pages. There is a caveat to writing directly to the active page, however: Since circuitry is reading from the active page to refresh the screen, you are liable to get momentary bits of garbage on-screen, which will look like static on a regular TV. There is a way around this problem also, and it involves waiting for vertical retrace. Vertical retrace is the period of time when the electron beam is moving from the lower right-hand corner of the screen to the upper left corner to begin a new screen refresh cycle. No characters are written during this transition, so you can safely write directly to the active page of screen memory during this time period. Vertical retrace is signaled by a DOS interrupt.

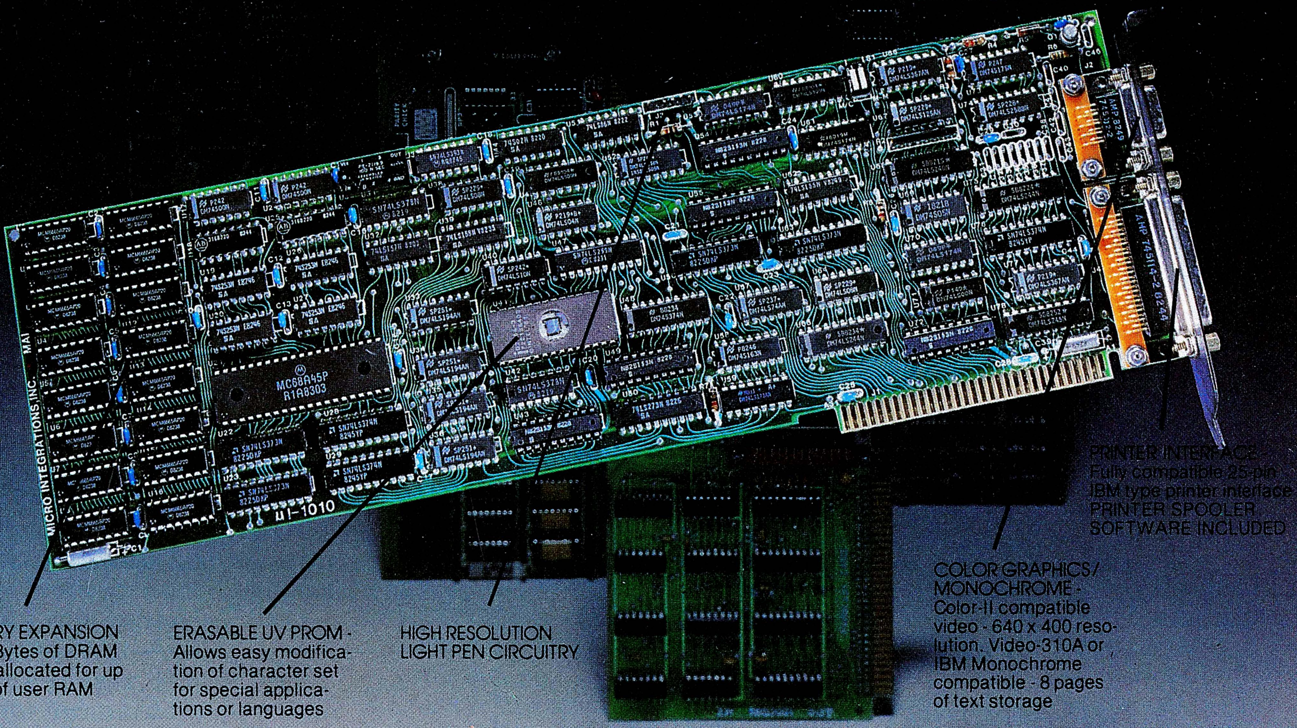
In terms of both the apparent speed with which the screen is updated and ease of implementation, the better method of changing the entire display is simply to switch active pages: It's the fastest, and you needn't worry about glitching the screen or waiting for retrace. Switching active pages can be done by putting a value of 5 in the AH register and then executing a ROM BIOS interrupt 10H.

If this is what you are doing—there are several video functions available under DOS interrupt 10, and you didn't specify which ones you are using—it's unlikely your problem lies with this part of your code. The problem is much more likely to be found in the way you load the inactive memory page. Assuming your basic code is correct (you *are* updating your source pointer each time you move a character, aren't you?), the problem is probably to be found in your choice of BIOS routine to load memory. In particular, note that under interrupt 10H there are three BIOS routines to move characters to screen memory. Two of those routines (AH=9 or 10) *do not update the cursor* when you are writing to the inactive page. Thus if you positioned the cursor at row 1, column 1, and proceeded to write characters, each successive character would overwrite the previous character, and you would end up with a one-character page. If you are using either of these functions, update the cursor after each call. Alternatively, you should be able to use the WRITE_TTY routine (interrupt 10H, AH=14), which updates the cursor automatically after each write.

Here's a short routine to move a block of characters from one area of memory to another. You can use it to write characters directly to the active page, or better still, write characters to an inactive page and then change active pages.

```
;This routine copies a user-maintained text buffer into the text
;video RAM. This user text buffer is assumed to be a sequence of
;ASCII characters. No attribute byte is currently allowed,
;although one may easily be added by doubling the size of the text
;buffer, removing the INC D1, and changing the MOVSB to MOVSW. The
;correspondence between bytes in the buffer and chars on the
;screen is that the character at the Ith column and Jth row is N
;bytes from the start of the buffer, where N = (J-1)*80 + (I-1).
;(Column 1, line 1 is in the upper left corner.)
;
; At entry: DS:SI is the segment:offset address of the user's
; text buffer. ES:DI is the segment offset address of the video
; RAM.
;       monochrome video RAM = B000:0000
;       color card video RAM = B800:0000 (page 0)
;       color card video RAM = B800:0800 (pg 1, 40 col)
;       color card video RAM = B800:1000 (pg 1, 80 col)
;           Pages 2-3 (80 col) and 2-7 (40 col) found by
;           adding 1000H or 800H to offsets
```

Put graphics & multi function in one slot.



MEMORY EXPANSION - 128K Bytes of DRAM can be allocated for up to 96K of user RAM

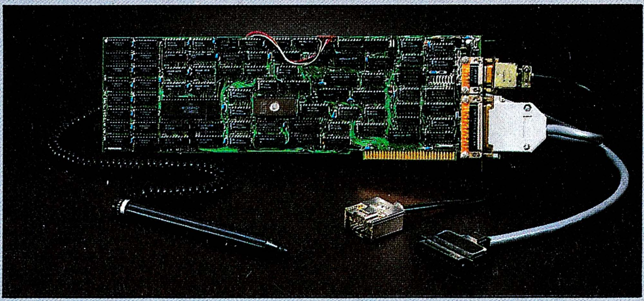
ERASABLE UV PROM - Allows easy modification of character set for special applications or languages

HIGH RESOLUTION LIGHT PEN CIRCUITRY

COLOR GRAPHICS/ MONOCHROME - Color-II compatible video - 640 x 400 resolution. Video-310A or IBM Monochrome compatible - 8 pages of text storage

PRINTER INTERFACE - Fully compatible 25-pin IBM type printer interface PRINTER SPOOLER SOFTWARE INCLUDED

This IBM/PC compatible board provides memory expansion (128 KBytes of DRAM), monochrome or color video, light pen, and printer interface on a single plug-in board. The MAI board's high-density memory (up to 8 pictures storagé) provides unexcelled color graphics enhanced up to 640(H) x 400(V) resolution in a wide variety of operating modes. Modes are selectable right on the board.



Now available with Halo* software for 320 x 200 16-color, 640 x 200 4-color, and 400 vertical line resolution modes. (*Halo is a registered trademark of Media Cybernetics, Inc.)

COMPARISON CHART

	COLOR		MONOCHROME	
	IBM	AMDEK	IBM	AMDEK
SLOT 1	Color Graphics Board	MAI Board	Black & White/ Parallel Board	MAI Board
SLOT 2	Printer Board			
SLOT 3	RAM Board 1 Slot Left*	3 Slots Left*	RAM Board 2 Slots Left*	3 Slots Left*

*When Using Disk Controller

Just circle the reader service number, or call direct for complete technical specifications and prices.

2201 Lively Blvd. • Elk Grove Village, IL 60007
(312) 364-1180 TLX: 25-4786

AMDEK

REGIONAL OFFICES: Calif. (714) 662-3949 • Texas (817) 498-2334

Amdek . . . your guide to innovative computing!

```
; CX is the number of bytes in the user's text area to copy
;        38EH for 40 col mode, no attributes
;        D70H for 40 col mode, attrs included
;        7D0H for 80 col mode, no attributes
;        FA0H for 80 col mode, attrs included
; At exit: CX, SI, DI destroyed, all other regs preserved

ASSUME CS:THISSEG, DS:THISSEG,
ASSUME ES:THISSEG, SS:THISSEG
THISSEG            SEGMENT

FLASHSCREEN        PROC NEAR

                   PUSH CX
                   PUSH SI
                   PUSH DI

COPYLOOP:          MOVSB              ;Copy a byte from DS:SI to
                                      ;ES:DI and then increment
                                      ;both SI and DI
                   INC  DI            ;Skip attr byte in video RAM
                   LOOP COPYLOOP      ;Decrement CX and if
                                      ;the result isn't 0, go back
                                      ;and copy next byte
                   POP  DI
                   POP  SI
                   POP  CX
                   RET

FLASHSCREEN        ENDP

THISSEG            ENDS
END
```

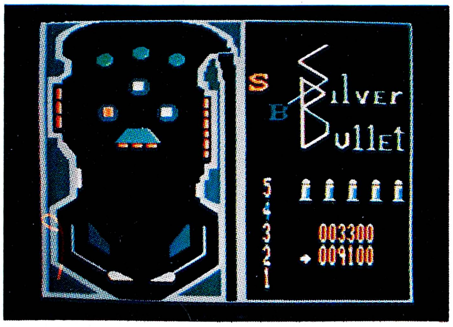
Q: In writing assembly routines to allow BIOS calls from IBM Pascal, I've come to an impasse with the ACT–DIS–PAGE procedure (BIOS listing, line 3570). When I attempt to set an active page other than page 0, and then write to that page, I see only the first and last characters written. It is as if the cursor were not being updated. Using the same routine to turn back to page 0, everything is fine. My listing follows:

```
setpage   proc     far
          public   setpage
          push     BP              ;save caller frame pointer
          mov      BP,SP           ;establish new frame
          mov      AL, [BP+6]      ;get page
          mov      AH,5            ;set function to select active page
          int      10H             ;invoke BIOS
          pop      BP              ;restore caller frame pointer
          ret      2               ;clear stack
setpage   endp
```

Any suggestions? Am I correct in assuming that Pascal's *writeln* ultimately calls the BIOS routine WRITE TTY via DOS interrupt 21, function 2? Thanks for your help.
Robert Wohlhueter

A: Our readers seemed to be plagued lately by a faulty cursor incrementing. No, you are apparently not right, since WRITE TTY is the one function that does increment the cursor. You have several choices to handle string output to pages other than 0. Probably the safest choice is to use BIOS function call 9 to print a string. That function uses the default attribute, however, so it won't let you use color. If you need color, you can use the BIOS call to write a string (see page 1–19 of the *Technical Reference* manual). As long as you're messing around in assembler, you will probably find the routine presented in reply to the previous question useful. But if you want to do your writing in Pascal, why not write one character at a time and then call a routine that updates the cursor? ▲

Silver Bullet PINBALL GAME
FOR IBM® PERSONAL COMPUTERS



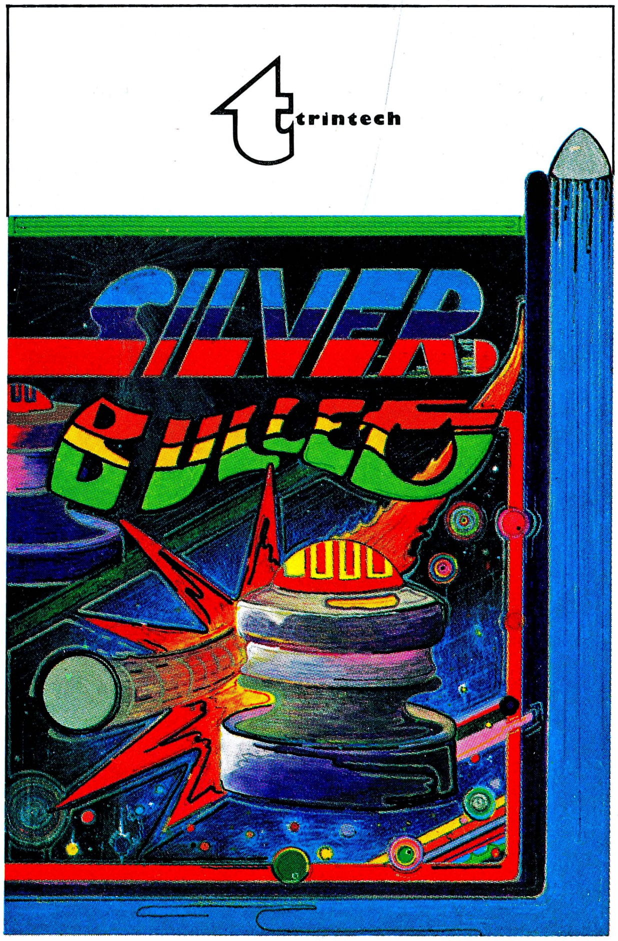
Hi-Res Color, Sound Multi-Player Keyboard or Joystick Sound On-Off Hi-Speed Machine-Language Action Composite or RGB Monitor Requires Color Graphic Adapter Card and 64K System

$29.95
See your dealer or write to:

trintech
4343 SOUTH PADRE ISLAND DR.
SUITE 512
CORPUS CHRISTI, TEXAS 78411
512/854-4726

MasterCard
VISA

IBM® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation



IS WORDSTAR® AS GOOD AS POWERTEXT?®

QUESTIONS TO ASK YOUR SOFTWARE SUPPLIER BEFORE HE SELLS YOU A WORD PROCESSING SYSTEM FOR YOUR IBM PC.

Ask a computer products dealer for word processing software, and chances are he'll try to sell you Wordstar.

It's a pretty good system. Lots of people use it. And besides, he's got it in his inventory, and you can take it home with you right now.

But before you settle for Wordstar, remember that—whatever system you choose—you'll be using it for a long time. So your decision should be based on *system performance*—not what the dealer happens to have on hand.

That's why you should look into PowerText.

Quite simply, PowerText will do far more for you than Wordstar.

We realize that's a very tough claim. But the Wordstar users who've switched to PowerText will tell you it's true. And if you'll read on, we'll give you some key questions to ask your dealer:

Ask if Wordstar automatically styles your copy for any kind of document you write. Can you tell Wordstar, "This is a letter," and then get a perfect letter, with the date, name and address, salutation, and closing exactly where you want them to be—automatically?

Does Wordstar produce memos, reports, presentations, and scripts in precisely the formats you want without your ever having to worry about where the words go on the paper?

Well, Wordstar *doesn't* do those things for you. But PowerText *does*.

That means with PowerText you can concentrate on what you're writing, not on printed style. You always get a beautiful, perfectly formatted document—automatically.

Just think of how much time and effort these remarkable capabilities will save you. It's almost like dictating to your computer.

PowerText gives you automatic margins. Indents. Spacing. Title page. Envelope or label.

Automatic justification. Centering. Variable pitch. Pagination. Table of contents.

And truly *intelligent* page breaks. (You'll never end up with "Yours truly," all by itself on the last page of your letter.)

And an enormously useful feature that automatically indents and numbers for you when you write numbered paragraphs—a great time-saver when you're doing outlines, reports, or questionnaires.

Plus columnar capabilities so sophisticated and flexible they can handle just about any problem you can think up.

Ask if Wordstar gives you all these features. (It doesn't.)

Of course, both PowerText and Wordstar give you complete editing capabilities. All good word processing systems do.

But PowerText gives you *built-in* form letter capability. With Wordstar, you'll need to buy the Mailmerge® system to produce form letters.

And PowerText gives you automatic headers and footers. *And* boxed copy. *And* print macros. *And* automatic footnote numbers. *And* boilerplate inclusion. *And* vertical and horizontal border lines. *And* 132-character lines. *And* superscripts and subscripts.

With PowerText there's no limit to document length. And PowerText accommodates a full 25 percent more data per disk than Wordstar (or standard IBM software).

PowerText is a straightforward, easy-to-learn, easy-to-use system. You'll master it quickly with our superb new 10-lesson tutorial. You get a complete reference manual, too.

PowerText is a run-time, bootable system. It requires at least 64K of memory, two disk drives, and a printer. It supports both serial and parallel printer interfaces, extended memory, and RAM disk.

And, oh yes, be sure to ask your dealer about Wordstar's warranty. (It doesn't have one.)

PowerText does, and it's very simple: The system is warranted for a full five years. Should it ever fail to perform as specified, Beaman Porter, Inc. will fix it at no charge.

If you decide PowerText is the right system for you, you may find your dealer doesn't have it in stock. But he can get it for you, and quickly. Just have him call us at (914) 967-3504.

Or if you wish, you can order directly from Beaman Porter right now, using the coupon below.

If you have any questions about PowerText, by all means call us. We're always available to give you expert help and advice. With Beaman Porter, service and support are always as near as your phone.

PowerText®

COMPLETE POWERTEXT SYSTEM
FOR IBM PC: $399.
TUTORIAL/MANUAL ALONE: $25.

BEAMAN PORTER, INC.
High Performance Computer Products
Pleasant Ridge Road, Harrison, NY 10528 (914) 967-3504

BEAMAN PORTER, INC.
Pleasant Ridge Road, Harrison, NY 10528

☐ Send ________ complete PowerText system(s) for IBM PC: @ $399 (prepaid).

☐ Send ________ PowerText tutorial/manual(s) only, @ $25 (prepaid).

(NY residents add appropriate sales tax.)

☐ My check or money order for $__________ enclosed.
Or bill $__________ to my:

☐ Mastercard ☐ Visa

(Mastercard: list 4 digits above your name: __________).

Card No. ____________________ Exp. Date __________

Signature __________________________ Date ________

Name ____

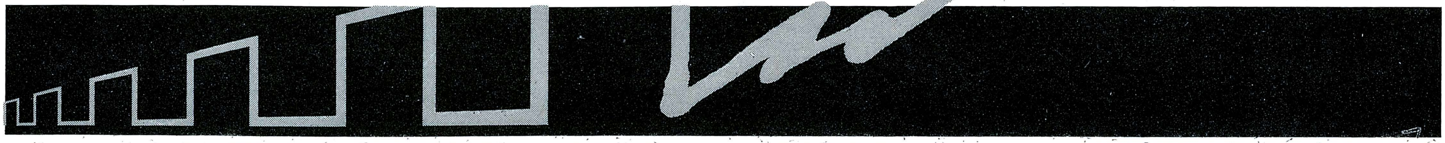
Street ____

City ____

State ____________________________ Zip __________

WORDSTAR and MAILMERGE are trademarks of MicroPro International Corp.

COMMLINES



BY KEVIN GOLDSTEIN

Last month we talked about some of the effects the computer-telecommunications combo might have on our world by the end of the decade. This month we'll start by taking a brief look at some important events in the history of telecommunications, a look that will lead to some very practical discoveries. That done, we will return to the present and see how we can put some of these discoveries to use. Finally, we'll look at a few of the new and exciting ways we can make telecommunications technologies serve us in our own homes.

DISKETTES
3M Scotch BRAND

AT SUPER LOW PRICES
FOR YOUR IBM COMPUTER
Scotch DISKETTES
ARE TESTED AND GUARANTEED
ERROR FREE
CALL TOLL FREE TODAY
IBM CLUB MEMBERS WELCOME
WE SHIP WITHIN 24 HOURS

HOME COMPUTER FURNITURE
NOT LOW PRICED COMPUTER
FURNITURE, BUT . . . QUALITY
COMPUTER FURNITURE AT LOW PRICES
SEND FOR FREE CATALOG
VISA MasterCard
MASTERCARD • VISA • C.O.D.
WE PAY SHIPPING CHARGES

CALL TOLL FREE
800-922-8193
IN CA 800-468-1068

TAYCO
Tayco Business Forms
Computer Supplies
P.O. Box 605
Newbury Park, CA 91320

If technologies were people, microcomputers would be kids and telecommunications would be old men. Several of today's very popular telecommunications technologies have been around quite a while—the technologies behind low-speed asynchronous communications across the direct distance dial telephone network, for example. Because those telecommunications technologies have been in use for so long, a number of standards have evolved that are universally recognized and adhered to.

The first company to slap modems onto telephone lines was Ma Bell, back when AT&T was AT&T, a monopoly consisting, for our purposes, of the following elements: AT&T long lines (the branch responsible for the long-distance carrier channels); a variable number of operating subsidiaries (you're safe calling it twenty-two); Western Electric, the manufacturing arm; and Bell Labs, the research arm. AT&T, not so affectionately known as Ma Bell, was the only company allowed to hook up equipment directly to the telephone line, which Bell held to be almost sacred property.

Whatever can be said against monopolies, they have one thing going for them: Because a monopoly is the only game in town, it offers no chance for competing technical specifications to develop; compatibility between equipment from various manufacturers never becomes an issue. Before the Carterphone decision in 1968, in which the courts essentially ruled that AT&T could not prevent outside suppliers from hooking their "foreign equipment" directly to Bell telephone lines, about the only way to send data over a telephone line was via a modem rented from the phone company. The most popular modem was a low-speed number designated the 103; it could send and receive data simultaneously at up to 300 bits per second, although it was more generally used at the 110-bit-per-second rate of the ubiquitous Teletype. The Teletype, incidentally, also came from Bell, via Bell-owned Teletype Corporation.

Since it was the first—and for a long time the only—low-speed modem, Bell's 103 became the standard for low-speed communications. Even today, with a few score of companies cranking out modems in a dizzying array of flavors—dumb to brilliant, in a box or on a board—the technical specifications of the 103 remain the low-speed standard, and practically every maker of low-speed modems describes its offering in this category as "Bell 103-compatible." In a coming issue, we'll discuss just what 103-compatibility means technically; for now, it's enough to know that if someone in the computer industry is talking about a low-speed modem, he's probably talking about a box that's Bell 103-compatible, and thus capable *at the hardware level* of talking over the phone line to almost all existing low-speed modems.

"At the Hardware Level." Note the "at the hardware level" that was slipped in there: Although two systems might use identical modems and thus be compatible at the hardware level, they might still not be able to exchange anything but gibberish if the computers they are connected to aren't also compatible at the software level. If your computer uses seven-bit ASCII and your friend's uses an eight-bit code called EBCDIC, it won't be enough that you can receive each other's bit streams correctly; there will still be work to do before you're compatible. We'll get into this concept of layers of compatibility in a later issue.

So the Bell 103 specifications became one of the first de facto standards for low-speed telecommunications. Bell was concerned with its phone line, and being Bell 103-compatible meant (and still means) a modem would put encoded data onto the phone line in a manner compatible with the 103 modem made by Bell.

Of course, the phone is only one of the communications pipes connected to the phone line. The other communications pipe (which we'll now start calling by one of its more conventional names—input/output channel or input/output port or, more simply, I/O channel or port) is connected to the computer. Thus there are two places, at the hardware level alone, where incompatibility may arise: first at the computer or terminal side, and second at the phone line side. (Modems, as we shall see, are nothing more than a high-tech Pandora's box. Before long in your introduction to the mysteries of communications, and to high-speed synchronous modems in particular, you may become convinced that the sole *raison d'etre* of a modem is to present you with a box that can go wrong in as many ways as possible. Let's hope this series will steer you around some of the more, er, interesting potential snafus.) Fortunately, most low-speed modems that come as standalone boxes, rather than as plug-in cards, have also settled upon a standard for the computer-side port; that standard is the RS-232 interface about which you've heard so much. RS-232 is a very important standard; we'll return to it in a later issue when we can give it the space it deserves.

The prevalence of standards in the telecommunications arena contrasts markedly with the incompatible hodgepodge of specifications in the immature microcomputer field. It's possible, however, to use those telecommunications standards to bring some measure of compatibility to microcomputers. Suppose, for example, that we want to have our IBM pc process a data file that a friend has created on an Apple disk. Industry standards for formatting 5 1/4-inch disks hardly exist (although IBM's pc format is showing strong signs of becoming a de facto standard), so there is no direct (or at least no direct and cheap) way of hooking up the pc so it can read Apple disks. But we can fall back on the standardization that exists in telecommunications technologies to connect the two computers through a modem and exchange files that way.

As you've probably noticed by now, standards are an extremely important part of telecommunications, and we will spend a good deal of time getting to know the more useful ones. When you think about it, the importance of standards to telecommunications technologies is practically a given: For communications to be successful, the communicators must be speaking the same language and using the same medium. Thus, studying telecommunications means learning about the standards computers use to communicate, just as studying communications between people involves studying the standards people use to communicate—English, French, body language, or whatever. The Bell 103 and RS-232 standards are two well-established workhorses of the computer industry. Other standards, such as those for tying groups of computers or equipment together into networks, are still being developed. Some of the standards being developed, such as those for local-area networks (LANs) like Ethernet, may already be familiar to you.

Mininetworks for the Home. To an individual, a standard that may be much more exciting than the LAN is the SAN: the small-area network. Just as a LAN can be used to connect equipment in different rooms of one building, or in closely located but separate buildings, so a SAN can connect equipment within the same room, or in different rooms of the same not-too-large building. But while a LAN operates at high speed and is targeted to businesses needing to connect computers, fax machines, and the like, a SAN operates at a much lower speed, one appropriate for sending control signals to your stereo, television, or answering machine.

Have you ever wished you could call home and tell your computer to turn on the air conditioning, flip a few lights on and off to confuse any potential burglar, then replay the phone messages and forward your calls to your friend's house? It's exactly those kinds of things that SANs will be used for. Some early stabs at SANs already exist. One large integrated circuit manufacturer, Signetics, a subsidiary of giant Philips Semiconductor of Europe, is manufacturing a SAN chip, which means that in time you'll be able to make a mininetwork of your stereo, appliances, and personal computer—a computerized home of the future to match the much-ballyhooed office of the future.

Actually, something very close to a SAN for the home already exists. The Home Control System, manufactured by BSR (the same company that makes turntables and other audio equipment) and sold by Sears and Radio Shack under their own names (as well as by other retailers under the BSR name), sends digitally encoded data through a serial communications channel to a network of terminals; but the "terminals" in this case are light dimmers or appliance switches and the communications channel is the 110-volt ac power line that runs through the house.

Piggybacking data onto the power line is known as carrier-current transmission; it's a good way to distribute low-speed data within a small area, and indeed, there are such things as modems that use carrier-current transmission techniques. You simply plug your equipment into the house power line, and you have established both the power *and*

Data transfer problems?

CP/M™ ⟷ MS/DOS™ • PC/DOS™ ⟷ CP/M

Use CROSSDATA™ Power!

CROSSDATA copies disk-to-disk any file from a CP/M format to a MS/DOS or PC/DOS format...and vice versa.

CROSSDATA is completely self-contained, includes on-screen directions, printed instructions in a manual, and is compatible with IBM/PC or compatible computers.

CROSSDATA system requirements are 64K RAM memory and two disk drives.

CROSSDATA—Available from your local dealer at a suggested retail price of $99 or from GKE Software.

CROSSDATA is a trademark of AWARDS SOFTWARE, INC.
CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research Corporation.
MS/DOS & PC/DOS are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

GKE Software

236 N. Santa Cruz Ave.
Los Gatos, CA 95030 (408) 354-5010

☐ Please send me more information on CROSSDATA power.
☐ I am interested in becoming a GKE dealer.

Name________ Title________
Company Name________
Business Address________
City________ State________ Zip________

the communications-line connections. (Such modems are not Bell 103-compatible.) Carrier-current transmission is limited by the practicalities of house wiring: As long as the whole house shares common wiring, the data will be available anywhere in the house.

Several companies are already manufacturing boards for the IBM pc that let the computer control light-dimmer and appliance switches; plug such a board into your pc and you'll have created your own personalized SAN.

By now it's becoming clear that the little scenario presented earlier—calling home to direct your computer to turn off the air conditioning, flip a few lights on and off, then replay phone messages and forward any calls—is not so far-fetched. As a matter of fact, the combination of one of those plug-in boards to connect your computer to your home control system and an auto-answer modem to enable you to access your home computer via telephone could constitute a neat little system capable of doing almost everything we discussed. You could even buy a board that decodes Touch-Tone signals, so you wouldn't need to call your computer from another computer.

You would still have trouble with one thing, however: getting your computer to replay your phone messages.

Texas Instruments is a company deeply afflicted by the NIH syndrome: If it was Not Invented Here, TI doesn't want to sell it. But when it looked at the domination of the personal computer market that IBM was attaining, TI decided it would offer a computer that would be compatible with the IBM pc at the software level, if not at the hardware level (you can swap some disks—all data disks and some program disks—between the two machines, but you can't swap boards). So TI swallowed hard and decided to use Intel's 8088 processor rather than its own 9900 machine, the latter a worthy microprocessor that never caught on. In order to differentiate its machine, dubbed the Professional Computer, from the hordes of other pc-compatibles, TI decided to offer some specialized hardware. That hardware turned out to be a real zinger.

His Master's Voice. The heart of TI's new offering is a device that's both a voice digitizer/synthesizer and a voice-recognition unit. The voice digitizer/synthesizer lets you do such things as store digitally encoded voice messages on your disk in files and access them much as you now access digitally encoded text files (the difference being that text files must be output to a display screen or printer to make sense, while voice files go to a speaker). The system also contains a nifty little circuit capable of decoding Touch-Tones.

Now, suppose you recorded on disk messages for five of your friends. Make up a number for each friend, and tell them that when they call you they should type in that number on the Touch-Tone keypad. Since the TI board includes a modem that can answer the phone and decode Touch-Tones, you can now program your computer as a smart answering machine capable of answering the phone and delivering a customized message to each of your friends. It could then take a verbal message, digitally encode it, and store it on disk. Later, you could call your computer and *tell* it (the board has a voice-recognition unit capable of understanding a minimum of forty words from one speaker) to replay all of your messages, or maybe just the messages from friends five and three.

Taken one step farther—having the computer call you automatically to deliver the messages—this process would go by the fancy name of store-and-forward message switching; TI's board is just the ticket for setting up your own private store-and-forward message switcher. Or, by calling the computer on one line and having it connect you to a second line to dial out, you could effectively implement your own miniature private phone exchange (PBX). So it turns out that it's possible to do right now all of the tricky things described earlier, as well as a host of others limited as much by your imagination as by technology.

Don't be put off by the fact that TI's board won't work in your pc. Tecmar has already announced a board with very similar capabilities, and it's a sure bet that if TI's board attains half the popularity the industry is expecting, work-alike boards for the pc will be available from manufacturers such as AST, Quadram, and Tecmar. The boards use what is known as a *codec*, or coder/decoder, to digitize voice or synthesize voice from a digitized voice file. Codecs are a key component of Bell's plans for a fully digitized phone network: Just as they can be used to digitize voice and store the resulting bit stream on disk, so can they be used to digitize voice and send the bit stream out over a digitized phone network, like the one discussed in last month's installment. We'll examine codecs more closely in a future issue, at the same time getting a better understanding of how a board like TI's works.

Next month in Comm Lines, we'll start discussing some of the more important technical concepts, such as bandwidth and analog versus digital signals, and examine the practical implications of those concepts for telecommunicating with the IBM pc. ▲

Btrieve™

A b-tree based record retrieval system designed to solve all your application's database needs.

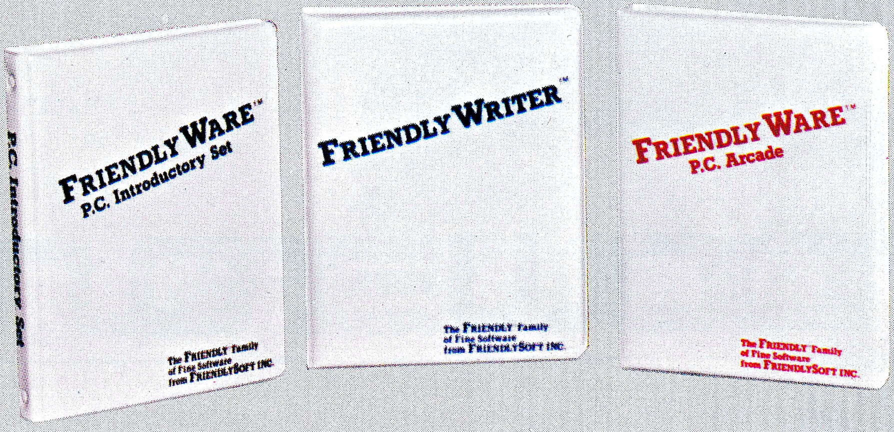
- **interfaces to BASIC, Pascal, COBOL and C**
- **multi-key access to any number of files**
- **duplicate and modifiable keys**
- **unlimited number of records per file**
- **built-in file integrity controls**
- **unsurpassed access speed**
- **efficient memory utilization**

Compare Btrieve's capabilities to any record management or ISAM system available and we are convinced that you will select Btrieve. Write or call for details today. $145.00

SoftCraft Inc.
P O Box 9802, #590 Austin, TX 78766
(512) 346-8380

Requires PC-DOS.
Btrieve is a trademark of SoftCraft, Inc.
PC-DOS is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

There are three good reasons why we're called "one of the fastest growing software companies in the business"


FRIENDLY WARE™
P.C. Introductory Set
P.C. Introductory Set
The FRIENDLY Family of Fine Software from FRIENDLYSOFT INC.
FRIENDLY WRITER™
The FRIENDLY Family of Fine Software from FRIENDLYSOFT INC.
FRIENDLY WARE™
P.C. Arcade
The FRIENDLY Family of Fine Software from FRIENDLYSOFT INC.

FRIENDLYSOFT, INC.

ARLINGTON, TEXAS

Producers of innovative, quality software products
EXCLUSIVELY for the IBM Personal Computer

All FriendlySoft products are available through an international network of dealers including COMPUTERLAND STORES, IBM PRODUCT CENTERS, COMPU-SHOPS, ENTRE COMPUTER CENTERS and a growing list of independent software dealers.

AMDEK Color-I

The men behind the monitors. Go Sugiura, far right, is the president and founder of Amdek. Ted McCracken, center, a former computer store owner, is now Amdek's director of engineering. Dan Rimes, left, never had a formal education in sales and marketing, but he's taken on those jobs at Amdek.

EXEC AMDEK

WINDOW TO THE

by David Hunter

Amdek Corporation has been lucky. One of the first few dozen companies to start up around the microcomputer industry, Amdek (formerly Leedex) has survived by taking chances — and more than once has experienced pleasant surprises.

A case in point is its introduction of an RGB monitor into the microcomputer market. In early 1981, an RGB monitor was an expensive item for a personal computer owner. Amdek, unsure whether the monitors would sell and fearful of jeopardizing its livelihood, committed cautiously to its overseas manufacturer.

Practically the same day the monitors were delivered to Amdek, IBM announced the Personal Computer, which had color capabilities requiring an RGB monitor. Suddenly Amdek had not ordered enough units and was caught short, but that was only a minor problem. A whole new market was emerging, and Amdek was in a good position to move in with gusto.

Luck, courage, wisdom and skill have made Amdek what it is today. It's the old story of one individual's dream come true through hard work and sacrifice. It's also the story of a part-time consulting engineer, an energetic sales manager, and an island country called Japan.

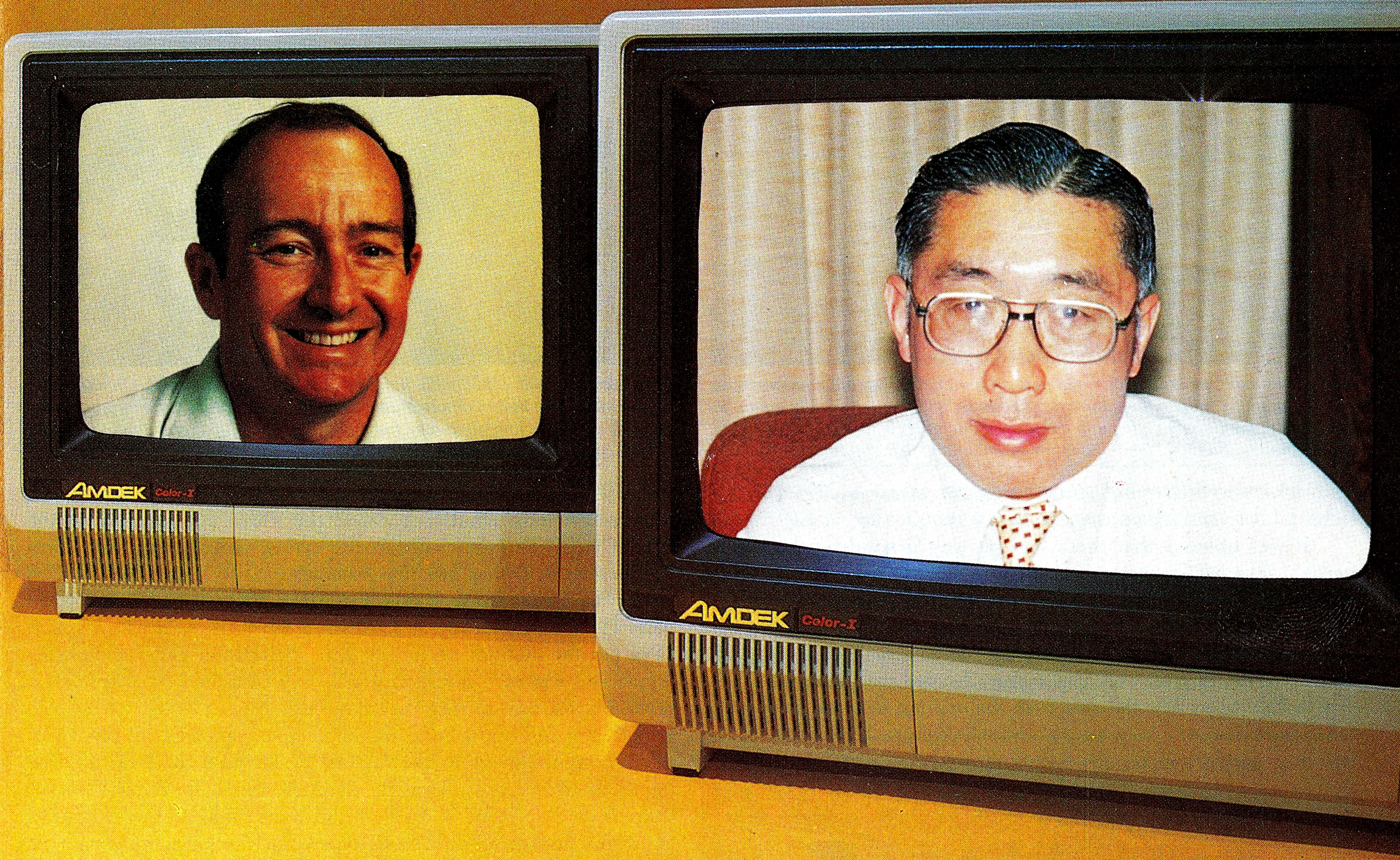
The Far Traveler. Go Sugiura, president and founder of Amdek, left Japan about twenty-three years ago. Since then, he has lived in Caracas, Venezuela, and the western suburbs of Chicago, following the same basic calling for six years at the first location and seventeen years at the latter.

The importing and selling of electronics products produced in Japan is a way of life for Sugiura—an exciting, hectic, sometimes risky way of life. Since the summer of 1977, Sugiura has been in business for himself, and the risks and excitement have doubled or tripled. In seven years, Sugiura has gone from managing the sales office of a Japanese company to heading his own company—a journey that has had both rough turns and stretches of almost unbelievable progress.

Seventeen years ago in Caracas, Sugiura was in the right place at the right time. He was working in the business of importing various product lines from Japan.

"One of the companies I was dealing with wanted to open a sales office in the United States," Sugiura recalls, "but they didn't have qualified people at that particular moment. So they came to me and I saw that there was tremendous opportunity in the U.S.—the biggest market in the world—business opportunities and career opportunities. So I decided to move to the States."

This year Sugiura may be more thankful than ever that he made that decision; it has taken him far from his homeland and yet has



FUTURE

brought him wealth, security, and the promise of more opportunities and even greater rewards in the future. Amdek is a company on the move.

Enter the Consultant. In the last two and a half years, Amdek has gone through a several-hundred-percent increase in personnel and a shift in emphasis that now sees the company becoming purveyors of an exciting line of peripheral products for a number of different personal computers.

Amdek's success has been realized through the efforts of many people, not the least of whom is the company's director of engineering, Ted McCracken.

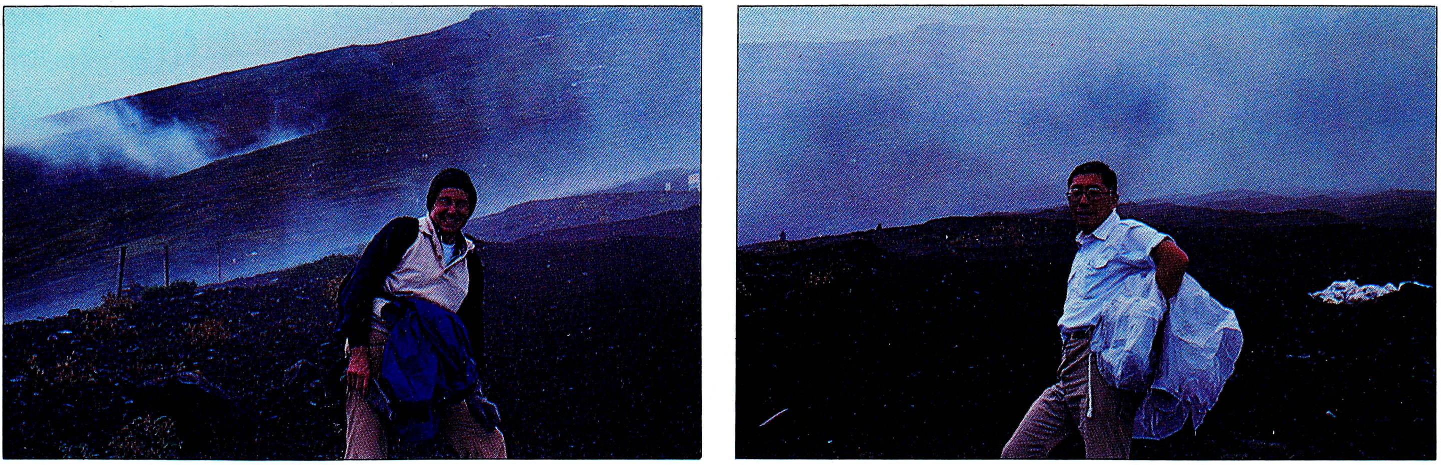
After earning a master's degree in electrical engineering from the University of Missouri at Columbia, McCracken worked for RCA, designing disk drives for minicomputers. In 1971, RCA left the minicomputer business and McCracken soon ended up in school back in Missouri. While earning his doctorate, McCracken also worked at the University of Missouri; after graduating, he took a temporary faculty position there.

In 1976, when the first microcomputers were appearing, McCracken started a consulting group to design interfaces for minicomputers, specializing in Perkin-Elmer's line of business machines. That year, McCracken's and Sugiura's paths crossed for the first time—under less than ideal circumstances.

McCracken was consulting for a bank that was foreclosing on an electronics company. Sugiura had sold components to the company on an open account and had never received payment. In the process of meeting with the bank, Sugiura met McCracken and, despite the gloomy atmosphere of that situation, a friendship developed between the two men. In the following year, Sugiura called upon McCracken frequently for advice.

When he first struck out on his own in the summer of 1977, Sugiura called his company Leedex. It was basically a continuation of the business he had been in before—the sale of Japanese electronics components to OEMs. The name was changed to Amdek early in 1981, when an Ohio company called Ledex, which makes connectors and small motors, voiced displeasure over the confusion that had arisen among some consumers. "We had no choice but to change," says Sugiura.

Sugiura began thinking about importing monitors around the same time McCracken saw his first Apple. That was June 1977. Later that year, McCracken got a call from Sugiura, asking for advice as usual, and a little more this time. Sugiura had found a monitor during his travels to Taiwan that he thought might interest Atari, a company that was just getting into the arcade business with

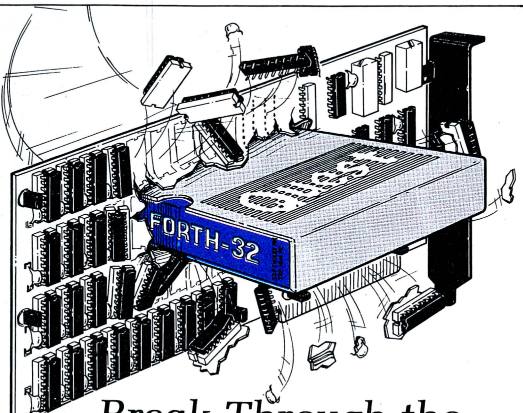


McCracken and Sugiura are pictured here on top of Mt. Fuji. McCracken, who jogs up to seven miles a day, convinced Sugiura, who swims a mile a day, to climb to the top of Japan's famous volcano on one of their frequent trips to the island country. Sugiura, who was born in Japan and left the country twenty-three years ago, had never made the climb before. Sugiura and McCracken met in 1976, when the first microcomputers were appearing. Although they are in the business of importing products from the Far East, they feel that the major technological innovations are still coming from the U.S.

its black-and-white pong games. Sugiura asked McCracken for technical assistance before showing the monitor to Atari.

"It was obvious that there was no way it would meet Atari's needs," says McCracken. "I told Go it wouldn't do, but if it was modified somewhat, it would be good for the Apple."

The only other monitors available at that time for the Apple, besides owners' television sets, were the Sanyo nine-inch black-and-white models. Sugiura and McCracken decided that it might just be worthwhile to modify the design of the existing monitor, import the redesigned monitors in quantity, and sell them to Apple owners for less than they'd pay for the Sanyo model.



Break Through the 64K Barrier!

Make full use of the memory you have by programming with the **FORTH-32** language. A Complete Development System! Floating Point and other Extensions. Call toll-free or contact a participating Computerland store.

Quest

Quest Research, Inc.

303 Williams Ave.
Huntsville, AL 35801
(205) 533-9405

Available for DOS 1.0, 1.1, 2.0
FORTH-32 and the Quest logo are trademarks of Quest Research, Inc.

800-558-8088

After making modifications and improvements, Sugiura and McCracken took what they called the Video 100 monitor to the West Coast Computer Faire in the spring of 1978 and to a computer show in Dallas late that summer.

At the Dallas show, Sugiura shared a booth with another company for the modest fee of $370 for a ten-foot-by-ten-foot space. "We put the monitor on a desk with a character generator on the Apple and waited," says Sugiura. "Very surprisingly, there was a favorable reaction during the show."

Off On the Right Foot. Sugiura remembers that his first production commitment to the factory in Taiwan—for five hundred monitors—was quite a gamble. In international purchases everything is paid up front. If the monitors didn't sell, Leedex, Sugiura's company, probably would have folded. Luckily, the gamble paid off and that first batch sold.

Through 1979 and 1980, Sugiura, with consultation from McCracken, continued to pursue the microcomputer market. In the fall of 1980, Sugiura decided to introduce a color monitor—today's Color-I. There had been great demand for a color monitor, but Sugiura had not previously been able to find a suitable model in his frequent trips to Japan and Taiwan.

From the time of its introduction, the Color-I was a hit and fueled Sugiura's further ventures into the color monitor business. By the end of 1980, Sugiura essentially phased out the selling of electronics components and was concentrating on peripherals for microcomputers. McCracken stayed in Missouri, dividing his time between teaching at the University of Missouri in Rolla and consulting for Sugiura.

McCracken says that each year he has devoted more time to Amdek. This year he finally "gave up" teaching for a while and took a year's leave of absence from the University of Missouri faculty. McCracken plans to return to teaching but says he's having "too much fun right now to miss it."

After the Color-I, Sugiura looked next at higher-resolution color monitors; eventually, he approached Hitachi about an RGB monitor it was manufacturing. At the time, Sugiura says the retail cost had to be around a thousand dollars per monitor, and he said to himself, "Boy, there'll be nobody who'll pay a thousand dollars for a color monitor, but as long as we have a sample, let's show it." This was just before the West Coast Computer Faire in early 1981.

Once again, Sugiura and McCracken were surprised—this time by the favorable reception the RGB monitor received at its introduction in San Francisco. The two entrepreneurs left the show thinking they could sell perhaps five hundred a year. Soon after the favorable showing of the RGB monitor at the Faire, Sugiura made a commitment to the factory for five hundred units. You know the rest of that story.

The Color of the Beast. For a number of reasons, 1981 was the real beginning of Amdek's success. The RGB monitor (called Color-II) really took off when IBM announced the Personal Computer. This cleared the way for a lower-cost RGB monitor (Color-III), which Amdek started selling in early 1982.

In November 1981, a key individual joined the Amdek staff: sales manager Dan Rimes. Rimes, whose varied background included running his own microcomputer business and working for such companies as Heath and Autotrol Technology, says he had a "nice background in high-level graphics." One day he wrote a letter to Sugiura and introduced himself, laying out a possible marketing plan for the company.

In the past year, Rimes and his growing staff of sales and marketing people have worked hard to get Amdek's name known and accepted by consumers. "It's really exciting when people walk in a store and ask for Amdek by name. You have no idea what it took to achieve that. I still think of us as 'little Amdek.' "

Well, "little Amdek" has now expanded into four different locations and has more than forty-five employees. The company is headquartered in the Chicago suburb of Elk Grove Village, where Sugiura and Rimes are based. McCracken has a team of eleven engineers working with him in Rolla, Missouri. Sales offices are in Dallas, Texas, and Costa Mesa, California, which is also the location of the main warehouse and the receiving point for all merchandise shipped from overseas.

Sugiura says the operation of Amdek is loosely structured because the company is still developing rapidly. He has no vice presidents and no board of directors, officially, but that situation is bound to change. Jim Ray, formerly with Northwestern Industries, has just been hired to handle finances, freeing Sugiura from the day-to-day hassles he has faced for so long.

Another key individual is Steve Wilson, who joined Amdek in November 1982, after working for RCS, a distribution company in Los Angeles. Wilson is the manager in charge of sales at Amdek's Costa Mesa sales office.

Musically Uninterested. In 1981, Sugiura started to work fairly closely with a company in Japan called Roland. Initially, Amdek and Roland had planned to do worldwide distribution together, but Sugiura says that halfway through the project the two companies took different directions. There is still some confusion surrounding this story, because Roland set up a division called Amdek but didn't change the name when the two firms parted ways.

The difference in opinion—or direction, if you will—arose from Roland's commitment to the music market, which, Sugiura says, "we didn't really have an interest in. We're strictly a peripherals company."

McCracken also found the idea of music systems unappealing: "From my standpoint—the technical side—what I know about music you could print on a fingernail. The Amdek company in Japan is also into lots of kits for hobbyists. Nowadays, the U.S. market for kits is dead, dead, dead, dead. I told Go something to the effect of 'We go into kits over my dead body.' "

Sugiura admits the situation is confusing, and so does McCracken. As it stands, there are still two Amdeks. At the moment, Sugiura's Amdek doesn't market in Japan and the one in Japan doesn't market here. According to McCracken, Europe is the one place of possible confusion and Sugiura's Amdek is planning to market heavily there in the not-too-distant future.

"But we're all on the same team," McCracken says. "It's just a matter of finding the best way to sort it out."

For the American Amdek, the affair was not a total washout. Sugiura did pick up a one-pen plotter—now known as the Model DXY Plotter—from the Japanese Amdek, and he has been selling it

The Home Accountant™: It can cover your assets.

If you're concerned about your money, it's important to know not only where your assets are but whether they're working for you.

By tracking up to 200 different budget categories,* 5 different checking accounts and all the credit cards you can carry, The Home Accountant will let you know where you stand on any given day. It will even print your checks, your net worth statements and financial statements.

Additionally, full-scale color graphics of actual vs. budgeted expenses give you an instant overview of your financial condition.

The Home Accountant can save you enough time and money to more than justify its cost. And the experts agree:

"Of the five [home financial] programs reviewed here THE HOME ACCOUNTANT is the most thorough and powerful. Considering how much it can do, it's remarkably easy to use."
—Softalk, Apple, April, 1982.

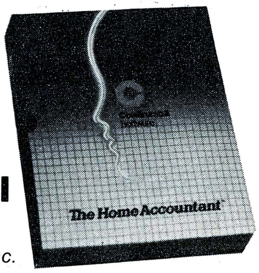
"Personal-finance programs, have for the most part, a manual file system. Only THE HOME ACCOUNTANT is fully automatic."
—Popular Science, December 1982.

"The program itself does just about everything you'd ask of a personal finance package."
—Popular Computing, November, 1982.

THE HOME ACCOUNTANT. The #1 bestselling personal finance program in the world.

Available for: Apple II, IBM Personal Computer, Atari 400/800, Osborne, TRS-80 Model III, Commodore VIC 64.

*Actual budget capacities will vary with each computer.



Continental Software
A Division of Arrays, Inc.

Continental Software, 11223 South Hindry Ave.
Los Angeles, CA 90045, (213) 417-8031.

The Home Accountant is a registered trademark of Continental Software. Apple II is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. IBM Personal Computer is a registered trademark of IBM Corp. Atari 400/800 are registered trademarks of Atari, Inc., a division of Warner Communications, Inc. Osborne is a registered trademark of Osborne Computer Corp. TRS-80 Model III is a registered trademark of Tandy, Inc. Commodore VIC 64 is a registered trademark of Commodore Business Machines, Inc.

in the American market. He says there is always the possibility the two companies will do something together in the future.

Instinct for Survival. Amdek's gradual moves into plotters, peripheral boards, and now microfloppy (three-inch) disk drives is a response to the pressure the company is feeling from certain areas; it can't survive as "just a monitor company," says Sugiura. The major computer manufacturers have got their act together and are starting to offer their own monitors—witness Apple's Monitor III and IBM's new color display.

This year, Amdek is pursuing the IBM pc market with a number of new products and marketing strategies. It entered the exploding multifunction-board market with the MAI—a multiple adapter interface board featuring color and monochrome video output, printer and lightpen interfaces, and additional RAM.

The Amdisk-V half-height five-and-a-quarter-inch drive is a nifty product, as is the Amplot-II six-pen plotter. Sugiura picked up both from Hitachi and is just now introducing them in the market.

The Incredible Shrinking Disk. The exciting product for the IBM Personal Computer that Amdek is just starting to ship is the Amdisk III, a dual three-inch microfloppy disk drive. Sugiura and McCracken realize the product is another gamble for Amdek, but the two are confident it will achieve success on the market.

"There's a lot of confusion right now, with all the different kinds of sub-five-and-a-quarter-inch drives," says Sugiura. "Everyone is saying they have the standard, but we believe there is a possibility it will be the three-inch."

The Amdisk III drives are manufactured by Hitachi and, McCracken notes, in Japan the three-inch drive is more or less becoming standard. "Sony is the only company making three-and-a-half-inch drives. Companies like Mishusta, Cannon, Sayko, and others are all making three-inch drives. Whether or not three-inch becomes the standard in this country, you're going to see a lot of Japanese portable computers in the next few years with three-inch drives."

FREE WORD PROCESSOR

SearchLit

YOUR KEY TO KEEPING UP WITH THAT RAPIDLY EXPANDING LITERATURE IN YOUR PROFESSION

SearchLit is a ready-to-use program for your IBM-PC which stores and searches information related to your own personal literature collection. Each reference, including abstract or your comment, is stored under a set of key words. Retrieval is based on the key words in title, abstract or special key word file. Mention this ad in your purchase order and we will send you a free copy of MediScript I, a multifunction word processor ideal for letters and short to medium length essays.

SearchLit $74.50

In Calif. add 6% sales tax. (Shipping and Handling included in purchase price.) 30 days satisfaction guaranteed or your money back (minus $4.00 Shipping and Handling).

MediSoft

Medical Professions Building
1595 Soquel Drive, Suite 350
Santa Cruz, CA 95065

Two or three months ago, McCracken was still skeptical about the three-inch drive, but lately he's feeling a little more confident about it. "Sony did a tremendous job of marketing and made it seem that this country wanted three-and-a-half-inch drives as the standard.

"They [Sony] tried to get the American National Standards Institute to rule on the microfloppy standard in favor of the three-and-a-half-inch," McCracken explains. "ANSI rejected it, because the Sony drives were not compatible with existing five-and-a-quarter-inch formats."

Currently, Amdek is offering only single-sided Amdisk III drives, which, Sugiura says, are definitely "not as attractive" as the double-sided standard set by IBM for the pc. Later this year, Amdek will release double-sided Amdisk-IIIs.

The three-inch disks themselves will seem a tad expensive at first—probably $6.99 each. This price will surely drop with time, says Rimes, and it could very easily have started at ten dollars.

At Comdex this April in Atlanta, Amdek announced that thirteen software companies—including some of the biggest names in Apple, Atari, and IBM software—would support the three-inch-disk format. Those companies are Broderbund, Sirius, Hayden, Datamost, Continental, TMQ, BPS, Sierra On-Line, Penguin, Synapse, Computer Systems International, Tab Books, and PCsoftware.

Amdek is getting into cross-marketing, says Rimes. Working with third-party vendors, Amdek bundles together one or more pieces of hardware with software and sells it as a package. The first major venture in this direction in the pc market is Amdek's business system—which includes a Color-II monitor, a Model DXY one-pen plotter, the MAI board, and BPS's *Business Graphics* software. The bundle also offers as hardware options the Amdisk III and Amplot II.

Three times a year Sugiura and McCracken travel to Japan and Taiwan to maintain contact with manufacturers and look for new products. "They always have something to show us," says McCracken. "We didn't just decide one day to sell a three-inch disk drive; Hitachi came to us and said, 'Would you like to market it?' There's a tremendous reservoir of products in Japan."

Whenever he visits Tokyo, McCracken makes a point of walking around the Akihabara district, where the consumer electronics businesses and stores are concentrated. "It scares the heck out of me," he admits. In a sixteen-by-two-block area there are thousands and thousands of television sets, stereos, computers, and everything imaginable. And there are always a million people, it seems, sorting through the goods.

"There is a momentum building in Japan, a computer momentum. It's going to be tough to compete with the Japanese on the international level.

"The whole country is really getting cranked up for going big into consumer computer merchandising. And they're starting to make the right decisions on software. It's going to be tough sledding for some American companies when those Japanese companies start unloading products.

"Of course, I speak with a forked tongue," says McCracken, "what with three Datsun automobiles in my driveway and me working for a company that's importing Japanese products as fast as we can get them off the boat."

Over Here. According to Sugiura, the United States represents to Japanese industrial companies the single largest market in the world and, in order to grow, those companies must sell their products here.

"They do their homework to come up with marketable products, and once they set a goal, they go after the market as strongly as possible. Sometimes they'll get a little too aggressive and that will have a reverse effect. That's one of the things we see happening today.

"The Japanese think this is the country of unlimited potential and technology and strength that nobody in this world can match. But, at the same time, they feel, well, the U.S. has sat on that power a little too long. Things are too easy here.

"My observation has always been that the consumer in the United States compared to the consumer in Japan is just an angel," Sugiura continues. "American consumers are generally too understanding, too patient. You can use a half dozen unprintable words to describe the consumers in Japan. They don't *want* to understand. [illegible]

consumers have a problem, it's either a multimillion-dollar lawsuit against some major corporation or no voice at all.

"In Japan, if something doesn't work, consumers say so—loudly. That's the pressure those manufacturing companies feel constantly."

Producing consumer electronics products in Japan is one thing; marketing them in the United States is another. To be a success, foreign firms must have knowledge of the market, and that's where a company like Amdek has an advantage.

"I've been in this business for almost seven years," says Sugiura. "The manufacturing companies in Japan appreciate our knowledge and marketing expertise."

for new products in Japan, Sugiura believes
al developments are still coming out of this
are strong at manufacturing and can always
isting products and make similar ones with
mdek will continue to take advantage of this

ture. Salesmen are wont to come up with
has come up with a fine description of Am-
d future. "Monitors," he says, "are windows
. And monitors for Amdek have been a win-
Monitors have been the jumping-off point for
eral products."
ably be the most crucial yet for Amdek. With
roducts on the market now and more on the
chances. For Sugiura, McCracken, Rimes,
, 1983 should be an interesting year.
re's always the unpredictable, Amdek has
and experience to adapt to the changing per- ▲

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

1st year free to IBM Personal Computer owners.

PC Serial # ____________________

Name ____________________

Address ____________________

City/State ____________________ Zip __________

☐ I don't own an IBM pc, but I would still like to subscribe.

☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard Expiration ____________________

Signature ____________________

Regular Subscription Rates: $24 per year.

WE MUST HAVE YOUR SERIAL NUMBER TO PROCESS FREE SUBSCRIPTIONS

A SOFTALK PUBLICATION

ing our lives. Almost two years after its announcement to the world, the IBM pc has become a major force in the world of personal computing. Its continuing success comes as no surprise.

And the potential of the IBM pc is still being explored; the flow of new information has only gotten swifter in the last two years. More so than ever, IBM pc owners need a magazine like *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*.

Published monthly—packed with information, reviews, tutorials, applications articles, and much more—*Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is dedicated to bringing IBM pc owners the information they need to realize the enormous potential of their computers. Each issue features something of interest for both the veteran and the novice user—the

l the small-business man, the home user and the teacher.

And it's free. Simply send in your name, address, and IBM pc serial number and you can get up to twelve issues of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* free of charge.

If you know any IBM pc owners who are not already receiving *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*, send in their names, addresses, and pc serial numbers and you will receive a free back issue of your choice. All back issues are still available (June 1982 through June 1983), but supplies are limited. Such a deal!

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer
Box 60, Department I
North Hollywood, CA 91603

IBM Personal Computer is a trademark of International Business Machines.

in the American market. He says there is always the possibility the two companies will do something together in the future.

Instinct for Survival. Amdek's gradual moves into plotters, peripheral boards, and now microfloppy (three-inch) disk drives is a response to the pressure the company is feeling from certain areas; it can't survive as "just a monitor company," says Sugiura. The major computer manufacturers have got their act together and are starting to offer their own monitors—witness Apple's Monitor III and IBM's new color display.

This year, Amdek is pursuing the IBM pc market with a number of new products and marketing strategies. It entered the exploding multifunction-board market with the MAI—a multiple
adapter interface board featuring color and n
put, printer and lightpen interfaces, and ad

The Amdisk-V half-height five-and-a-c
nifty product, as is the Amplot-II six-pen plo
both from Hitachi and is just now introduci

The Incredible Shrinking Disk. The ex
IBM Personal Computer that Amdek is just
Amdisk III, a dual three-inch microfloppy d
McCracken realize the product is another g
the two are confident it will achieve succes

"There's a lot of confusion right now,
kinds of sub-five-and-a-quarter-inch drive
eryone is saying they have the standard, bu
possibility it will be the three-inch."

The Amdisk III drives are manufacture
Cracken notes, in Japan the three-inch drive
ing standard. "Sony is the only company ma
inch drives. Companies like Mishusta, Cann
are all making three-inch drives. Whether

comes the standard in this country, you're going to see a lot of Japanese portable computers in the next few years with three-inch drives."

Two or three months ago, McCracken was still skeptical about the three-inch drive, but lately he's feeling a little more confident about it. "Sony did a tremendous job of marketing and made it seem that this country wanted three-and-a-half-inch drives as the standard.

"They [Sony] tried to get the American National Standards Institute to rule on the microfloppy standard in favor of the three-and-a-half-inch," McCracken explains. "ANSI rejected it, because the Sony drives were not compatible with existing five-and-a-quar-

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 673 NO. HOLLYWOOD, CA

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

softalk
for the IBM Personal Computer

P.O. Box 60
North Hollywood, California 91603

businesses and stores are concentrated. "It scares the heck out of me," he admits. In a sixteen-by-two-block area there are thousands and thousands of television sets, stereos, computers, and everything imaginable. And there are always a million people, it seems, sorting through the goods.

"There is a momentum building in Japan, a computer momentum. It's going to be tough to compete with the Japanese on the international level.

"The whole country is really getting cranked up for going big into consumer computer merchandising. And they're starting to make the right decisions on software. It's going to be tough sledding for some American companies when those Japanese companies start unloading products.

"Of course, I speak with a forked tongue," says McCracken, "what with three Datsun automobiles in my driveway and me working for a company that's importing Japanese products as fast as we can get them off the boat."

Over Here. According to Sugiura, the United States represents to Japanese industrial companies the single largest market in the world and, in order to grow, those companies must sell their products here.

"They do their homework to come up with marketable products, and once they set a goal, they go after the market as strongly as

FREE WORD PROCESSOR

Sear

YOUR KEY TO
WITH THAT RAPIDLY
LITERATURE IN YOUR I

SearchLit is a ready-to-use program for your IBM-PC which stores and searches information related to your own personal literature collection. Each reference, including abstract or your comment, is stored under a set of key words. Retrieval is based on the key words in title, abstract or special key word file. Mention this ad in your purchase order and we will send you a free copy of MediScript I, a multifunction word processor ideal for letters and short to medium length essays.

SearchLit $74.50

In Calif. add 6% sales tax. (Shipping and Handling included in purchase price.) 30 days satisfaction guaranteed or your money back (minus $4.00 Shipping and Handling).

MediSoft

Medical Professions Building
1595 Soquel Drive, Suite 350
Santa Cruz, CA 95065

possible. Sometimes they'll get a little too aggressive and that will have a reverse effect. That's one of the things we see happening today.

"The Japanese think this is the country of unlimited potential and technology and strength that nobody in this world can match. But, at the same time, they feel, well, the U.S. has sat on that power a little too long. Things are too easy here.

"My observation has always been that the consumer in the United States compared to the consumer in Japan is just an angel," Sugiura continues. "American consumers are generally too understanding, too patient. You can use a half dozen unprintable words to describe the consumers in Japan. They don't *want* to understand. They don't *want* to be patient. They just demand—more than what they're paying for!

"And that is a pressure felt by the dealers and the manufacturers. That's the big factor that has brought Japanese products to the quality level they have now. One of the most common comments I've heard from Japanese companies is 'It's easy over there in the United States.' "

According to Sugiura, the practices of some American dealers—those who claim to test each product received before putting it on the shelf—would be an insult to a Japanese manufacturer. "In Japan that's totally unheard of—the dealer not trusting the product.

"Over here you may buy a copier and think it's no big deal to pay ninety dollars for a service contract. It's an admission—by the company—that this machine could possibly break down within the year. Of course, there are a lot of factors—cost of labor and so forth—and I can understand that. But in Japan when you pay three thousand dollars for a machine, it's got to last a year or two.

"The basic attitude of the consumers in this country is not giving enough pressure to the manufacturing companies. Whenever consumers have a problem, it's either a multimillion-dollar lawsuit against some major corporation or no voice at all.

"In Japan, if something doesn't work, consumers say so—loudly. That's the pressure those manufacturing companies feel constantly."

Producing consumer electronics products in Japan is one thing; marketing them in the United States is another. To be a success, foreign firms must have knowledge of the market, and that's where a company like Amdek has an advantage.

"I've been in this business for almost seven years," says Sugiura. "The manufacturing companies in Japan appreciate our knowledge and marketing expertise."

Although he looks for new products in Japan, Sugiura believes the major technological developments are still coming out of this country. The Japanese are strong at manufacturing and can always be expected to take existing products and make similar ones with improvements. And Amdek will continue to take advantage of this situation.

Window to the Future. Salesmen are wont to come up with catchy phrases. Rimes has come up with a fine description of Amdek's past, present, and future. "Monitors," he says, "are windows to a personal computer. And monitors for Amdek have been a window into other areas. Monitors have been the jumping-off point for a whole line of peripheral products."

This year will probably be the most crucial yet for Amdek. With new and challenging products on the market now and more on the way, Amdek is taking chances. For Sugiura, McCracken, Rimes, and the rest of Amdek, 1983 should be an interesting year.

And although there's always the unpredictable, Amdek has proven it has the talent and experience to adapt to the changing personal computer scene. ▲

CHILDHOOD'S END!

The IBM pc is growing up and it's changing our lives. Almost two years after its announcement to the world, the IBM pc has become a major force in the world of personal computing. Its continuing success comes as no surprise.

And the potential of the IBM pc is still being explored; the flow of new information has only gotten swifter in the last two years. More so than ever, IBM pc owners need a magazine like *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*.

Published monthly—packed with information, reviews, tutorials, applications articles, and much more—*Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is dedicated to bringing IBM pc owners the information they need to realize the enormous potential of their computers. Each issue features something of interest for both the veteran and the novice user—the programmer and the small-business man, the home user and the teacher.

And it's free. Simply send in your name, address, and IBM pc serial number and you can get up to twelve issues of *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* free of charge.

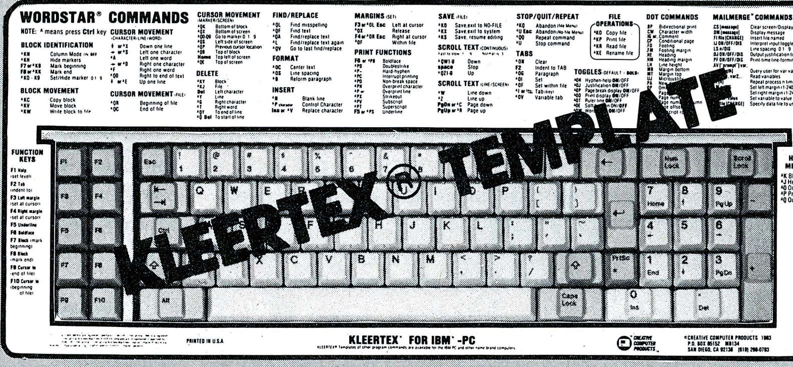
If you know any IBM pc owners who are not already receiving *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer*, send in their names, addresses, and pc serial numbers and you will receive a free back issue of your choice. All back issues are still available (June 1982 through June 1983), but supplies are limited. Such a deal!

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer
Box 60, Department I
North Hollywood, CA 91603

IBM Personal Computer is a trademark of International Business Machines.

A PROVEN TIME-SAVER
for thousands of satisfied customers.

PROGRAM COMMANDS at your fingertips.



- 1-2-3™
- WORDSTAR®
- VISICALC®
- dBASE II®
- MULTIPLAN®
- SUPERCALC®
- SUPERCALC 2™
- EASYWRITER® II

What to do and How to do it - INSTANTLY!

By using a **KLEERTEX**® Keyboard Template, you will save valuable time others spend paging through manuals. This Constant Learning Aid and Instant Reference Guide enables you to quickly gain confidence with your program.

- ALPHABETICAL LISTING OF COMMANDS
- DESIGNED BY TRAINING SPECIALISTS
- CLEAR INSTRUCTIONS - A "CLEAR TEXT"
- USED IN SEMINARS AND CLASSES AROUND THE WORLD
- EASY TO READ – QUICK ACCESS
- DURABLE, NON–GLARE PLASTIC
- PRINT WILL NOT SCRATCH OFF
- COLOR COORDINATED
- 15 DAY MONEY BACK GUARANTEE

CALL OR SEND ORDER FORM TO:

CREATIVE COMPUTER PRODUCTS™
CREATIVE COMPUTER PRODUCTS
P.O. BOX 85152 - MB 134
SAN DIEGO, CA 92138 (619) 268-0793

Call Toll Free
1-800-231-5413
California 1-800-523-5441

DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED

This **KLEERTEX** can be used on **COMPAQ**® Computer. **KLEERTEX** also available for **APPLE**®,**OSBORNE**™, and **KAYPRO**® Computers.

ORDER FORM

I would like to use my IBM®-PC more efficiently. Please send me the following **KLEERTEX**® Templates:

ONE PROGRAM/ONE SIDE	ONE PROGRAM/BOTH SIDES (Reversible)	ONE PROGRAM ON EACH SIDE (Reversible)
_____ WORDSTAR® $19.95	_____ dBase II® $32.95	_____ WORDSTAR®/SUPERCALC® $32.95
_____ VISICALC® $19.95	_____ 1-2-3® $32.95	_____ WORDSTAR®/VISICALC® $32.95
_____ SUPERCALC® $19.95	_____ MULTIPLAN® $32.95	_____ EASYWRITER® II/SUPERCALC® $32.95
_____ EASYWRITER® II $19.95	_____ SUPERCALC™ 2 $32.95	_____ EASYWRITER® II/VISICALC® $32.95

Add $1.95 shipping per order.
(CA add 6% TAX - OUTSIDE US add $5.00)

☐ Check Enclosed ☐ VISA
☐ Money Order ☐ MASTERCARD
☐ Send Catalog only

VISA master charge

(Please Print Clearly)

NAME ______________________________
STREET ______________________________
CITY ______________________ STATE/ZIP ______________
VISA/MC ACCOUNT NO. ______________________
SIGNATURE ______________________ EXP.DATE ________

© Creative Computer Products 1983

☐ **Please send me your FREE catalog of Wonderful Time-Savers.**

IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines. Wordstar is a trademark of Micropro. EasyWriter is a trademark of Information Unlimited Software. dBase II is a trademark of Ashton-Tate. Supercalc is a trademark of Sorcim. Visicalc is a trademark of VisiCorp. Multiplan is a trademark of Microsoft. 1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus.

Part Two of a Series

HOW BASIC STORES VARIABLES

by Gary Little

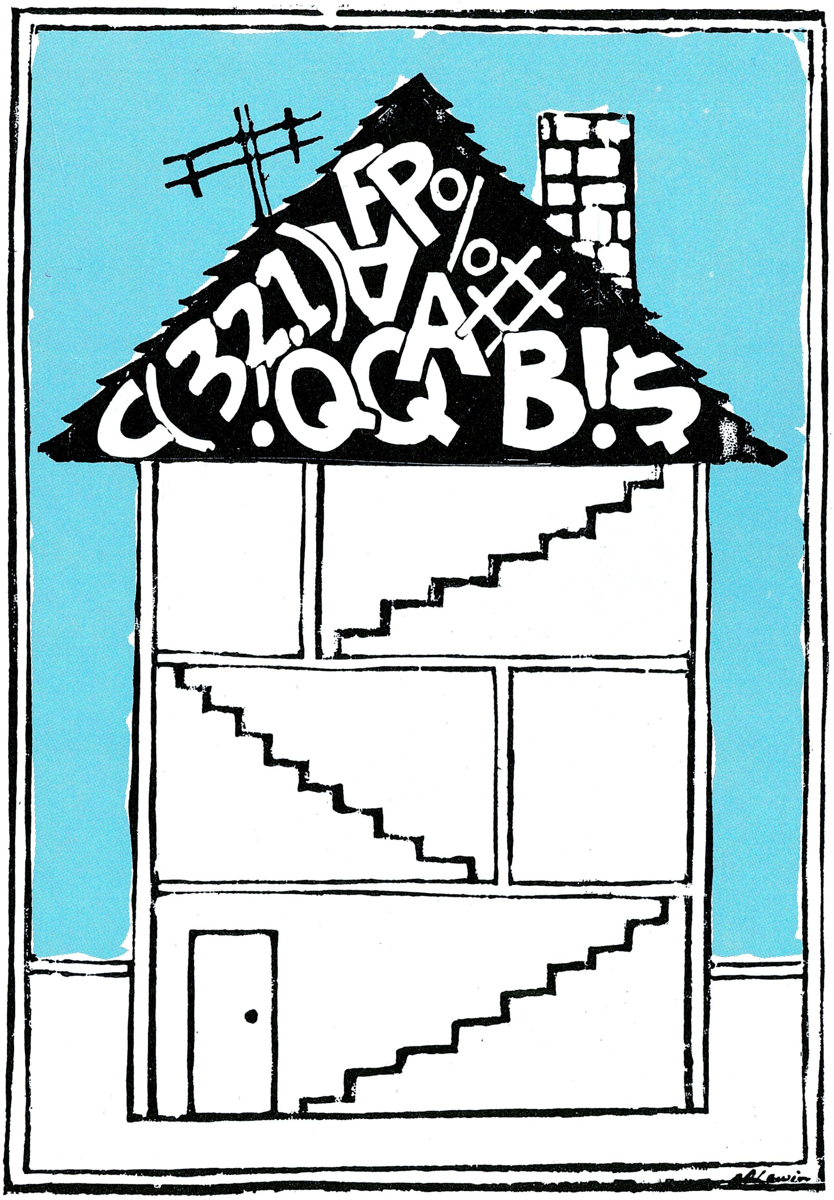
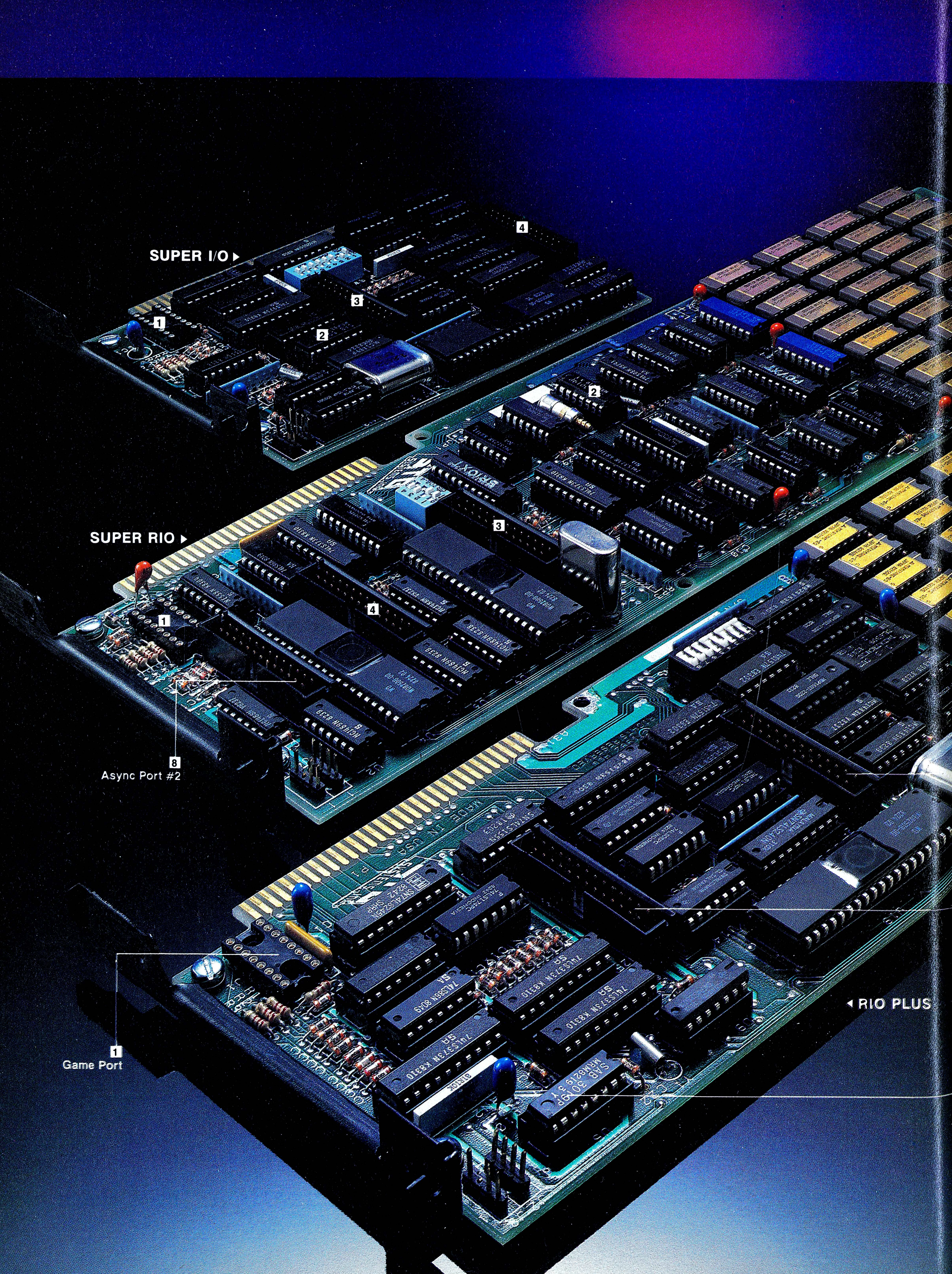


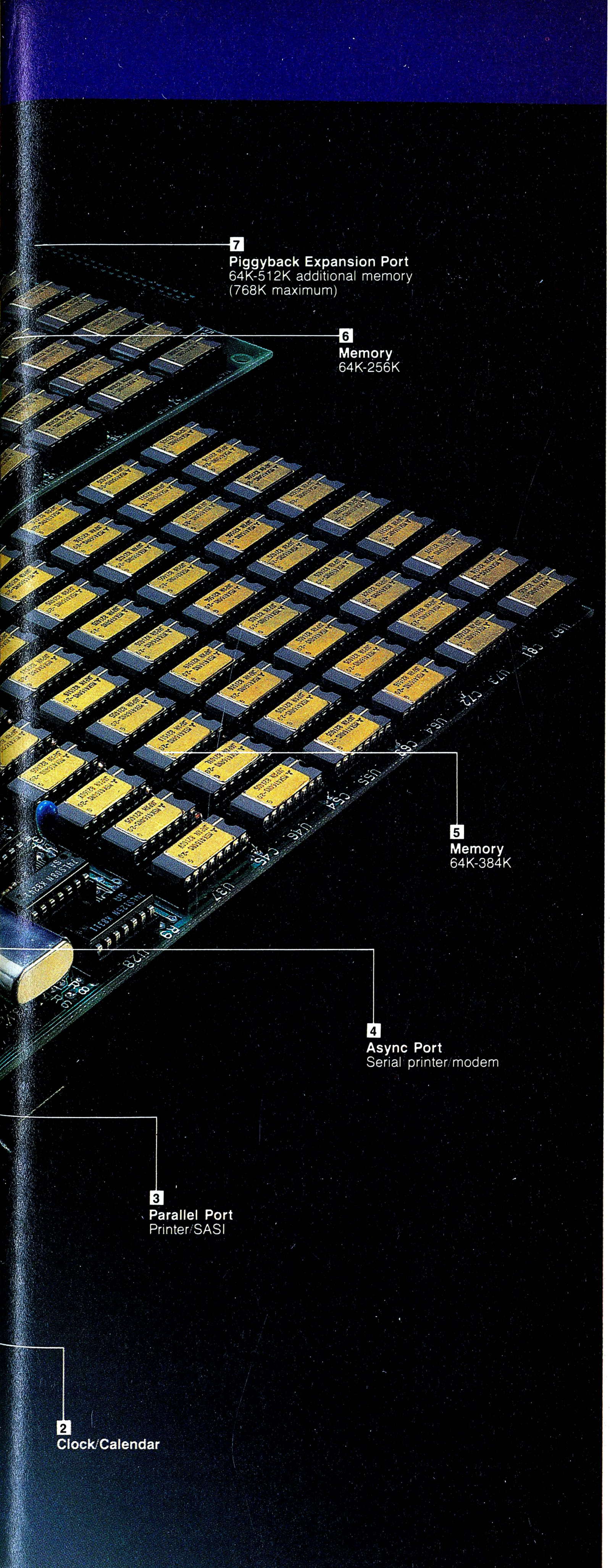
Illustration by Weldon O. Lewin

The study of the internal structure of IBM pc Basic can be very difficult and frustrating, because there's no source listing available to the general public. However, the study isn't totally futile; with the help of the DOS debugger, it's possible to produce an uncommented, unlabeled assembly listing of the Basic ROMs, and this listing, with some effort, can eventually be made intelligible.

Knowledge of the internal structure of Basic may be important to you for two main reasons. First, by analyzing the work of the professional programmers who wrote the language, you might develop better programming practices. Second, you can generally write much more elegant and efficient machine language routines for use in conjunction with Basic programs if your routines are able to call upon standard routines already stored in the Basic ROM; you can spare yourself the trouble of redeveloping the same code from scratch.

This article explains how IBM pc Basic keeps track of its variables during program execution. This information is not only intrinsically interesting, it should also be of great value to those who wish to manipulate Basic variables by calling an 8088 machine language subroutine.


4
SUPER I/O ▸
3
1
2
2
3
SUPER RIO ▸
1
4
8
Async Port #2
◂ RIO PLUS
1
Game Port



What you get out of your IBM PC/XT depends on what you put into it.

The versatile multi-function boards from STB offer more functions and more memory.

If your personal computing applications have outgrown your personal computer's hardware, there's a smart way of expanding your system while still leaving plenty of room to grow.

The secret is the line of multi-function boards from STB.

Our SUPER RIO™ combines two asynchronous RS-232-C serial communication ports for interfacing modems, serial printers, plotters, mice, and an almost limitless list of other peripherals, a parallel I/O port for interfacing printers and hard disk controllers, a battery operated clock/calendar that remembers the date and time even when your system is turned off, a game paddle port that can uses either APPLE™ or IBM™ compatible joysticks, and up to 256K of additional memory.

The STB Piggyback™ board adds up to 512K more memory onto the SUPER RIO for a total of 768K. And the pair uses only one expansion slot.

Included free with the SUPER RIO board is the PC Accelerator™, which combines printer buffering and high speed disk emulation into one easy to use program.

Our RIO PLUS™ board includes all of the I/O functions of the SUPER RIO (less one serial port) with on board memory expansion capability of up to 384K. When used with a 256K computer, this board gives your system a full 640K of memory. Of course, PC Accelerator is also included with every RIO PLUS.

If you already have enough memory, the STB SUPER I/O™ board adds a parallel I/O port, serial port, game port, clock/calendar and PC Accelerator to your system. And, its small enough to fit in a short slot on the XT.

As new functions and applications arise, you can count on STB Systems to provide convenient, affordable ways to adapt these innovations to your system.

Compare our quality products at your local dealer, or for more information please write or call us.

Expanding Microcomputing

STB™

STB Systems, Incorporated
601 North Glenville, Suite 125, Richardson, Texas 75081/(214) 234-8750

All STB multi-function boards include a serial and parallel cable plus an external mounting bracket.
Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computers, Inc.
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
PC Accelerator is a registered trademark of ResiCorp.

© 1983 STB Systems, Inc.

THE NEW STANDARD. THE MICROSOFT MOUSE.

Microsoft, the people who set the standard for software, have done it again with the Microsoft® Mouse.

Our expertise in both hardware and software has gone into the development of the Microsoft Mouse. Now you can plug in the most exciting computer product of the year and put it to work.

The Mouse lets you move the cursor freely and naturally, then execute commands at the push of a button.

The Microsoft Mouse is a complete system. It comes with an on-screen tutorial, a practice application, and the Multi-Tool™ Notepad, a mouse-based text editor, so you can begin using the Mouse right away. And for application developers, the Mouse includes a programmable interface driver to give your application program complete control over the Mouse's operation.

That's the kind of support you'd expect from Microsoft. After all, we were the world's first microcomputer software company. Today, more than a million microcomputers are running Microsoft languages, operating systems, application programs, and hardware-software combinations.

You can get the Microsoft Mouse in dedicated versions for the IBM®-PC, PC XT, and in a version for MS™-DOS machines with serial interfaces, including the IBM-PC. The Mouse supports all versions of MS-DOS, including version 2.0. Ask your Microsoft dealer for a demonstration of the Microsoft Mouse—a whole new standard.

BETTER TOOLS FOR MICROCOMPUTERS

MICROSOFT™

Microsoft is a registered trademark, and MS and the Microsoft logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

IBM pc Basic, an implementation of Microsoft Basic, supports four variable types. There are three numeric types (integer, single-precision floating point, and double-precision floating point) and one alphanumeric type (string).

The Nature of Variables. Variable names can be up to forty characters in length and may be followed by an optional variable-identifier symbol. The symbol is used to indicate to the Basic interpreter the kind of variable being defined; the interpreter can thus do syntax checking and allocate the proper amount of storage space for the variable. The variable-identifier symbols are as follows:

Integer:	%
Single-precision floating point:	!
Double-precision floating point:	#
String:	$

If a variable identifier symbol is not used, the interpreter assumes by default that the variable is single-precision floating-point, unless the default has been overridden by one of Basic's *deftype* commands. These commands—*defint*, *defstr*, *defsng*, and *defdbl*—are used to declare all variables beginning with a specified letter (or with any of a group of specified letters) to be of a specified type. *Defint A*, for example, causes all variables beginning with the letter A to be of type integer; *defstr A-F* declares all variables beginning with the letters A, B, C, D, E, or F to be string variables.

When a variable is defined in a program, Basic stores its name and value in one of two memory areas just beyond the end of the program.

One area is reserved for simple variables (which are also called scalars) and for user-defined functions (those defined by means of Basic's *def fn* statement). This area is pointed to in memory by the contents of the address pair 358/359.

The second variable storage area is reserved for array variables and is pointed to by the contents of 35A/35B.

These addresses, incidentally, and all other addresses specified in this article, are expressed as hexadecimal offsets into Basic's data segment. To calculate the decimal value of a pointer, enter the *def seg* command with no parameters. This will select the current data segment. Then calculate _peek(&Hxxxx)+256*peek(Hyyyy)_, where xxxx represents the first (low) byte in the pointer pair and yyyy represents the second (high) byte.

Storage of Simple Variables. An entry in the simple variable area consists of two parts: a header, which contains the variable type and name, and the data, which contains the encoded value of the variable.

The header, which is the Basic interpreter's means of finding a variable during program execution, can occupy as few as four bytes of storage or as many as forty-two, depending on the length of the variable name (the length is specified by a "length" byte in the header). You can minimize storage space requirements by restricting your variable names to one or two characters. The memory allocation for each header is set forth in table 1.

Variable data for each simple variable is stored directly after the end of its header byte. The number of bytes required for the data is equal to the value of the type byte, which, as you'll see in table 1, means that integers take up two bytes, strings get three, and single- and double-precision variables require four and eight bytes respectively. The data for user-defined functions requires four bytes.

The value limits for each variable type are as follows:

Integer	**−32768 to +32767**
Single-precision	**+/− 2.9E−39 to 1.7E+38**
Double-precision	**+/−2.9D−39 to 1.7D+38**
String	**length of string may be 0 to 255 characters**
User-defined function	**Not applicable**

The data for integer variables is stored in two's-complement form and occupies two bytes; the low-order byte is stored first. The high bit of the high-order byte can be read to determine the sign of the number. If this bit is 1, then the number is negative; if it's 0, the number is positive.

The data for single-precision floating-point numbers is stored in four bytes. The first three bytes represent a signed mantissa, stored least significant byte first (see "How Basic Stores Numbers," *Softalk*, June 1983). The sign bit is the high bit of the third byte. The exponent is found in the fourth byte.

Data for double-precision floating-point numbers is stored in eight bytes. The first seven represent a signed mantissa, and, as in single-precision data bytes, the least significant byte comes first. The sign bit is the high bit of the seventh byte; the exponent is found in the eighth byte.

The data for string variables is stored in three bytes. The first byte represents the length of the string, and the next two bytes act as a pointer to the actual content of the string (the pointer's low byte is stored first). Strings are normally stored in the high end of memory, beginning at a location pointed to by 32F/330 and working downward to a location pointed to by 30A/30B. If, however, a string is explicitly defined within the program, Basic will conserve memory by pointing to this definition inside the program.

When a new string is defined or an old one is redefined, the new data is saved in such a way that the string's last byte lies where the 30A/30B pointer points to; that pointer is then adjusted so that it points to the byte immediately below the string bytes just stored. The superseded string data is not erased from memory, unless Basic has exhausted its string data space. If that does happen—if Basic runs out of room to store string data—it does what's called "garbage collection," which means it weeds out superseded definitions of current string variables and repacks the active definitions into the high end of memory.

The data for user-defined functions is stored in four bytes. The first two act as a pointer to the function definition within the program. The remaining two bytes appear to be unused.

Storage of Array Variables. The pointer at 35A/35B points to one byte past the end of the simple variable space. It also indicates the beginning of the array variable space. When a new simple vari-

Relative byte number (decimal)	**Number of bytes**	**Comments**
0	**1**	**This is the type byte, used to indicate what type of variable is being stored: 2 for integer, 3 for string, 4 for single precision, 8 for double precision.**
1,2	**2**	**These are the first two bytes of the variable name (in ASCII). The bytes are stored with their high bits off unless the variable is a function definition, in which case the high bit of the first byte is on. If the variable has only one character, the second byte is set to 0.**
3	**1**	**This is the length byte. It is set equal to the number of characters remaining in the variable name. It can take any value from 0 to 38.**
4...42	**0...38**	**These are the remaining bytes in the variable name, stored in ASCII with the high bit set. If the variable name is only one or two bytes long, then the length byte will be 0 and space for these bytes will not be allocated.**

Table 1. Memory allocation for simple variable headers.

able is defined, its header and data are stored beginning at this location, and the value of the 35A/35B pointer is adjusted appropriately. Before this occurs, however, the whole array variable area is moved up in memory, just enough to avoid being overwritten, and the end of the array variable pointer is adjusted appropriately.

The memory area for array variables begins immediately after the area used for simple variables and is pointed to by 35A/35B. The headers for array variables are identical in format to those for the corresponding types of simple variables.

The method used to store the data elements for each member of an array is also the same as for the corresponding type of simple variable. However, because of the nature of arrays, an additional series of bytes is required for the indication of the array's size. These additional bytes appear directly after the header.

The first two bytes in this series indicate how many bytes are required to hold the data for the entire array as well as the data for the number of and size of the dimensions. The number held in these two bytes (stored low byte first) provides an easy way for the Basic interpreter to calculate the address of the next array variable header.

Next comes a byte that indicates the number of array dimensions; this may be anything from 1 to 255. An array dimensioned as AB(1,5,3), for example, would have a value of 3 stored in this byte.

Following the byte that indicates the number of dimensions are pairs of bytes, each of which indicates the number of elements in an array dimension (dimensions may have up to 32,767 elements, so it takes two bytes to indicate the number of elements for each dimension). These are ordered so that the last dimension named in your Basic statement is indicated first and the first dimension is indicated last. The low byte is stored first in each pair. If *option base* equals 0, the number stored in these bytes will be the dimensioning number plus 1; if *option base* equals 1, the number stored will be equal to the dimensioning number.

Figure 1 shows the header bytes and dimensioning bytes for the array AB(3,5,2) with *option base* equal to 0.

After the dimensioning bytes come the actual data bytes for each array element. They are stored in exactly the same format as the data for simple variables of the corresponding type.

The array elements are stored in memory in such a way that the rightmost dimensioning index ascends most slowly. Thus, if an array is dimensioned as A(1,1), then A(0,0) is stored first, followed by A(1,0), A(0,1), and then A(1,1).

The pointer at 35C/35D points to one byte past the end of the array variable space. It also points to the beginning of Basic's free space. When a new array variable is defined, its header and data are stored beginning at this location and the value of the pointer is adjusted accordingly.

Basic Data Storage Pointers. We've referred to several pointers used by Basic to indicate the locations of important data areas. A list of twelve pointer locations, together with their descriptions, is given in table 2.

And finally, figure 2 is a generalized memory map of a Basic program, indicating the relative positions of the various data areas within the Basic data segment. Note that the absolute location of the start of the Basic data segment can be calculated from Basic by setting *def seg* to 0 and calculating the value of *16*(peek(&h510)+256* peek(&h511))*. ▲

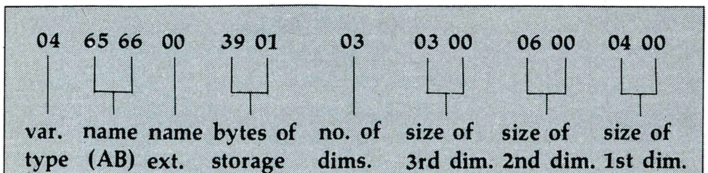


Figure 1. Header and dimensioning bytes for the array AB(3,5,2). *Option base* **equals 0.**

Pointer location (hex)	(decimal)	Description of pointer
02C	44	Bottom of the Basic stack. It can be set by means of the *clear* command.
02E	46	Line number of the line currently being executed.
030	48	Start of the Basic program.
30A	778	Top of string data space and top of free space. It can be set by means of the *clear* command.
32F	815	Bottom of string data space. Garbage collection occurs when an attempt is made to set this pointer below the value pointed to by the 35C/35D pointer.
345	837	The Basic stack pointer.
347	839	Line number of the last error.
356	854	End of the Basic program. This points to the 0 terminator in the last line of the program and is followed by 00 00, which will effectively halt a listing of the program.
358	856	Start of simple variables.
35A	858	Start of array variables.
35C	860	Start of free space. This normally points to one byte past the end of array variable storage.
35E	862	Location in memory from which the *data* will next be *read*.

Note: Memory locations given are offsets into the Basic data segment.

Table 2. IBM pc Basic pointer locations.

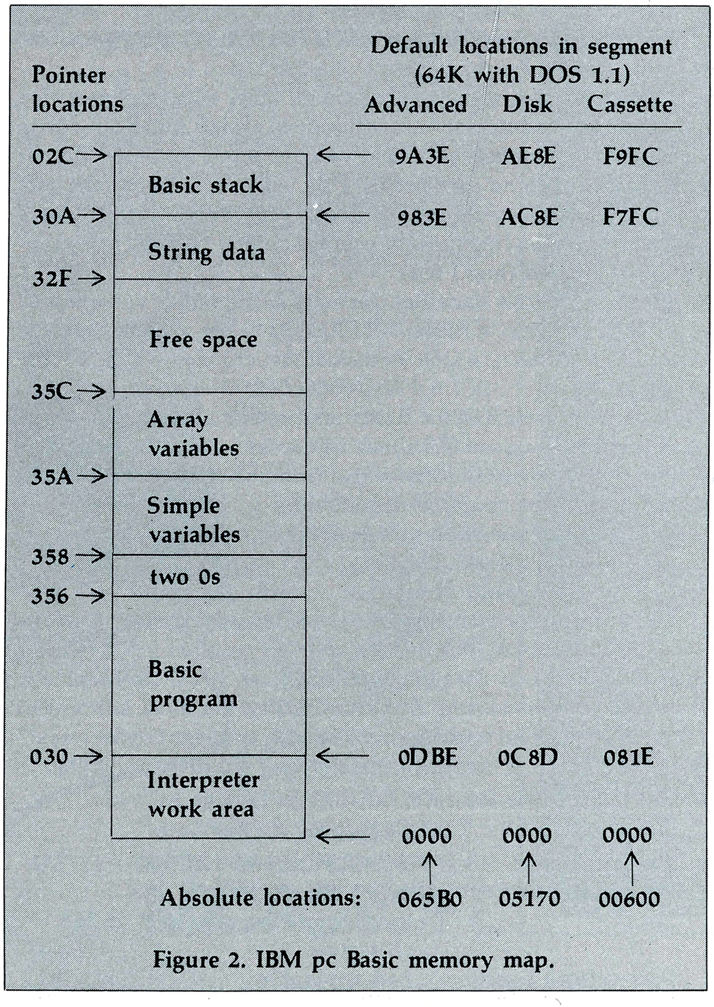


Figure 2. IBM pc Basic memory map.

Gary Little is a lawyer practicing in Vancouver, British Columbia; his specialty is computer law.

How many companies offer toll free TOTAL SUPPORT on all hardware & software?

There is only one number to call:

1-800-237-8977

In Florida call 1-813-786-1259

Business Applications Software with **TOTAL SUPPORT**. . . specializing in: **IBM,™ APPLE,™ TRS-80™ and XEROX™**

The Systems Group

2340 State Route 580/Suite 234
Clearwater, Florida 33575
Telex 701484

There is only one catalog to have: our new, **free** 100 pages of the best in hardware and software. Send for your copy today!

IBM is a trademark of IBM Corporation
APPLE is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
TRS-80 is a trademark of The Radio Shack Division of Tandy Corporation
XEROX is a trademark of Xerox Corporation

CP/M'83®
EAST

Hynes Auditorium
Thursday-Saturday
September 29-October 1, 1983
Show Hours: 10:30AM to 5:30PM daily
Sponsored by Digital Research, Inc.

THOUSANDS OF CP/M COMPATIBLES AND SOFTWARE PACKAGES ARE GATHERING IN BOSTON...

THE MOST SUCCESSFUL NEW COMPUTER SHOW IS COMING EAST.

CP/M'83 held last January in San Francisco, was the largest event organized around a single product in the history of all products. It was larger than any first or second year technology event ever held anywhere, drawing over 40,000 attendees and more than 600 displays. This September 29 through October 1, Northeast Expositions, Inc., the foremost producer of computer events, and Digital Research Inc., the inventors of CP/M, will present CP/M'83-East at Boston's Hynes Auditorium.

IF YOU DO ANYTHING IN CP/M YOU ABSOLUTELY CAN'T AFFORD TO MISS CP/M'83-EAST.

CP/M'83 is much more than a Show—it's an educational forum to help people learn about using, developing and marketing CP/M software. It's an incredibly effective medium for manufacturers to meet buyers or marketers, to meet developers. Noted leaders from the software industry will conduct the most extensive group of workshops on microcomputer software ever presented at any conference . . . ever. These informative discussions will explore CP/M applications, technical information, development aids, uses in different professions and support services. The conference program will also strive to show users how to get the most from their CP/M computers.

During each day of CP/M'83-East, from 8:30AM to 10:30AM, special industry workshops will be held for Independent Software Vendors (ISV's), distributors, dealers and manufacturers. These seminars will cover the ins and outs of developing, packaging and marketing microcomputer software. They will also offer you a chance to cultivate important industry contacts including venture capitalists.

THE WORLD OF CP/M UNDER ONE ROOF

CP/M'83-West was the largest end-user Computer Show and Sale ever; the East Coast version will be just as large an extravaganza. At CP/M'83-East you'll find everything new for your CP/M computer under one roof. In a couple of days, you can sample software, accessories and services for every conceivable application you have. The Show includes over eight thousand different kinds of products including computers, peripherals, printers, hard disks, modems, memory cards, game cartridges, video displays, and plug-in boards—plus publications, support services and an absolutely incredible array of software application packages and development aids. All the CP/M compatible hardware and software for business, industry, the professions, government, education, home and personal use, is there. And best of all, you'll save hundreds, even thousands of dollars because everything that is on display is for sale at special Show prices.

ADMISSION FEES:

One-Day Exhibits-Only ticket $10

Tickets on sale at door

Three-Day Exhibits & Conference ticket $25

FOR MORE INFORMATION:

If you're interested in attending or exhibiting at CP/M'83-East, call 800-841-7000 (inside Massachusetts 617-739-2000). Or you can write us and we will be happy to mail you a comprehensive pamphlet which includes the schedule of seminars, workshops and conferences plus Boston hotel reservation information. Our address is 822 Boylston Street, Chestnut Hill, Massachusetts 02167.

CP/M'83-East is produced by Northeast Expositions, Inc., the foremost nationwide producer of special audience and specific product personal computer shows, including Applefest, PC'83 (for IBM PC users), The National Computer Shows, and Softcon—an International Conference and Tradefair for the Software Industry.

CP/M is the registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc.

PREREGISTRATION FORM

☐ Enclosed is my payment for ________ Three-Day Exhibits & Conference badge(s) at $25 which admits the attendee to the Show on Thursday, Friday and Saturday and to the Conference on all three days.
QUANTITY

☐ Enclosed is my payment for ________ One-Day Exhibits Only ticket(s) at $10 each.
QUANTITY

Name____________________________________

Company (if any)____________________________________

Address____________________________________

City____________________ State__________ Zip__________

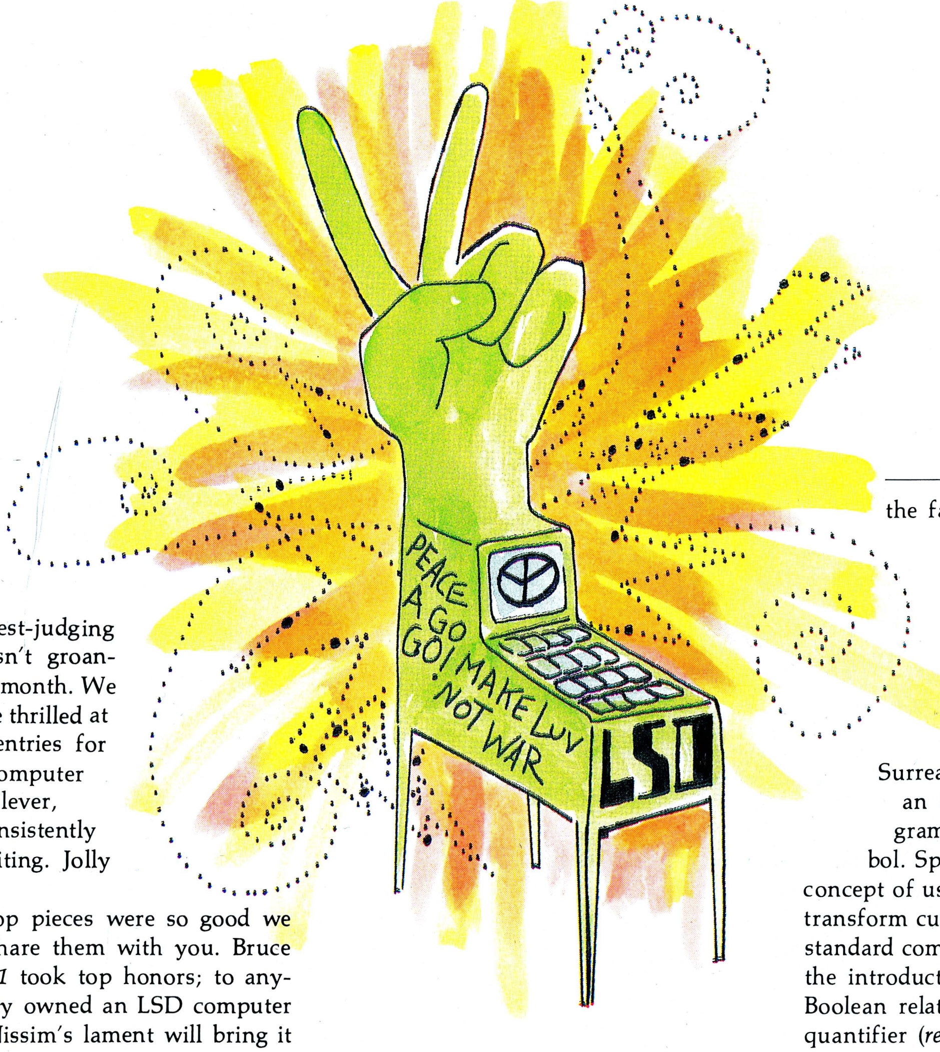
Telephone (area code)____________________ ext__________

Mail to National Computer Shows, 822 Boylston Street, Chestnut Hill, MA 02167

CP/M'83®
EAST

CONTEST WINNERS

OUR FAVORITE SNOBS


PEACE A GO GO! MAKE LUV NOT WAR
LSD

The contest-judging board isn't groaning this month. We couldn't be more thrilled at the quality of entries for April's Snob Computer essay contest. Clever, well-crafted, consistently professional writing. Jolly good job.

The three top pieces were so good we thought we'd share them with you. Bruce Nissim's *LSD/71* took top honors; to anyone who actually owned an LSD computer in the sixties, Nissim's lament will bring it all back.

The Dumpster, by Alan Weiner, speaks for itself. Everybody still has one out back of the old office. Didn't a company named Dempsey make a similar machine?

Now the *Miss Kitty*, that was some machine. Marie Oesting says it all in the shortest and sweetest way. Sad.

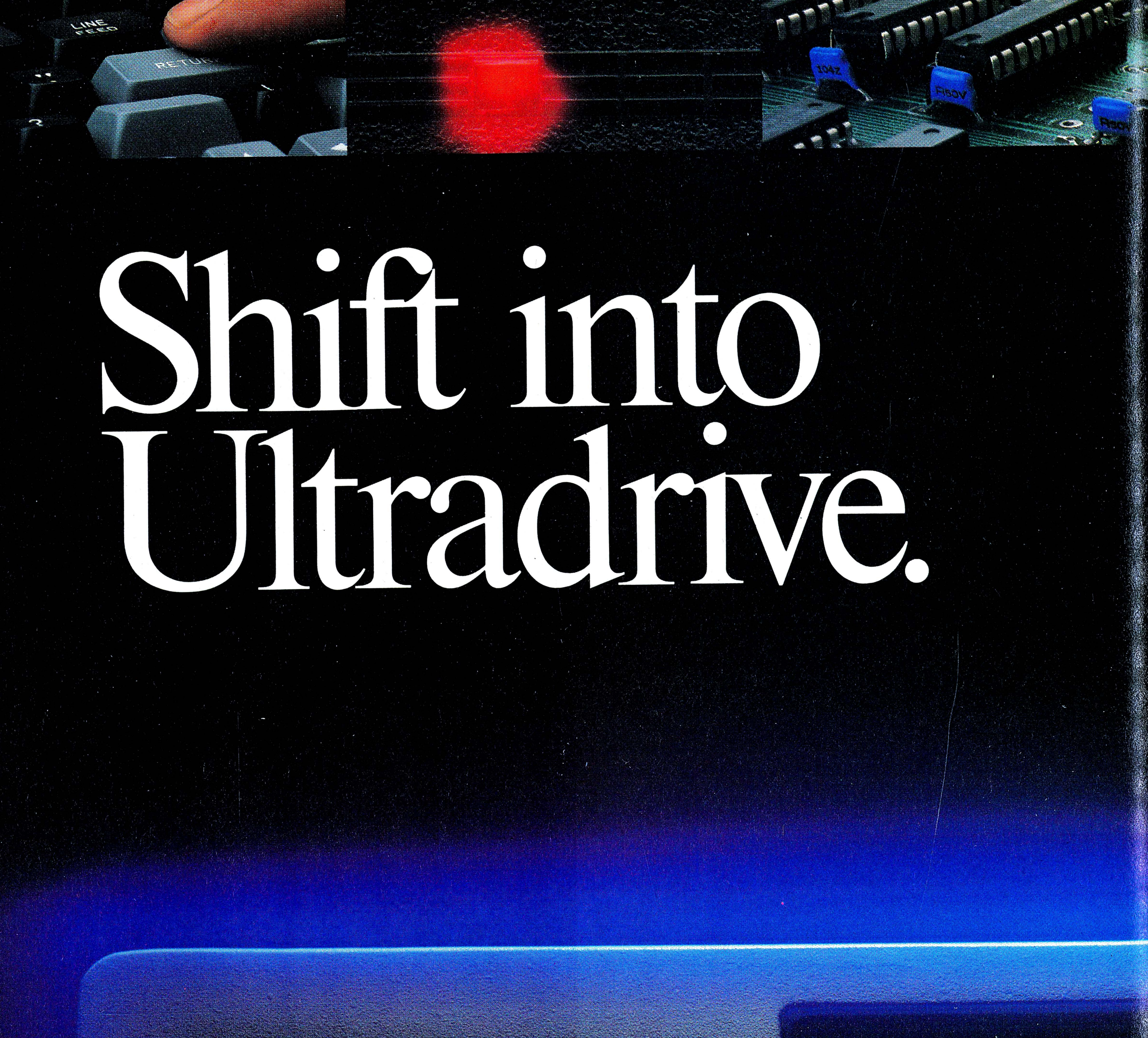
But funny. Your checks are in the mail, contest winners. Nissim gets $100, Weiner and Oesting, as runners-up, get fifty each. Go ahead and cry, all the way to your nearest dealer.

The LSD/71

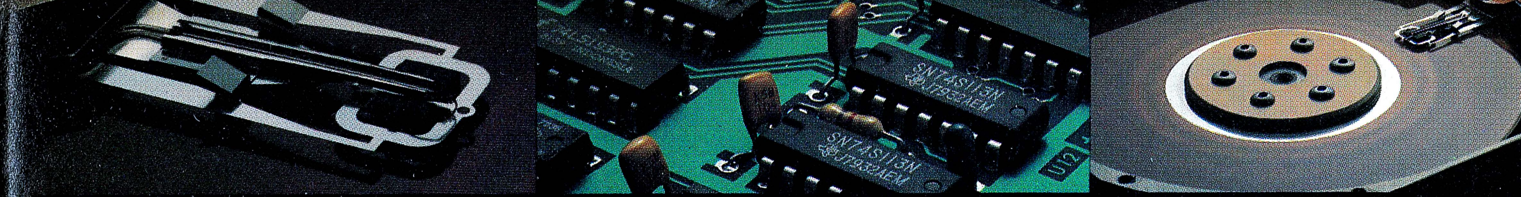
Nineteen sixty-three marked the beginning of a new age: the age of free speech, free love, and LSD. We mean of course the LSD/71, a revolutionary new microcomputer from the Lightning Systems Division of Plastic Chemicals and Pharmaceuticals. At the time, PCP was enjoying a particularly strong cash flow (mostly in hundred-dollar bills); it developed the LSD/71 to capitalize on its market leadership in mind-expanding technology. As a target market, PCP chose the fastest-growing segment of the American consumer base, the functionally illiterate.

While justly credited for its pioneering efforts in state-of-the-art graphics, the LSD/71 is best remembered for its two software breakthroughs: SOS, the Surreal-time Operating System, and an advanced nonprocedural programming language called Speedbol. Speedbol virtually introduced the concept of user-friendliness. It attempted to transform current vernacular English into a standard computer syntax. It did so through the introduction of three new keywords: a Boolean relational operator (*like*), a virtual quantifier (*really*), and a postpositional declarative identifier (*you know*). A typical Speedbol expression might read *If A-Variable, you know, is like really high, then goto Winterland, else get stoned and watch Laugh-In.*

PCP was also well ahead of its time in marketing and production techniques. Its products were packaged in bright Day-Glo colors and assembled in low-cost labor markets outside the United States. Each model developed a loyal following, and it was not unusual to overhear on college campuses a heated argument over the relative merits of



Targa is supplied with both MS-DOS and CPM-86 compatibility.
IBM-PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation, MS-DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft, and CPM-86 is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc.



Targa®: The ultimate mass storage machine for your IBM®-PC.

With up to 30 megabytes of hard disk capacity, you can handle data bases that would fill phonebooks. And access, process, and update that data in seconds.

Which, after all, is what serious personal computing is all about.

The Purr of Performance.

Targa is one beautiful piece of engineering.

Fast. Data glides in and out at 5 million bits per second.

Quiet. Even with disks spinning at 3600 rpm inside.

And solid. Which is why Targa carries a warranty few others would dare to offer. 24 full months.

Automatic Is Standard.

Just plug the Targa into your PC, and you're ready to go.

Targa comes with plain English instructions and plenty of software. Easy to use, clearly documented programs help you transfer data in and out, use powerful system utilities, and diagnose problems.

The Luxury Model At Economy Prices.

The best way to order a Targa is right from the CMC factory in Seattle, one of the world's oldest microcomputer hard disk manufacturers. You pay considerably less than you would for a lesser system sold at a computer store.

Powerful standalone Targa mass storage systems start at $1550.

Targa 50	5 megabyte models from $1550
Targa 100	10 megabyte models from $1890
Targa 150	15 megabyte models from $2190

Prices include shipping and handling. Call for prices on expanded capacity models.

Take A Test Drive.

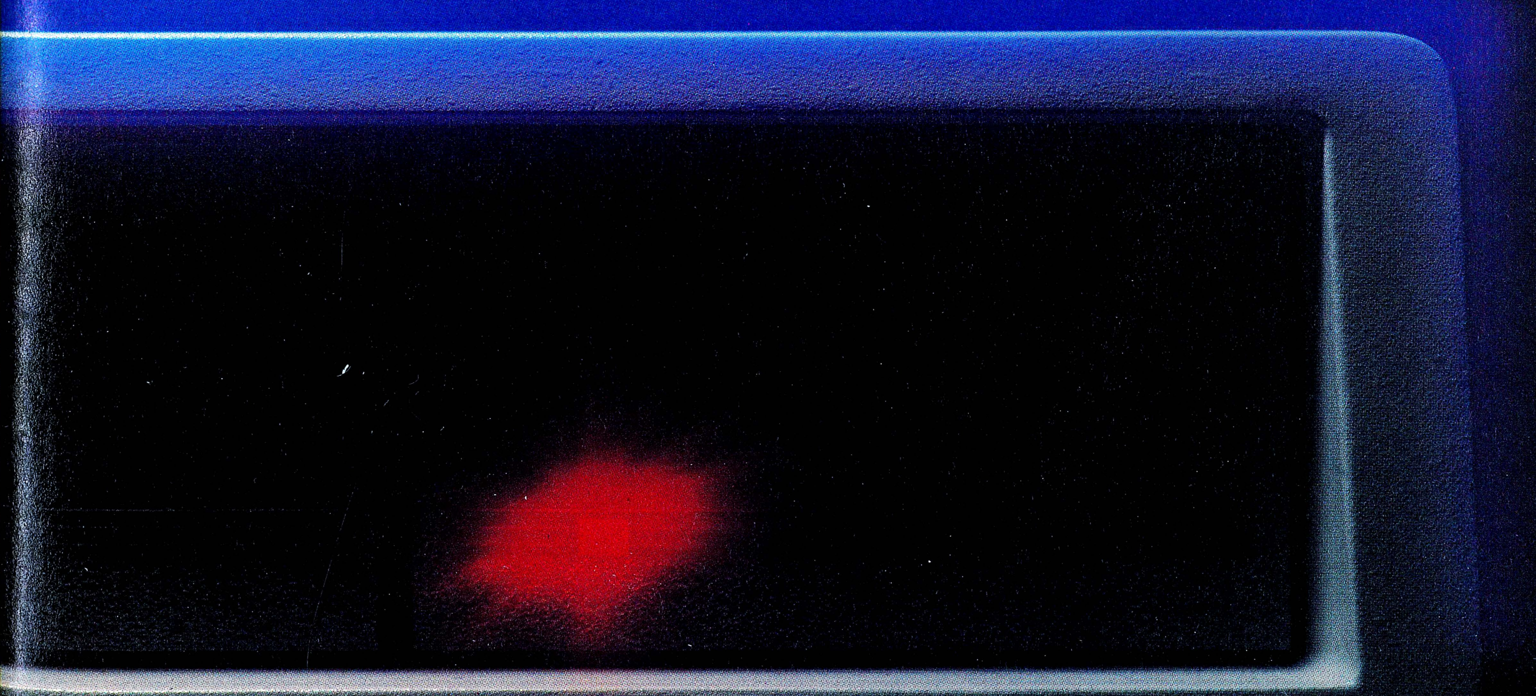
No risk.

We'll ship your Targa factory direct. Then give you 30 days to make sure you're satisfied. If not, we'll refund your full purchase price. Plus your return postage costs.

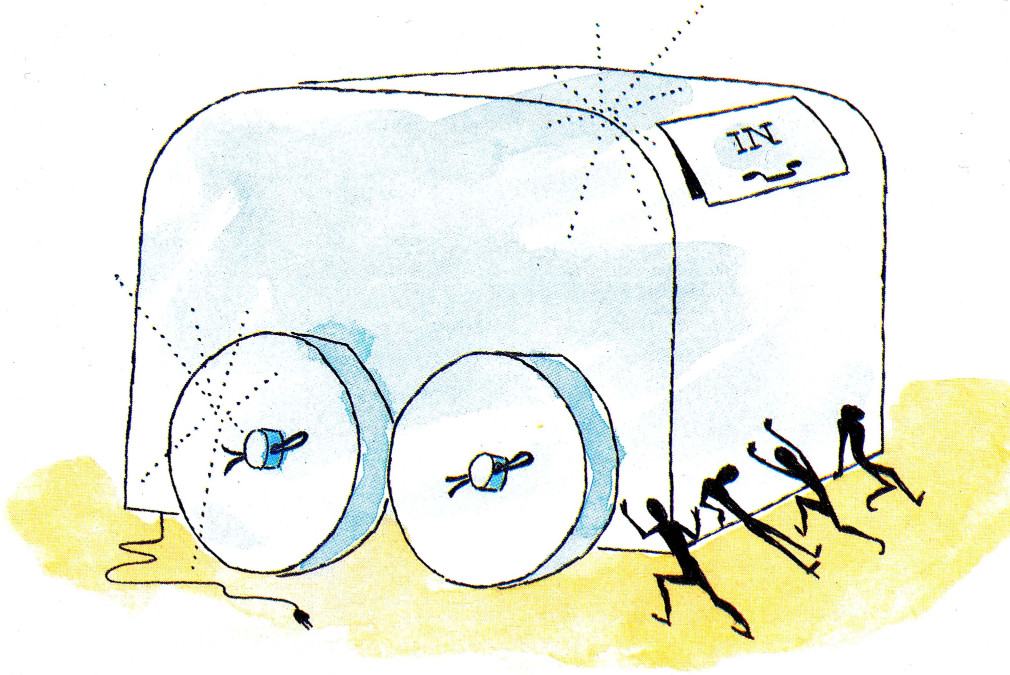
To reach our professional sales staff, call toll free, **800-426-2963.** (In Washington, dial **206-885-1600.**)

You can charge the Targa to any major credit card. Or you can send a check, money order, or wire transfer. Your Targa will arrive within days.

And your IBM-PC will get a much needed boost in mass storage horsepower.



TARGA BY CMC



Panama Red versus Columbia Gold. In fact some of those arguments can still be heard today.

PCP also pioneered the concept of unbundling, choosing to sell memory by the kilo, a technique well established in its existing dealer network.

Despite the substantial popularity it enjoyed, the LSD/71 eventually foundered. Users began complaining of head crashes, bad vibrations, and a peculiar display glitch called a flashback.

Of the three principal developers of the LSD/71, two were last reported living in Costa Rica. The third is currently studying for an MBA at Stanford Business School.

Bruce Nissim
San Francisco, CA

The Dumpster

The Dumpster entered the home computer market with great fanfare. Advertisements announced that the Dumpster's CPU was "A Real Chip—just like the chips used in big computers!" The 150-pound machine sat on four stainless-steel wheels, and Aurora claimed it was portable "in any unilevel environment." The Dumpster was guaranteed at the factory with twenty-four-hour burnout, and it boasted a revolutionary new feature—a gigabyte of write-only memory.

The Dumpster ran into problems from the start. Users quickly found that although there was ample storage they could not retrieve any information they had fed into the Dumpster. Aurora advised them to input only data that was no longer needed. Users who followed this approach coined the now-famous term, "Garbage In." Users also had trouble seeing characters on the Dumpster's sleek, ultramodern white-on-white monitor, and had to wear sunglasses while programming. The limits of the machine's portability were also a source of dissatisfaction. Although the Dumpster could be easily pushed and pulled by four strong men, it consistently listed to the right and would not navigate corners. It also would not fit through a standard doorway. So the Dumpster stayed in the room in which it was assembled, accumulating waste data and taking up space.

Although Dumpsters are still being used in many government agencies, Aurora was forced to take the machine off the home market. People quickly discovered that they had purchased what amounted to an electronic circular file and the Garbage In computer became Garbage Out.

Alan Weiner
Wheaton, MD

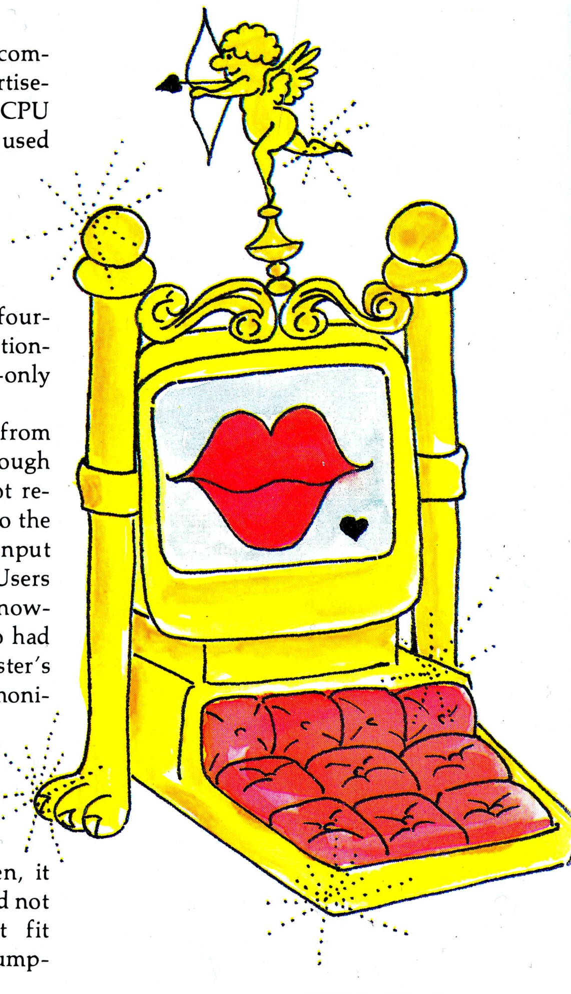
The Miss Kitty

Best computer I ever owned was the Miss Kitty. It was made somewhere in Kansas by an old retired gent. Called himself Doc Adams.

Now, that was a pretty machine. No clown suit and a single rose, no sir. The keyboard was decked out in solid red silk with a matching red-and-black-silk-striped monitor cover. No use for a mouse with the Miss Kitty. You just stroked the keyboard with a genuine ostrich plume.

Fine machine. I'd still be using it today except some gun-toting maniac put a .45 through it one day. Claimed the program had been canceled.

Marie Oesting
Baraboo, WI



*SUPERCALC?
*VISICALC?
*dBase II?

Worried about a software buy for your *IBM/PC?

*WORDHANDLER?
*WORDSTAR?
*PFS File?

If you're not sure what will really work for you, why not RENT BEFORE YOU BUY?

No club to join. No membership fee. Just rent the software you need. Typical one month rental is only about 1/4 the cost of the program. And, if you do decide to buy, the full rental amount is deducted from the price.

But if you decide you don't want the program, just return it. No further obligation.

Hundreds of programs are available for all major microcomputer systems. Furnished with complete manuals, and some with cassette tutorials. Write for rental listings or call us today to see that we have what you want.

Be sure before you buy.

CALL TOLL FREE: 1-800/323-8064
In Illinois call 1-312/251-5699

Micro-Mart Distributors
Attn: Dept. IB-7
1131 Central Ave. • Wilmette, IL 60091

**Registered trademarks (in order of appearance) of Sorcim, VisiCorp, Ashton-Tate, Silicon Valley Systems, Micropro, Software Publishing and IBM.

SilverSoft

The Ultimate in Home Computer Software!

The set of 4 SilverSoft packages gives you everything you ever wanted in home management software. SilverSoft includes:

SilverBudget
A true double entry system. Complete, detailed recording of budget and expense transactions. Will handle multiple checkbooks/credit cards.

"Revolutionize your home budgeting and accounting"

SilverCalendar
Multidimensional scheduling of people, places, and things over time. Will identify conflicts/open times. Scheduling done by days/months /years.

"Throw away your calendar!"

SilverFolio
Allows you to keep track of your personal worth and personal inventory: Personal property, assets, insurance, real estate.

"A complete portfolio with a complete list of financial functions."

SilverWriter
Create and store letters and reports. Maintain a mailing list. Merge letters and addresses for multiple mailings.

"Now simple to use word processing"

SilverSoft

906 N. Main, Wichita, Kansas 67203
316-262-1040

A DOUTHETT COMPANY

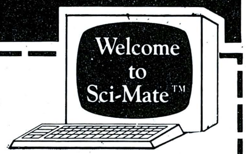
Sci-Mate or dBASE II?

When your data is text, manage it better with Sci-Mate.

Sci-Mate™ Personal Data Manager	**dBASE II**
Text-oriented and menu-driven	Number-oriented and command-driven
You can quickly search any word, word fragment, or phrase *anywhere* in any of your records without pre-indexing	For fast searching your search statement must consist of an entire or right-truncated field
Field size (up to 1900 characters) is variable and automatically adjusted to maximize storage capacity when creating and editing records	Maximum field size (up to 254 characters) must be declared when records are created, and all records are stored with the declared maximum
Entries of more than maximum record size (1900 characters) are automatically stored in a linked series of records	No entry can contain more than the maximum number of characters for a single record (1000)
With Sci-Mate's Universal Online Searcher, you can download records from ISI data bases, and from other data bases when data base producer or vendor permits—then search them offline with your Personal Data Manager	You cannot download records directly from a file of records retrieved online

Sci-Mate is currently available for IBM PC, Vector 3 and 4, Apple II, TRS-80 Model II microcomputers, and all other CP/M-80 systems with standard 8″ drives. Sci-Mate software for IBM, Vector, and Apple micros is available on 5¼″ disks. The Sci-Mate Personal Data Manager costs $540. The Universal Online Searcher costs $440. Purchase both at one time and pay $880—a $100 savings.

ISI® Institute for Scientific Information®
3501 Market Street, University City Science Center
Philadelphia, PA 19104 U.S.A.
Telephone: (215) 386-0100, Cable: SCINFO, Telex: 84-5305



☐ Sci-Mate is just what I've been looking for! Please send me more information.
To order, call 800-523-4092.

name ______ title ______
organization ______
address ______
city ______ state/province ______
ZIP/postal code ______ country ______
area code ______ telephone ______

238-3110
©1983 ISI

MATHEMATICS MADE EASY(er)

A Father Helps with the Homework

by Jean Varven

When Joseph Barteck of Tucson, Arizona, began working on a math drill and practice program to run on the Personal Computer, he wasn't concerned about publishing the program or making a profit. Rather, this IBM employee and father of six was motivated by something much closer to home—the fact that his youngest daughter, seven-year-old Katrina, was falling behind in math and needed tutoring in order to keep up. One of Barteck's aims in writing the program was to help his daughter help herself.

Joseph Barteck, daughter Katrina, and their pc take the mystery out of math.

Both father and daughter experienced success. Barteck wrote *Math Tutor*—a comprehensive, expandable program designed to help people improve their addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division skills—and Katrina, who began using the program regularly at home, managed to bring her math skills up to speed. In fact, reports her father, she is now performing a year ahead of grade level.

Understandably, Barteck is proud of his daughter and pleased to have been able to do something that made a difference in her life. He's also gratified by the fact that friends who were impressed with the program suggested to him that he try to get it published.

Barteck decided to follow his friends' advice. Publishing *Math Tutor*, he reasoned, would mean that other kids and adults who needed help with math would have access to the program and that he might realize some financial return on his efforts. With these possibilities in mind, Barteck worked to perfect and polish the program. When the synopsis he wrote drew IBM's interest, he packed the enhanced version of the program off to the division in Boca Raton that handles employee submissions. He did not send it elsewhere, however; as an IBM employee, he is not allowed to submit a program to any competing companies.

Now for the somewhat frustrating aspect of this story. The submissions group considered *Math Tutor* for seven months (the usual reporting time for employee submissions is two or three) before Barteck got the word: It's a good program, said the evaluators, and we found no bugs in it; the only problem is that we don't think there is sufficient profit to be made in publishing it. The day after Barteck received his rejection notice, IBM announced plans to publish two other math programs.

Because he is employed by IBM, Barteck cannot send *Math Tutor* elsewhere in hopes of making a profit from its publication, despite the fact that it seems to have proven itself an effective, versatile teaching tool. What he can do is to make the program available anyway, by releasing it to the public domain; that way, people who need help in math will profit from his work, even if he doesn't.

Now for the Good News. A disk version of *Math Tutor* is being offered to interested *Softalk* readers for a nominal charge of $8. Since the software is in the public domain, readers are free to make as many copies of it

Let Babytalk™ do the talking.

High Performance Communications Upgrade for the IBM® Personal Computer
Babytalk
Remote acces
Contents:
Printed-circuit card with mounting bracket
5¼-in. diskette with software
User's manual (insert for IBM binder)
Introduction
Babytalk
$895

Babytalk is an intelligent communications management interface packed with features. In fact, it's a 64K Z-80 based microcomputer that plugs into your IBM PC to manage a full range of communications:

AS A TERMINAL EMULATOR,
Babytalk emulates 3270/bisync and 3270/SNA, 2770, 2780, 3770, 3780 BATCH/BISYNC, and HASP/BISYNC and a wide range of ASYNC terminals including VT-52, VT-100, IBM 3101, and IBM 5251. It's KEYFIX utility automates your keyboard by defining function keys with any multi-keystroke sequence up to 80 characters.

AS A SUPERSMART MODEM,
Babytalk's onboard 300/600/1200 Baud auto-dial, auto-answer, direct-connect MODEM supports Bell 103, 202 and CCITT V.21 and V.23 protocol.

AS A SPOOLER,
Babytalk's serial or parallel port may be used for background print spooling, so that your IBM PC can run applications while Babytalk manages print output to either a serial or parallel printer. Babytalk also has a Realtime Clock/Calendar with battery backup for programmable message dispatching, and so that you don't have to set time/date each time your system boots.

Babytalk is from the same people who gave you Baby Blue. It's available for the IBM PC, the Texas Instruments Professional Computer, and other MS-DOS compatibles.

For more details see your computer dealer or contact Microlog at (914) 368-0353, Microlog, Inc., 222 Route 59, Suffern, NY 10901.

Only $895.

Microlog
A TU INTERNATIONAL COMPANY

as they like. Any money Barteck would ordinarily have made from this arrangement will be donated to a child-abuse-prevention group.

Written in Basic, *Math Tutor* is designed to run on pcs that have at least 48K. The program can be used by students in each of the elementary grades as well as by older students who need math practice. Because of the way the program is set up, it can generate millions of different recallable tests and exercises. It can also change as your child's needs and skills change, and it can be used with more than one child at a time.

When a learner indicates that he would like to work on some math exercises or a math test, he is asked his name and grade level so that appropriate problems can be generated; this process takes about one second. Then he is presented with a series of problems (twenty-five is the default here; the number of problems can be varied in either direction by altering the appropriate program parameter).

The movement of a flashing cursor then prompts the user to solve problems digit by digit. Barteck has done a particularly nice job on this aspect of the program; the cursor movement exactly duplicates the sequence that would be followed in solving the problem on paper. If a child is doing a multiplication problem, for example, the cursor is positioned at the right and moves to the left as numbers are entered; it then moves back toward the right again but properly aligned one space over for the next phase of the problem. At the end of the problem series, an opportunity to solve missed problems is given.

Barteck has made *Math Tutor* essentially self-documenting. From the main menu, pressing a single number key will get you instructions and information about the program itself, the keyboard setup, and how to work problems. You can also find out about tests and exercises, test analysis, and how to create special types of problems.

Math exercises and tests for the six elementary grades are already stored on disk. In addition, parents and teachers can vary parameters, using the program to create tests and exercises that are personalized in format, type, bounds, sequence, time, and duration (exercises include a time-limit feature). Since program "setups" are derived from stored data, changing the problems is simply a matter of changing certain parameters.

The program can be used to meet the tutorial needs of six students at one time. Since the disk is copyable, you can (and should) make a backup of the original and use it as your working copy. This also means, of course, that you can store tutorial sequences for different groups of six students on different copies of the original disk.

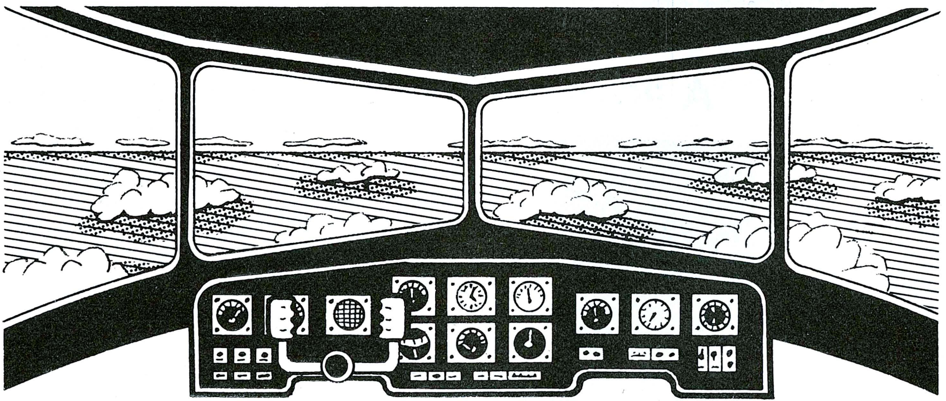
Learning to interpret and use the program setup information and the format grid into which you enter parameter changes may take a little time. But once you've worked with the program a bit, you're likely to wonder why these things ever gave you any trouble.

Shapes of Things To Come. Barteck came to IBM six years ago after more than twenty years in the Air Force in the nuclear weapons field and two years studying electronics at TVI, a technical school in Albuquerque, New Mexico. Four or five of those Air Force years were spent teaching about such subjects as nuclear weapons, quality control, electronics, and management. Two years ago, he joined IBM's General Products Division in Tucson. His recent work at IBM has taken place in what he describes as "a laboratory-type environment in future printer products." He can say that the group is involved in "building things that might come out in the future," but he can't say what these things are. One example of a product that came out of this environment is a supremely speedy high-end printer that's capable of making more than two hundred copies a minute and more than one million copies a month.

In February of last year, Barteck bought a Personal Computer for home use through IBM's employee discount program. He'd taken a class in Fortran at the technical school but hadn't had any experience with a home computer. Before long, though, he'd taught himself to program in Basic. *Math Tutor* is his first program.

As Barteck tells it, he didn't really have any other programs in mind as models; he had simply set out to write something his daughter could use to exercise her math skills. Mainly, he wanted to create "a program that would be helpful when a student was having difficulty with a particular type of problem." Therefore, he set things up so that the parent or teacher has control over the tutorial situation and can vary the types, formats, and elements of problems as necessary to help a particular student master a specific skill. His own experience has shown that when you're trying to develop a new skill, repetition is one of the best teachers, and so the program can be set up to test for the same skill or set of skills over and over.

"The program just kind of grew as I continued to put in nifty things I wanted to see if I could do," says Barteck. One of the first things he did was to obtain information from his daughter's school about the national and state school standards for the various grade levels so that he could incorporate them into his program exercises and end-of-year tests. These standards tell teachers and parents



Flight-Command© puts YOU in the cockpit!
A Software Program for IBM-PC*

Experience a whole family of flight simulators in one package:

- Cessna 150
- Pitts Special
- P-51 Mustang
- F-14 Tomcat
- Boeing 747
- Concorde

Flight-Command© requires 80 column display and 64K RAM, PC DOS, BASICA

$49.95 including instructions

Lighthouse distributing
P.O. Box 10938 Bainbridge Island, WA 98110
206-842-5557

*IBM-PC is a reg. T.M. of IBM Corp.

As pilot in command you will:

- taxi around airport
- get weather and tower information on the radio
- watch yourself on airport radar
- practice aerobatic skills
- use Autopilot to navigate the globe in a few minutes of real time
- use all controls: throttle, elevator, rudder, ailerons, flaps and brakes
- analyze your performance with flight recorder data from your printer

Washington residents add 6.5% sales tax

Name ______
Address ______
City, State, Zip ______
Amount enclosed ______
☐ MC ☐ VISA # ______ Exp. date ______

what types of problems a child must be able to solve successfully in order to be promoted to the next grade. By the same token, a student who can correctly work the *Math Tutor* end-of-year problems in the time allotted should be ready to move on to the next year's math challenges.

When he did start looking at various other math programs on the market, Barteck was surprised to discover that none of them allowed a problem to be worked on the screen in the same way as on paper. Instead, most programs required that the student work a problem out on paper and then simply enter the answer. One of his first requirements for his own program was that it allow working of all problems on-screen exactly as they would be done on paper.

Barteck also discovered that some math programs on the market don't allow learners to make corrections when they realize they have accidentally hit a wrong key. Barteck felt that a math program had to permit learners to make these kinds of corrections, so he set his program up to allow them to do so. Then, in testing out an early version of the program on his own children, Barteck learned that the cursor movement involved in making corrections was difficult for them. They were spending a good deal of their time trying to correlate the arrow keys and the cursor movement, which meant that the problem-solving process became harder and more time-consuming than it otherwise might have been. Therefore, in what he describes as "the trickiest part of the program," Barteck deactivated the cursor movement arrow keys and designated the letter key C as the cursor correction key. Hitting C moves the cursor back one space, making the correction process much easier.

Beat the Clock. Another program element to which Barteck gave special attention was the time factor. His program is set up to keep track of how much time it takes a learner to press the enter key after a problem first comes on the screen. When a child sets out to work a problem, three outcomes are possible—*correct, correct but out of time,* and *wrong, the answer is. . . .* But since none of these messages is given until the enter key is pressed, a learner is not placed under time pressure. "If it takes them an hour to answer it," says Barteck, "let them answer. Then let them go back and critique it."

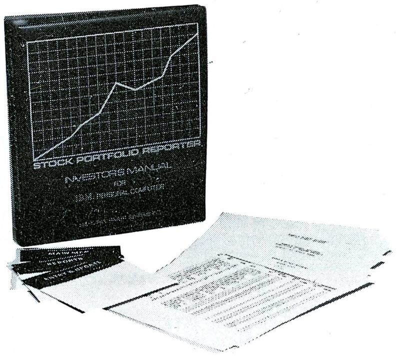
Barteck goes on to explain why he felt it was important to incorporate a time feature. "An average student can answer a certain kind of problem within a certain time limit. The problem with most tests is that there are some problems you can do fast and there are some that take longer. If each problem itself has a time limit, you have a truer indication of how the student is doing."

With *Math Tutor* finished and its fate decided, the Barteck family pc is far from idle. Two of Barteck's high-school-age children, Stacey and Donna, also use *Math Tutor*, and everyone in the family enjoys playing various games, including a *Star Wars*-type program created by some friends. Barteck himself continues to get a lot of personal satisfaction from programming in his spare time; he usually spends ten to fifteen hours a week enjoying his hobby. At present, he's working on some home management software. In these programs, as in his first, user-friendliness is a primary concern. He feels that this element is sorely lacking in much of the software he has seen. As to whether he will submit another of his programs to IBM, Barteck says he hasn't decided. At this point, he's more concerned with creating a useful program than he is with what may or may not happen to it later on.

To obtain a copy of *Math Tutor*, send $8 to Math Tutor, Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer, Box 60, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91603. Please allow a few weeks for delivery. ▲

STOCK PORTFOLIO REPORTER®

A POWERFUL TOOL FOR THE IBM PC INVESTOR . . .



WITH THESE FEATURES:

- STOCKSORT™ lets you sort any column of information (yields, P/E'S, gains/losses, etc. from high to low)
- Classify your stocks into groups that best fit your needs-STOCK PORTIFOLO REPORTER also sorts by group and figures average for each group.
- Choice of screen display or presentation quality printed reports.
- Easy to use-Each display is titled for quick reference in the Investor's Manual.

Now you can get concise reports with:

- STOCK PRICES (Automatically with Dow Jones News/Retrieval. Easy interface with the Hayes Smart Modem.)
- DIVIDEND YIELDS
- TOTAL COST AND MARKET AMOUNTS
- GAINS AND LOSSES (per share and total)
- PRICE/EARNINGS MULTIPLES
- PERCENTAGE GAINS AND LOSSES
- RELATIVE STRENGTH INDEXES that relate the price action of each stock to that of a market index of your choice.
- PORTIFOLO SUMMARY STATISTICS on all of the above

Only $179 at your IBM PC dealer, or write or call us directly:

MICRO INVESTMENT SYSTEMS, INC.
P.O. Box 8599
Atlanta, Ga. 30306
(404) 892-3194

DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED

Requires: PC-DOS, 128K of memory, Communications Adapter card, 80 column display, printer, modem and subscription to Dow Jones.

IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corp.
Dow Jones News/Retrieval is a registered trademark of Dow Jones & Co. Inc.
Hayes Smartmodem, while not a trademark is a product of Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.

VISA

MICRO INVESTMENT SYSTEMS, INC.
Quality Investment Software at an Affordable Price

MasterCard

FROM SCREEN TO DUMP IN ALMOST 60 FLAT

by Chris Lindell

One feature of the IBM Personal Computer causes both pain and pleasure. To produce a fine graphics display requires patience and mathematical skills. The pain comes from trying to print a screen image in high-resolution display mode.

The first requirement for printing high-resolution screen images is that you have the color/graphics display adapter and a suitable monitor. The second requirement is a printer that handles hi-res graphics—such as the Epson MX-80 with Graftrax or the IBM Personal Computer printer.

IBM Advanced Basic has some powerful statements—such as *get*, *draw*, *line*, and *paint*—for handling graphic images. These commands, however, are designed for quick interaction with images on the screen, not on the printer.

This article presents a high-resolution screen dump program. It's yours to type in and use as you see fit. If you don't want to type it in yourself, you may send eight dollars to Softalk Dumpscrn, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603, and you'll receive it on disk in the mail (allow a few weeks for processing). The disk will include the programs in figures 1 and 2, along with the assembly source listing and an impressive graphics image.

The background of this program is as follows. First an attempt was made to write a high-resolution screen dump in Basic. The approach taken was to *get* an 8-by-640-point matrix from the screen, make the calculations for which pins needed to be fired, and then send a line out to the printer. It worked, but it was a little obnoxious. It took twenty-two minutes to print one screen.

The next attempt was to access the memory location directly from a Basic program rather than use the *get* statement. A significant improvement resulted, but ten minutes was still a long time to wait for a screen to print.

The only way to achieve satisfactory speed was to write the program in assembly language. The Basic program shown in figure 1 loads the high-resolution print screen machine language code and saves it on disk. Any Basic program may then use a *bload* state-

```
90 DEF SEG = &H1700
100 FOR I% = 0 TO 168         'LOAD THE SUBROUTINE
110 READ J%
120 POKE I%,J%
130 NEXT
140 DEF SEG = &H1700:BSAVE
    "DUMPSCRN",0,&HA9         'SAVE THE SUBROUTINE
150 END
160 DATA &H55
170 DATA &H06
180 DATA &HEB,&H05,&H90
190 DATA &H00,&H00
200 DATA &H80
210 DATA &H80
220 DATA &HBA,&H00,&HB8
230 DATA &H8E,&HC2
240 DATA &HB4,&H05
250 DATA &HB2,&H1B
260 DATA &HCD,&H21
270 DATA &HB2,&H41
280 DATA &HCD,&H21
290 DATA &HB2,&H08
300 DATA &HCD,&H21
310 DATA &HB9,&H0C,&H00
320 DATA &HB2,&H20
330 DATA &HB4,&H05
340 DATA &HCD,&H21
350 DATA &HE2,&HF8
360 DATA &HB2,&H1B
370 DATA &HCD,&H21
380 DATA &HB2,&H4C
390 DATA &HCD,&H21
400 DATA &HB2,&H80
410 DATA &HCD,&H21
420 DATA &HB2,&H02
430 DATA &HCD,&H21
440 DATA &HB9,&H50,&H00
450 DATA &H2E,&H8B,&H1E,&H05,&H00
460 DATA &H2A,&HD2
470 DATA &H26,&H8A,&H37
480 DATA &H2E,&H22,&H36,&H07,&H00
490 DATA &H2E,&H84,&H36,&H07,&H00
500 DATA &H74,&H05
510 DATA &H2E,&H02,&H16,&H08,&H00
520 DATA &H2E,&HF6,&H06,&H08,&H00,&HAA
530 DATA &H75,&H07
540 DATA &H81,&HEB,&HB0,&H1F
550 DATA &HEB,&H05,&H90
560 DATA &H81,&HC3,&H00,&H20
570 DATA &H2E,&HD0,&H0E,&H08,&H00
580 DATA &H73,&HD2
590 DATA &HB4,&H05
600 DATA &HCD,&H21
610 DATA &H2E,&HD0,&H0E,&H07,&H00
620 DATA &H73,&HC0
630 DATA &H2E,&HFF,&H06,&H05,&H00
640 DATA &HE2,&HB9
650 DATA &HB2,&H0A
660 DATA &HB4,&H05
670 DATA &HCD,&H21
680 DATA &H2E,&H81,&H06,&H05,&H00,&HF0,&H00
690 DATA &H2E,&H81,&H3E,&H05,&H00,&H40,&H1F
700 DATA &H75,&H85
710 DATA &HB2,&H1B
720 DATA &HCD,&H21
730 DATA &HB2,&H40
740 DATA &HCD,&H21
750 DATA &H2E,&HC7,&H06,&H05,&H00,&H00,&H00
760 DATA &H07
770 DATA &H5D
780 DATA &HCB
```

Figure 1.

ment, as demonstrated in figure 2, to print a high-resolution screen in slightly over sixty seconds. The routine is designed to be loaded once by a Basic program, and then it may be called as many times as needed.

One way the routine can be incorporated into a program is by means of a function key. The following lines allow you to hit function-key 10 whenever you want to print a high-resolution screen:

```
10 KEY 10,"":KEY (10) ON     'SET UP FUNCTION KEY 10
20 ON KEY (10) GOSUB 2000 'TO PRINT A HI-RES
                             SCREEN
30 DEF SEG = &H1700
40 BLOAD"DUMPSCRN"           'LOAD MACHINE
                             SUBROUTINE
   .
   . remainder of Basic program
2000 REM *** KEY 10 PRESSED — PRINT HI-RES SCREEN
2010 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
2020 SUBRT% = 0
2030 CALL SUBRT%
2040 RETURN
```

The assembly source listing for the machine code is shown in figure 3. This source code is documented to explain how the printing is done.

```
10 REM   be prepared, this program takes close to an hour to
         draw the image
20 REM
30 SCREEN 2:KEY OFF:CLS  'draw an impressive graphics
                          image
40 P=300:Q=90:XP=250:XR=1.5*3.1415927#:YP=56:YR=
   1:ZP=64:XF=XR/XP:YF=YP/YR:ZF=XR/ZP:FOR
   ZI=-Q TO Q-1:IF ZI<-ZP OR ZI>ZP THEN GOTO 70
50 ZT=ZI*XP/ZP:ZZ=ZI:XL=INT(.5+SQR(XP*XP-
   ZT*ZT)):FOR XI=-XL TO XL:XT=SQR(XI*XI+
   ZT*ZT)*XF:XX=XI:YY=SIN(SIN(XT)+.4*SIN
   (3*XT))*YF
60 X1=XX+ZZ+P:Y1=-YY+ZZ+Q:PSET(X1,Y1):NEXT XI
70 NEXT ZI
80 DEF SEG = &H1700         'print out the screen, takes
                             about 1 minute
90 BLOAD "DUMPSCRN"
100 WIDTH "LPT1:",255
110 SUBRT% = 0
120 CALL SUBRT%
130 END
```

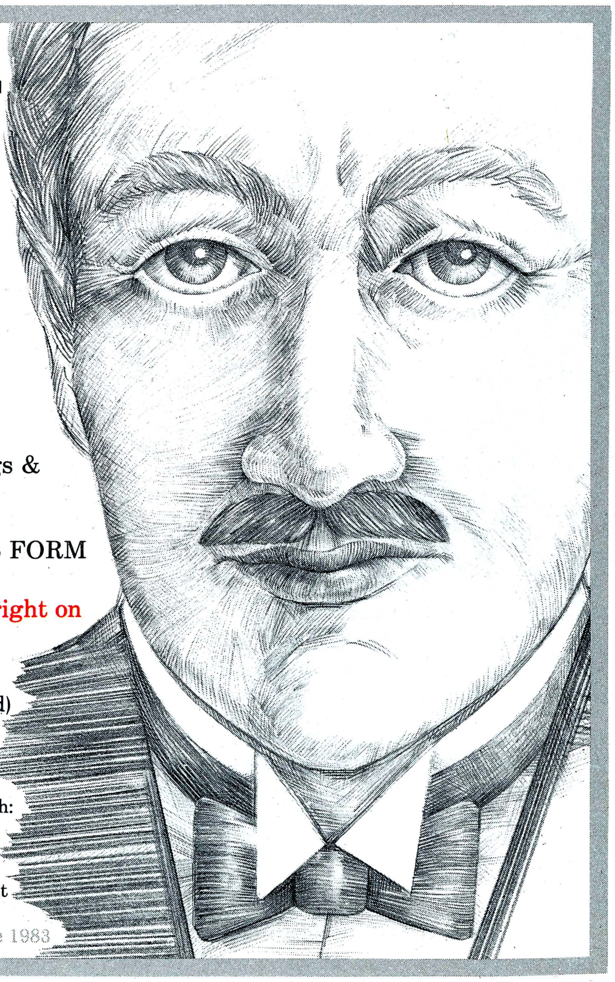
Figure 2.

```
                                     PAGE
                                     COMMENT *

                           TITLE:    DUMPSCRN
                          AUTHOR:    Christopher J. Lindell
                            DATE:    July 1983
                         PURPOSE:    This program will allow 640 X 200 resolution screens to be dumped to
                                     the printer. The printer must be an Epson MX-80 fitted with Graftrax+
                                     or the Epson MX-100. The screen will be centered on an 8 1/2-by-11
                                     piece of paper. The routine will reset the printer to turn on conditions
                                     when printing of the screen is complete. *
                                     PAGE
0000                        CSEG     SEGMENT STACK
                                     ASSUME CS:CSEG,ES:NOTHING
0000                       SUBRT     PROC  FAR
0000 55                              PUSH BP                 ;SAVE BP
0001 06                              PUSH ES                 ;SAVE ES
0002 EB   05   90                    JMP START               ;JUMP OVER DATA
0005 0000                 MEMVAL     DW 0000H                ;STARTING MEMORY OFFSET
0007 80                   BITPOS     DB 10000000B            ;BIT POSITION WITHIN BYTE
0008 80                   LINVAL     DB 10000000B            ;LINE 0-7 MASK
0009 BA   B800            START:     MOV DX,0B800H           ;BEGINNING SEGMENT
000C 8E   C2                         MOV ES,DX               ;LOAD INTO SEGMENT REGISTER
000E B4   05                         MOV AH,5H               ;AH=5 SIGNAL PRINT FUNCTION ON INTERRUPT 21
0010 B2   1B                         MOV DL,1BH              ;ASCII CHARACTER 27
0012 CD   21                         INT 21H                 ;SEND TO PRINTER
0014 B2   41                         MOV DL,41H              ;MOVE "A" TO THE PRINTER
0016 CD   21                         INT 21H                 ;PRINT IT
0018 B2   08                         MOV DL,8H               ;MOVE OUT LINES PER INCH
001A CD   21                         INT 21H                 ;PRINT IT
001C B9   000C            AGAIN:     MOV CX,0CH              ;12 BLANKS
001F B2   20                SPC:     MOV DL,20H              ;PRINT 12 BLANKS TO CENTER
0021 B4   05                         MOV AH,5H               ;AH=5 SIGNALS INTERRUPT
0023 CD   21                         INT 21H                 ;GO DO THE PRINT
0025 E2   F8                         LOOP SPC                ;DO IT TWELVE TIMES
0027 B2   1B              GRPHS:     MOV DL,1BH              ;PRINT ASCII 27
0029 CD   21                         INT 21H
002B B2   4C                         MOV DL,4CH              ;PRINT L
002D CD   21                         INT 21H
002F B2   80                         MOV DL,80H              ;PRINT 128
0031 CD   21                         INT 21H
0033 B2   02                         MOV DL,2H               ;PRINT 2
0035 CD   21                         INT 21H
0037 B9   0050                       MOV CX,50H              ;80 POSITIONS
003A 2E:  8B   1E   0005 R MAIN:     MOV BX,MEMVAL
003F 2A   D2                         SUB DL,DL               ;ZERO OUT DL—WILL BE PINS TO FIRE
0041 26:  8A   37          LPT1:     MOV DH,ES:[BX]          ;LOAD BYTE FROM SCREEN
0044 2E:  22   36   0007 R           AND DH,BITPOS           ;MASK IT
```

```
0049  2E:  84   36    0007  R                 TEST DH,BITPOS           ;SEE IF EQUAL
004E  74   05                                 JZ  LP3                  ;JUMP IF ZERO
0050  2E:  02   16    0008  R                 ADD DL,LINVAL            ;ADD LINE VALUE IF BIT WAS THERE
0055  2E:  F6   06    0008  R AA        LP3:  TEST LINVAL,10101010B
005B  75   07                                 JNZ  LP4                 ;JUMP BACK AND FORTH IN MEMORY
005D  81   EB   1FB0                          SUB BX,1FB0H             ;THIS COMES BACK FOR ODD LINES
0061  EB   05   90                            JMP ERYOTH               ;JUMP OVER EVEN MEMORY OFFSET CALCULATION
0064  81   C3   2000                    LP4:  ADD BX,2000H             ;EVEN LINES CALCULATIONS
0068  2E:  D0   0E    0008  R        ERYOTH:  ROR LINVAL,1             ;ROTATE PIN VALUE
006D  73   D2                                 JNB LPT1                 ;SEND OUT WHEN ALL 8 PINS ARE CALCULATED
006F  B4   05                                 MOV AH,5H                ;CODE 5 TO AH FOR THE INTERRUPT
0071  CD   21                                 INT 21H                  ;GO PRINT
0073  2E:  D0   0E    0007  R                 ROR BITPOS,1             ;ROTATE MASK RIGHT 1
0078  73   C0                                 JNB MAIN                 ;JUMP IF DONE WITH BYTE
007A  2E:  FF   06    0005  R                 INC MEMVAL               ;GET THE NEXT BYTE
007F  E2   B9                                 LOOP MAIN                ;DECREASE CX , DO IT 80 TIMES (BYTES)
0081  B2   0A                                 MOV DL,0AH               ;LINE FEED AFTER A WHOLE LINE
0083  B4   05                                 MOV AH,5H                ;CODE 5 TO AH FOR THE INTERRUPT
0085  CD   21                                 INT 21H                  ;GO DO THE PRINT
0087  2E:  81   06    0005  R 00F0            ADD MEMVAL,0F0H          ;INCREMENT TO NEXT LINE
008E  2E:  81   3E    0005  R 1F40            CMP MEMVAL,1F40H         ;LAST MEMORY LOCATION TO QUIT ON
0095  75   85                                 JNZ AGAIN                ;DO IT AGAIN IF NOT DONE
0097  B2   1B                                 MOV DL,1BH               ;PRINT ASCII 27
0099  CD   21                                 INT 21H                  ;GO PRINT
009B  B2   40                                 MOV DL,40H               ;RESET PRINTER TO DEFAULT VALUES WITH "@"
009D  CD   21                                 INT 21H                  ;GO PRINT
009F  2E:  C7   06    0005  R 0000            MOV MEMVAL,0000H         ;RESET MEMORY VALUE FOR THE NEXT TIME
00A6  07                                      POP ES                   ;RESTORE ES
00A7  5D                                      POP BP                   ;RESTORE BP
00A8  CB                                      RET 00H                  ;FAR RETURN TO BASICA
00A9                                   SUBRT  ENDP
00A9                                    CSEG  ENDS
                                              END
```

Figure 3.

▲



SILENT BUTLER™

... Your Trusted Servant

With your permission...

- I am ready to use; NO setup; NO manual or menus to learn, simply put the disks in your computer and turn it "ON"!
- I am "Crash Resistant"; Even after a power failure I will return to where I was working for you.
- I will manage your personal finances and records, (including Savings & Checking Accounts), plus balancing your checkbooks, eliminating duplication of effort.
- I will provide you a tax summary ready for you to fill-out your IRS FORM 1040 at tax time.
- With my CHECKHOLDER™ I will even actually pay your bills right on your normal personal checks.

And more...

TO ORDER CALL OR WRITE:
SILENT BUTLER SOFTWARE
1423 EAST ALAMEDA AVE
BURBANK, CA 91501
(213) 846-7571
Visa, Mastercard & COD Accepted
CA Residents add 6.5% Sales Tax
$159 + Shipping

Operates under the
UCSD p-System™ (Included)

What you will need...

- IBM Personal Computer or COMPAQ Portable Computer with:
  - 64K Ram
  - Two (320KB) Disk Drives
  - Color or Monochrome Display
- IBM/EPSON Printer or equivalent

© Copyright Silent Butler Software 1983

A Great Software

FriendlyWare PC Introductory Set

VOTED THE 5TH MOST POPULAR IBM SOFTWARE ON THE MARKET IN SOFTALK MAGAZINE'S RECENT READER SURVEY.

MONEY magazine described the Intro Set as one of the two best learner programs available for microcomputers.

PC magazine said it "had to be seen to be appreciated".

According to SOFTALK, "the implementation and sophistication of the Introductory Set are superior to anything available in the public domain".

The Intro Set is a must for novice users, but it's a lot more than just a starter set. Even seasoned pros are finding things they like among the 4 demo programs, 17 games, and 8 utilities on the package.

Some are even saying that several individual programs on the set (such as the Personal Check Book on disk #3) are worth the price of the package all by themselves.

SUGGESTED RETAIL $49.95

FriendlyWare PC Arcade

They told us that IBM'ers wouldn't buy games; but our customer feedback told us otherwise.

When the first two PC ARCADE production runs sold out before they shipped, we knew our customers were right.

PC ARCADE is a solid lineup of 10 fast-action arcade games for the IBM PC.

ASCII MAN, EAGLE LANDER, STAR FIGHTER TX-16, SHOOTER, BRICK BREAKER, GORILLA GORILLA, ROBOT WAR, BUG BLASTER, HOPPER and PC DERBY.

All 10 were written in Assembly language for speed and Text Mode for use on monochrome OR color monitor.

All games feature a PAUSE BUTTON and BOSS IS COMING KEY, and all but one of the games (EAGLE LANDER) can be controlled with EITHER a joystick or the keyboard.

And best of all, you can play them forever on five rolls of quarters.

SUGGESTED RETAIL $49.95

FriendlyWriter

FRIENDLYWRITER is the best little letter writer you've ever learned to use in 10 minutes.

If you want to produce a 175 page manuscript with footnotes and automatic pagination, you'll need to use one of those big, complicated, word processing monsters.

FRIENDLYWRITER was designed for normal, everyday, business and personal letters that you can produce the very first time you boot up the package.

SUGGESTED RETAIL Under $70.

B Great Prices

The days of the $495.00 "Watzitdo?" software package are over.

The same is true for $39.95 one game packages.

Software pricing is coming down out of the clouds, and today's software consumers are proving once again that the old American business ethic of "producing a quality product at a fair price" still has merit.

At FriendlySoft, our objective has always been to give you the products you want, in a format that you can use and appreciate, at a price you can live with.

So far, your response is telling us that we're on the right track.

C THE BEST ~~Great~~ Support

No other software company in the world backs their products as completely and as simply as we do.

The FRIENDLYWARE "NO FINE PRINT" LIFETIME GUARANTEE states:

"If your master diskette fails due to normal use, we will replace it, AT NO COST, within 48 hours or receipt of your original master.

If your master diskette fails due to abnormal use (staple in media, food on hub ring) we will replace the programming onto your diskette within 48 hours of receipt of your original master and a blank, unformatted, diskette.

We also offer a unique 24 hour hotline, where you get quick answers, instead of taped messages.

In short, FriendlySoft is the unchallenged leader in software product support. And we intend to stay there.

There are three good reasons why we're called "one of the fastest growing software companies in the business"

FRIENDLY WARE™
P.C. Introductory Set
P.C. Introductory Set
The FRIENDLY Family of Fine Software from FRIENDLYSOFT INC.
FRIENDLY WRITER™
The FRIENDLY Family of Fine Software from FRIENDLYSOFT INC.
FRIENDLY WARE™
P.C. Arcade
The FRIENDLY Family of Fine Software from FRIENDLYSOFT INC.

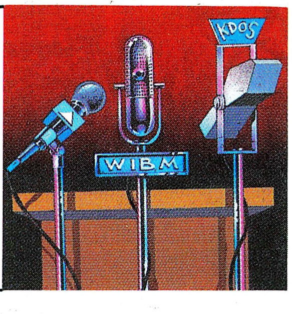
FRIENDLYSOFT, INC.

ARLINGTON, TEXAS

Producers of innovative, quality software products
EXCLUSIVELY for the IBM Personal Computer

All FriendlySoft products are available through an international network of dealers including COMPUTERLAND STORES, IBM PRODUCT CENTERS, COMPU-SHOPS, ENTRE COMPUTER CENTERS and a growing list of independent software dealers.

marketalk news



Unless otherwise indicated, software listed runs in DOS on machines with either display adapter and requires 64K and at least one disk drive.

Δ **SubLogic** (713 Edgebrook Drive, Champaign, IL 61820; 217-359-8482) has announced *Night Mission Pinball*, by Bruce Artwick, a "simulation so real you can tilt the machine." Has the look and sound of a real table. Game's theme is World War II night bombing run. With ten modes of play, including cosmic, slow motion, and high speed. Create and save up to one hundred custom modes of your own design. Requires color/graphics adapter. $39.95.

Δ Enjoy more sound and music: an External Speaker enhancement has been created by **Soft Solutions** (419 Pierce Street, Suite 6, San Francisco, CA 94117; 415-626-8088). Features variable volume and on/off control. $39.95. Δ *PC Commander* is a depth charge arcade game. Run the deadly North Sea straits mined by a German wolf pack. $29.95. Δ Eleven full-length classical masterpieces show off tonal quality in *PC Music Box*. $29.95.

Δ Two extensions to *WordStar* from **CMB3 Enterprises** (1412 Gatewood Court, Martinez, CA 94553; 415-372-7733): *WS-Patch* enables five different character sets to print in a variety of styles and densities. *WS-Keys* allows you to redefine the ten function keys of any command sequence or word. Keys: $24.95. Both: $39.95.

BREAKTHROUGH SOFTWARE.
at a breakthrough price.

Mailtrak T.M.
List Management System

This powerful package includes full name and address information plus 2 phone numbers, 5 mail profile codes (user defined), and 4 activity codes with dates! Phone directories, Labels up to 4 across (with optional message), Master list and files for Easy Writer, WordStar, or other word processors. Instantly locate a record by Name, Company, City, State, or Zip. Merge files or create sub-files. Up to 2,400 records per diskette depending on capacity.

$65
Includes diskette, manual and shipping
$15 for manual only
(refundable on diskette purchase)

TCI Software
6107 West Mill Road, Flourtown, PA 19031 215-836-1406

Δ A point-of-sale, inventory management, and business accounting system, *The Retailer*, is available from **Retail Solutions** (1211 Alderwood, Sunnyvale, CA 94086; 408-734-0653). For stores requiring two cash registers, the program controls pricing at the registers, maintains perpetual inventory records, and simultaneously runs any of the system's accounting packages. Requires 192K, hard disk, and communications adapters. $4,950.

Δ Two utilities from **Systemathica Consulting Group** (4732 Wallingford Street, Pittsburgh, PA 15213; 412-621-8362): *DOSX-1* offers optimized disk I/O buffering for high-performance processing. $100. Δ *DOSX-2* offers an optimized large-scale mass storage buffering system. $100.

Δ *Opportunities and Pitfalls '83* is an annual review of the computer industry, held in two-day-seminar form in various cities throughout the country. Notebook of entire presentation and model of industry on disk included as part of the package. Call **Future Computing** (900 Canyon Creek Center, Richardson, TX 75080; 214-783-9375) for locations and dates. $795.

Δ *PFS:Write* is a word processor that integrates with all other *PFS* programs and reads text-file output from most other software. Simple and easy to learn. Comes with function key template, on-screen help, and quick-reference command guide. From **Software Publishing Corporation** (1901 Landings Drive, Mountain View, CA 94043; 415-962-8910). $140.

Δ More than one hundred seventy-five hints and answers to various Interlogic adventures, printed in invisible ink, are contained in each illustrated *InvisiClues* booklet from **Zork Users Group** (Box 20923, Milwaukee, WI 53220). $9.95 each; specify game. Δ Illustrated eleven-by-seventeen-inch fold-out guide maps for *Zork I, II,* and *III* are printed in brown and black ink on parchment tone paper. $2.95 each; specify game. Δ Architectural drawings of the Robner mansion and grounds may help unearth clues for *Deadline* aficionados. $2.95. Δ Guide map for *Starcross* reveals the ins and outs of the alien craft. $2.95.

Δ A high-performance, three-pen plotter has been introduced by **Mannesmann Tally** (8301 South 180th Street, Kent, WA 98032; 206-251-5645). The Pixy lets single commands generate circles, spirals, opened or closed curves, and expand or contract one or both axes of a graph. Memory includes ASCII set, Greek, special scientific characters, and nine international language sets. With parallel interface, $795; serial, $880. Δ The MT 180L is a fifteen-inch-carriage, letter-quality printer, capable of 132 columns for spreadsheet, accounting, and report preparation. Compressed printing option allows up to 264 lines. Lightweight, cast-aluminum construction. $1,098. Dot-matrix 108I model: $998.

Δ A full-scale critical path project management system from **North America MICA** (11772 Sorrento Valley Road, San Diego, CA 92121; 619-481-6998), called *PMS-II*, prints activity reports with extensive sorting and data-selection options, standard Gantt or bar charts, graphic and tabular funding schedules, and more. Package satisfies all mandatory and optional governmental requirements. Requires CP/M-86. $1,295.

Δ **Software Building Blocks** (Box 119, Ithaca, NY 14851; 607-272-

2807) has released a two-pass, locally optimizing Pascal compiler. Based on the Pascal/Z compiler, the *SBB Pascal* implementation closely follows the Jensen and Wirth definition of the language, with professional programming extensions added. Includes debugging and editing functions. $350.
Δ Written with a farmer's needs in mind, the *Farm Ledger* from **Harvest Computer Systems** (203 West Eleventh Street, Alexandria, IN 46001; 317-724-9527) handles income, expenses, notes, and open accounts. The package also features check writing, checkbook balancing, comparison of performance to projection, and more. $250. Δ *Field Manager* is a field record database that keeps a detailed history of each field's production, including soil tests, yields, and costs. Enter crop costs directly from *Farm Ledger*. $350. Δ *Dairy Journal* is a production and profitability analysis system for dairy herds. Handles up to one thousand cows and provides ranking reports, production test results, lactation summaries, and more. $600.
Δ Key Tops is a set of four enlarged keys that slip over existing enter, tab, and shift keys. Easily applied. Key names are stamped into nonglare plastic. Color matches keyboard. From **Applied Dynamics** (Box 1810, Cottonwood, AZ 86326; 602-634-7148). $18.95.
Δ Version 2 of *MBA* from **Context Management Systems** (23864 Hawthorne Boulevard, Torrance, CA 90505; 213-378-8277) incorporates telecommunications and custom forms capabilities with business graphics, financial analysis, word processing, and data management. $695. Δ An extended service agreement policy guarantees updates to future releases at no cost. $150 per year.
Δ **Source Telecomputing** (1616 Anderson Road, McLean, VA 22102; 703-734-7500) has begun SourceNet, its own telecommunications network, in metropolitan Washington, D.C., New York City, and Pleasantville/White Plains, New York. Metropolitan Chicago and Philadelphia are scheduled for summer. When using SourceNet, subscribers to the Source need only dial a local number and hit two carriage returns to access the database service.
Δ *EdCompCon '83* is an educational computing conference to be held October 18–20 at the Red Lion Inn in San Jose, California. Application of the latest technologies to education is the primary focus. Hardware, software, and systems exhibits, demonstrations, and seminars included. Sponsored by the **IEEE Computer Society Technical Committee on Computers in Education** (1109 Spring Street, Silver Spring, MD 20910; 301-589-8142). $10 to $85. Δ *Educational Computer* magazine (Box 535, Cupertino, CA 95015) features current happenings from special education to in-service training. Columns focus on preschoolers, library media specialists, administrators, IEEE Technical Committee news, software reviews, instructional advice, and more. Fifteen dollars per year until September, then $25.
Δ A comprehensive time and billing software system for attorneys, accountants, architects, consultants, and service agencies has been introduced by **State of the Art** (3183-A Airway Avenue, Costa Mesa, CA 92626; 714-850-0111). May be integrated with the company's general ledger module. $795.
Δ **Tallgrass Technologies** (11667 West Ninetieth Street, Overland Park, KS 66212; 913-492-6002) has announced a twenty-megabyte streaming-cartridge-tape backup device for the XT. Can stream data or selectively back up and restore. $2,195. Forty-five-megabyte version: $2,495. Δ Two high-capacity, high-performance hard disk drives have thirty-five- and seventy-megabyte capacity respectively. $5,595 and $6,595. Δ Price reductions on the Winchester standalone hard disk and hard disk systems with integral tape backup have been announced. See your dealer.
Δ The Hard Disk III Subsystem from **VR Data** (777 Henderson Boulevard, Folcroft, PA 19032; 215-461-5300) includes case, power supply, cables, and mounting hardware, fully assembled, tested, and burned in. Available as five-megabyte fixed and/or five-megabyte removable disk cartridge. Ten- and fifteen-megabyte configurations available. $995.

Big Blue Releases 8087 Math Chip

You can now fill that empty socket next to the 8088 processor on the main circuit board with a genuine IBM-approved part: Big Blue has finally announced the availability of the 8087 math coprocessor chip.

The 8087 is a microprocessor in its own right. It differs from the 8088, which is designed for general-purpose tasks, in that its internal hardware is tailored to perform various math operations at very high speed and with great precision. One disadvantage: In order to use the 8087's capabilities, programs designed specifically for the coprocessor are required. With the coprocessor now available from IBM, it's likely that such programs will be forthcoming. Some software, such as Microsoft's recently announced Business Basic (see page 122), already supports the coprocessor.

The 8087 is available as part of a kit, which also includes an 8088 chip. IBM's inclusion of the 8088 in the kit, a result of the company's determination to make sure the two chips "match," is yet another indication of the company's conservative design philosophy. The IBM Product Center price of the option kit is $260.

IBM has also announced two new languages, APL and Logo. APL is widely used in the teaching, research, math, and science communities. Through an asynchronous communications line, pc APL is capable of exchanging workspaces and data files with an APL system running on an IBM 370. The IBM Product Center price is $195.

Logo is an interactive language highly regarded for its ability to develop problem-solving skills and introduce mathematical, geometric, and programming concepts. Written by Logo Computer Systems, the new language will be available in the fourth quarter. It will carry a price tag of $175 at IBM Product Centers.

Other new offerings from Big Blue include *Computer File-Command, One Hundred and One Monochrome Mazes*, a manual entitled "LearningTo Use DOS 2.0," and *Private Tutor. Private Tutor* allows an instructor to design computer-guided lessons. By itself, *Private Tutor* will be available for $50. IBM will also be offering several courses to be used in conjunction with *Private Tutor*, including "Learning DOS 2.0," "Multiplication Tables," and "Learning To Program in Basic."

Δ *The One-Key Step-Scroller* for Basic Programmers replaces the *list* command and steps through programs (forward or backward) or repeats the same lines. Other features included. From **IRC Associates** (125 Sherrfield Drive, Saginaw, MI 48603; 517-792-2156). $15.
Δ An automatic six-pen version of the Model 200 graphics plotter has been released by **Strobe Graphic Systems** (897 Independence Avenue, Building 5A, Mountain View, CA 94043; 415-969-5130). The Strobe 260 features automatic pen changing and preselection of colors. Pen-change routine is automatically invoked during plotting. Includes RS-232 interface. $995.
Δ Two new modules in the EasyBusiness Systems family have been announced by **Information Unlimited Software** (Oakmead Terrace, 1230 Oakmead Parkway, Sunnyvale, CA 94086; 408-746-0911). *Order Entry* and *Inventory Control and Analysis* can function as standalones or integrate with other modules. $595 each.
Δ *Data-Timer* is a billing, time-records, and analysis program for sorting and organizing services performed and other source data from *Day-Timer Diary*. Both programs from **Wayne Green** (Elm Street, Peterborough, NH 03458; 800-258-5473). The package features instant access to client records, password protection, personalized disk system, and more. $295.

Δ The Series 500 optical character recognition system from **Caere** (100 Cooper Court, Los Gatos, CA 95030; 408-395-7000) incorporates a circuit board with an attachable wand reader for remittance processing, inventory control, and point-of-sale use. Custom programmable; a string of up to eighty characters is recognized. XT version available. $1,145.

Δ Quick and easy transfer of data to the DEC VAX or PDP-11 is now available using *Dash-I Schematic Designer*, emulation software from **FutureNet** (21018 Osborne Street, Canoga Park, CA 91304; 213-700-0691). The pc is converted into a workstation that automates circuit and schematic design of systems composed of ICs and discrete components. Software, proprietary graphics controller, extra memory, and a mouse are included in the package. $5,980. Δ *VTerm* allows emulation of a VT-100 terminal. Scientific data captured by *Dash-I* is easily transferred to the DEC mainframe for processing and pass-along to other CAD/CAM systems. $200.

Δ **Cyborg** (55 Chapel Street, Newton, MA 02158; 617-964-9020) has announced the Isaac 2000 networking system that teams an onboard Motorola 68000 microprocessor with the pc for fast data acquisition, enhanced memory capacity, and multitasking capabilities previously unavailable. Up to fourteen Isaac 2000s can be supported by one host computer. Burst sampling rates of up to 200 kHz can be attained, with a twelve-bit A/D resolution. A number of twelve- or sixteen-bit analog interfaces and binary input/output options are available. $4,000.

Δ A desk of solids and veneers made by **Computer Furniture** (Box 2663, Chapel Hill, NC 27514; 919-967-8104) features a sliding (and lockable) keyboard tray, a shelf for the system unit, and a floppy disk drawer that hold seventy-four disks vertically. The only component actually on the desk is the screen. Walnut, $595; oak, $525.

Δ A package that combines word processing, financial planning, and simple database management has been released by **Peachtree Software** (3445 Peachtree Road N.E., Atlanta, GA 30326; 404-239-3000). *PeachText 5000* is said to have features comparable to those of *WordStar*, *SpellStar*, *MailMerge*, and *VisiCalc*. Spreadsheet function compatible with *PeachCalc*. $395.

PC/FORTH™

Complete FORTH program development systems for the IBM® Personal Computer. Packages include interpreter/compiler with virtual memory management, line editor, custom screen editor, assembler, decompiler, utilities, file and record access modules, and many demonstration programs. 150 page user manual. $100.00

Software floating point, Intel 8087 support, color graphics extensions, and target compiler available at additional cost.

Specify PC-DOS or CP/M-86®. One disk drive and 48 kbytes RAM required. Software supplied on 5¼ inch single sided soft sectored double density diskettes.

Laboratory Microsystems
4147 Beethoven Street
Los Angeles, CA 90066
(213) 306-7412

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc.

Δ Computer Listings of Employment Opportunities is a bulletin-board service aimed at technical professionals seeking career changes. Jobs listed can be applied for on-line. The database was created by Copley Press, a West Coast newspaper chain. Contact **CLEO** (2164 West 190th Street, Torrance, CA 90504; 213-618-0200). Service is free.

Δ The hard-disk version of the *Metamorphics Insurance System*, a full-functioned agency management system for independent insurance agents that includes accounting, prospecting, and marketing, is available from **Metamorphics** (Two Balsa Plaza, Bala Cynwyd, PA 19004; 215-668-9000). $3,650. Color XT version, $4,000.

Δ Written by a practicing attorney specializing in wills and trusts, *Personal Lawyer/Wills*, from **Lassen Software** (Box 1190, Chico, CA 95927; 916-891-6957), is a question-and-answer session that generates a will to dispose of property under applicable local state laws. Beneficiaries of general or specific gifts may be named. Requires eighty columns and printer. $50.

Δ An indexing system, a note editor, an alarm clock, a programmable calculator, a phone dialer, hard-copy control, and disk-management facilities are all part of *The Desk Organizer*, personal business software from **Conceptual Instruments** (4730 Warrington Avenue, Philadelphia, PA 19143; 215-726-7856). Requires eighty columns and two disk drives. $250.

Δ Combining the best features of other popular Logos, *PC-Logo*, from **Harvard Associates** (260 Beacon Street, Somerville, MA 02143; 617-492-0660), has a Lisp-based design for easy and powerful language extension. Features programmable function keys and enhanced editing capabilities. $199.95.

Δ For anyone interested in buying and selling fixed-income investments, *Fixed-Income Securities Calculations* calculates yield and price for such instruments as municipal bonds, United States Treasury and Federal Agency issues, corporate bonds, and certificates of deposit. From **Momentum Software** (533 Sutter Street, San Francisco, CA 94102; 415-982-7375). $185.

Δ *Plumb—Probing the World of Personal Telecommunications* is a newsletter designed to help users explore the many services available via modem. Published by **Riverside Data** (Box 300, Harrods Creek, NY 40027; 502-228-3820), the publication lists hundreds of private- and company-sponsored databases and systems, as well as electronic mail, software sales and exchange, and on-line games. $20 for five issues.

Δ A 16K to 64K buffer for Epson MX or FX serial printers has been introduced by **Wesper Microsystems** (14321 New Myford Road, Tustin, CA 92680; 714-730-6250). The Wizard EBI-Serial interface enables you to dump print data nonstop into the buffer and proceed to your next task. Installation is simple. $216.

Δ *S3E (Steady State Systems Engineering)* is a power plant and chemical process simulator that performs sophisticated flowsheet analysis tasks. From **PSI/Systems** (Research Park, Box 3100, Andover, MA 01810; 617-475-9030). $1,360. Individual application Paks start at $50.

Δ *PC Pal*, from **Comprehensive Software** (2316 Artesia Boulevard, Redondo Beach, CA 90278; 213-318-2561) uses games, sound, and animation to teach learners about their computers. Requires double-sided drive and eighty columns. $39.95

Δ **Legend Industries** (2220 Scott Lake Road, Pontiac, MI 48054; 313-674-0953) has introduced the TR-1M RAM card. The card will support up to 768K of directly addressable RAM in either 64K or 256K segments. Maps around already used spaces in the pc's memory. Price to be announced.

Δ Two new *TK!SolverPaks* from **Software Arts** (27 Mica Lane, Wellesley, MA 02181; 617-237-4000): The *Mechanical Engineering Pak* features thirteen models—including cantilever beam, cylindrical wall heat transfer, and natural frequency of vibration in rotational systems; each contains the necessary equations and values for solving specific problems. Modules are modifiable. $100. Δ *The Financial Management Pak* includes thirteen models covering such topics as compound interest calculation, cost of equity capital, and bond refunding decisions. For use by financial analysts and managers. $100. Δ The first issue of *TK!SATN*, the journal for *TK!Solver*, has been released. The bimonthly publication teaches how to make best use of the number-manipulation package. $50 per year.

Δ A book and software combination, *The Executive's Guide to the IBM Personal Computer*, is a complete introduction to business applications and programming in Basic. Written for the reader with a basic knowledge of simple business transactions; two disks show how actual systems run. Published by **Reston Publishing** (11480 Sunset Hills Road, Reston, VA 22090; 703-437-8900). $39.95.

Δ Electronic mail software from **Software Connection** (1800 Wyatt Drive, Santa Clara, CA 95054; 408-988-3704) now supports the pc on a Corvus Omninet. *Mail Monitor* allows more than sixty workstations on an Omninet to send letters, files, and other data to each other. Letters can be addressed to specific workstations or general distribution list; printer can be shared. $950.

Δ Four stock-option programs for stock brokers and individual investors have been released by **Star Value Software** (12218 Scribe Drive, Austin, TX 78759; 512-837-5498). *Optionvue-A* and *Optionvue-B* are "what if?" spreadsheets, the B version covering more advanced strategies. $189 each. Δ *Opvalu* and *Advanced Opvalu* are designed to aid investors in determining the fair market value of put and call options. $39.95. Advanced version: $129.

Δ A system for the entry, editing, processing, and presentation of questionnaire data, *The Survey System* from **Creative Research Systems** (1864 Larkin Street, San Francisco, CA 94109; 415-771-0912) can produce crosstabs, scored variable tables, and bar charts camera-ready for presentation. Tables can be up to three pages long in banner format. Weighting of questionnaires and selection of subsamples are among the editing capabilities. Requires 128K. $495.

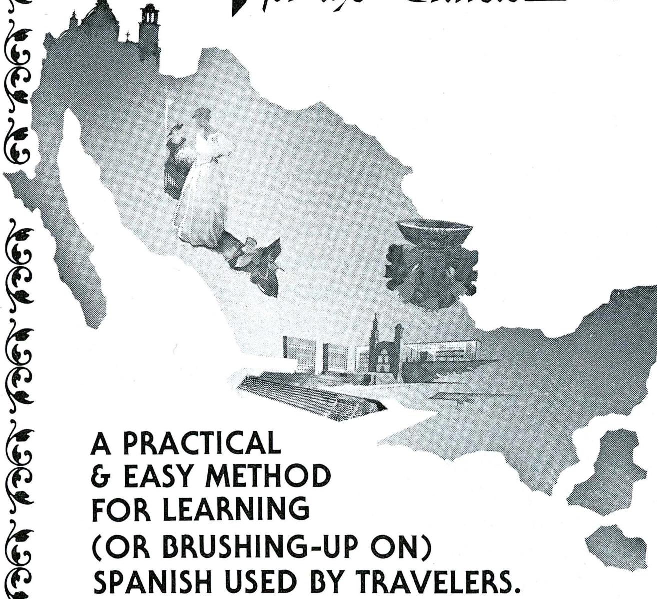
Δ *HyperTyper* is a typing aid for offices, schools, and homes. From **Digital Marketing** (2363 Boulevard Circle, Walnut Creek, CA 94595; 415-938-2880), the package can be used for typing tests and practice drills. Children can use it as a game. $49.95.

Δ A two- and three-dimensional, fully interactive, color and black-and-white graphics program, called *Energraphics*, can do business graphics as well as computer-aided architectural and engineering design. Rotation of objects, zooming, and hidden line removal are possible. Three-dimensional surfaces and functions can be plotted, viewed, and analyzed statistically. From **Enertronics Research** (150 North Meramec, Saint Louis, MO 63105; 314-725-5566). Requires graphics adapter. $250. Δ Five building energy savings, economic, and design programs for use by architects, designers, builders, and energy auditors are available. Overhand is a solar utilization program. $95. Δ *Pasode 1* is a correlation model for designing and assessing passive solar energy savings. $295. Δ *Lifecost* is a complete life-cycle cost analysis program. $295. Δ *Bill* constructs a building's energy usage by correlating utility bills with local weather. $295. Δ *Insulate* determines the economically optimum insulation thickness of any building surface. $295.

Δ An AC standby power system designed to prevent loss of power and data due to utility company line problems, RBS-AC monitors power from a wall outlet and eliminates spikes with a transient suppression system. Switches to backup battery power during interruptions. From **Control Technology** (8200 North Classen Boulevard, Oklahoma City, OK 73114; 405-840-3163). Overseas 50 Hz. −240 VAC unit is also available. $569.

SOUTHWESTERN DATA SYSTEMS
PRESENTS

Spanish for the Traveler™



A PRACTICAL
& EASY METHOD
FOR LEARNING
(OR BRUSHING-UP ON)
SPANISH USED BY TRAVELERS.

ADVENTURE, FUN, EDUCATION, and history are all reasons people travel to other countries. The problem is, when traveling to countries where little or no English is spoken, how to communicate. By spending a few hours with Spanish for the Traveler, you can gain a basic understanding of Spanish and at the same time provide yourself with a MAGIC KEY which will open doors to the local culture not normally available to the average traveler. In a Latin country, anyone who tries to speak the Language is almost always treated with a smile and warmth by the people of that country. The way to gain this edge is to practice Spanish with Spanish for the Traveler before your trip. . .

Because:

- It's a quick and easy way to learn Spanish useful in traveling.
- It's an opportunity to learn some of the basics of Spanish without the necessity of attending classes, lectures or listening to endless records.
- It's presented in a manner which catches your interest immediately and encourages you to continue building your Spanish vocabulary.
- It provides you with the essentials of Spanish necessary to make your trip as enjoyable as possible. With emphasis on Spanish required for Your arrival, Shopping for Souvenirs, Seeing the Sights, Touring the Country, Dining Out and Getting Acquainted, almost every situation is covered.

Package includes:
diskette, 4 audio cassettes, and take-along manual.

System Requirements:
48K Apple II / II+ with DOS 3.3
and audio casette tape player.

PRICE: 59.95
CALIFORNIA RESIDENTS
PLEASE ADD 6% SALES TAX.

southwestern™
data systems

P.O. BOX 582-S • SANTEE, CALIFORNIA 92071 • 619/562-3221

Δ Intelligent communication between a pc and an IBM mainframe is possible with *OmniLink* software from **On-Line Software International** (Fort Lee Executive Park, Two Executive Drive, Fort Lee, NJ 07024; 800-526-0272). Spreadsheets, forecasting, analysis, or accounts receivable and payable can now be done without specially written programs for each task. Works with *OmniCom* electronic mail software. Packaged with *OmniMicro*, an applications generator and query language program. $28,000 for DOS systems. $35,000 for OS.

Δ Two hard disks that feature high-speed streaming-tape-cassette backup have been announced by **Sysgen** (47853 Warm Springs Boulevard, Fremont, CA 94539; 415-490-6770). The Sysgen II-10 provides ten megabytes of storage, the II-20 provides twenty. Backup is performed at 2.5 megabytes per minute; both systems can be configured in up to ten logical volumes. Works under PC-DOS or CP/M-86. II-10, $2,995; II-20, $3,795. Δ A twenty-megabyte streaming cassette backup subsystem for the XT includes controller, drive electronics, and tape drive. Image performs complete archival backup at a rate of 2.5 megabytes per minute. Two backup modes. $995.

Δ Telemarketing tasks are automatically organized, scheduled, and facilitated using the *PCat System* from **Arlington Software+Systems** (97 Bartlett Avenue, Arlington, MA 02174; 617-641-0290). Stores client data, schedules lists of calls, handles various kinds of dialing, does calculations and word processing. Applications include fund-raising, subscription soliciting, telephone surveying, retail and wholesale marketing, and more. Requires 128K, eighty columns, and modem. $680.

Δ Plot and process data and curves described by mathematical functions with *Plot!*, available from **Non-Linear Products** (Box 14755, Minneapolis, MN 55414). Switch back and forth between linear, semilog, and double-log scales to calculate and plot inverse, power, and linear functions of the data points. Labels can be placed anywhere on a graph. $29.95.

Δ Libraries, schools, scholars, teachers, and writers: compile, format, and arrange bibliographies using *The Personal Bibliographic System* from **Personal Bibliographic Software** (Box 4250, Ann Arbor, MI 48106; 313-996-1580). Includes screen editor, variable-length fields and records; allows notes and annotations. Punctuation of annotations is according to ANSI and ISO standards. Requires eighty columns, two disk drives, and printer. $250.

Δ *SuperCalc*, *1-2-3*, and *dBase II* training programs have been added to the Startup training series from **Computer Labs of America** (9340A Clairmont Mesa Boulevard, San Diego, CA 92123; 619-576-1133). Each program includes a series of thirty-minute video tapes, outlines, and data disks. $60 each.

Δ A printer buffer from **Interactive Structures** (146 Montgomery Avenue, Bala Cynwyd, PA 19004; 215-667-1713) makes it possible to compose, insert, and rearrange information on its way from the program to the printer. Using random-access printing, PipeLine makes it possible to compose letters or reports in building-block fashion. Comes with its own plug-in power supply. Memory is expandable. Requires parallel interface. 8K: $230. 128K: $440.

Δ Instant (nondelayed) stock options are now available with *PC Quote*, a software and communications package from **On-Line Response** (327 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, IL 60604; 800-225-5657). Besides quotes, the system provides more than thirty months of history on stocks listed on the five major exchanges. Generates charts, analyzes positions for options traders, handles tax accounting, and more. $495. Quotation fees and database line charges are billed.

Δ The Prototype/Decoder board provides the means to interface prototype circuitry quickly. From **Real Time Devices** (Box 906, State College, PA 16801), it features a switch-selectable address decoder that frees the experimenter to concentrate on design. Four I/O device-select input and output signals, four power supply voltages, and a buffered bus are available. $99.

Δ **Software Libraries** (Box 844, Pasadena, CA 91102; 213-793-1700) has announced a correspondence and text module, *The Business Library Word Processor*. Can function as a standalone or integrate with the other nine Business Library Modules. $495.

Δ *VisiCalc* templates for the small medical practice are available from **CMA** (55722 Santa Fe Trail, Yucca Valley, CA 92284; 619-365-9718). Private patient bills and AMA claim forms can be printed. Requires 96K. $249.95.

Δ The latest developments from **Tecmar** (23600 Mercantile Road, Cleveland, OH 44122; 216-464-7410): The PC-Mate Lab Master board provides sixteen channels of fast hi-res analog-to-digital conversion, two channels of twelve-bit digital-to-analog conversion, and more. $995. Δ The PC-Mate IEEE-488 interface is for applications involving IEEE-488 protocol. $395. Δ The ComNet Office Communications System, based on the Ethernet expansion board, allows networking, electronic mail, dictating machine control, and more. Available in three configurations: The Secretary; The Manager, with modem; and The Executive, with modem and voice recognition included. $1,695 to $2,995. Δ Five versions of mass storage in a minicabinet package include ten-, fifteen-, and twenty-six megabyte formatted storage; five-megabyte removable-cartridge Winchester; and a 6.25-megabyte multiple floppy stack drive, recommended for backup on hard disk systems. $1,595 to $3,395. Δ The 2ndMate expansion board provides two serial ports, two parallel ports, clock/calendar, and more. $295. Δ The 3rdMate multifunction board offers a 300-baud direct-connect auto-answer modem, serial and parallel ports, battery-powered real time clock/calendar, and more. $445. Δ *Speech Master* hardware and software provides synthetic voice output, text-to-speech conversion, and expanded native vocabulary. Board, $395; support package, $95. Auxiliary vocabulary unit: $100. Δ A PC-DOS 2.0 update for the Winchester Expansion product line is available to previous customers. $25. Δ New slimmer ORBs (option retaining brackets) for the XT will be provided for all customers at no cost.

Δ **Executec** (12200 Park Central Drive, Dallas, TX 75251; 214-239-8080) has introduced *The Business User's Solution*, a set of integrated applications including *Execu/Writer*, a word processor; *Execu/Model*, a spreadsheet; *Execu/File*, for data management; *Execu/Plot*, for graphics; *Execu/Reporter*, for formatting and printing; *Execu/Link*, a 3780 emulator; and a utility package. Standardized formats, data sharing, and modular addition are features of system. From $450 to $1,500, depending on modules selected.

Δ The menu-driven *Fast Graphs* will compare up to six sets of data on a single graph—bar, pie, or scatter. From **Innovative Software** (9300 West 110th Street, Overland Park, KS 66210; 913-383-1089); the package features a draw mode for complete editing of graphs and charts. Characters, shadowing, circles, boxes, and arcs can all be added. $295.

Δ *PC Weighmate* is an electronic postal, shipping, and counting scale system that gives you instant USPS, Federal Express, and UPS rates, tells you the least expensive way to go, does parts counting, and more. From **Micro General** (1929 S.E. Main Street, Irvine, CA 92714; 714-557-3744), the system comes with a twenty-five-pound-capacity electronic scale platform, interface board, and software. $695.

Δ Utilities from **Quest** (Box 2553, Huntsville, AL 35804; 205-533-9405): *QuesTalk* is an asynchronous communications program that allows you to select baud rate, parity, duplex, and more. $110. *PrintPak* is a general-purpose printing utility. $45.

Δ *DietCalc* calculates your ideal weight, the number of calories you need every day, the length of time to get to that weight and more. From **Savant Software** (Box 440278, Houston, TX 77244; 713-556-8363). $24. ▲

Now! Teach yourself how and when to use the IBM PC-- with your PC as your private instructor!

PC Master® ***is here*** — the first research-validated, interactive IBM PC® training program guaranteed to transform you into a knowledgeable, confident PC user.

Even if you have never sat down at a computer before, PC Master will have you using your PC like a pro in just a few interesting hours.

PC Master guides you in the sequence you want and at your own pace — through the intricacies of Word Processing. Communications. Data Base Management. Electronic Spread Sheets. And it does it without computer jargon or dull, confusing manuals. But that's not all. PC Master also helps you explore the benefits of seven other major uses for your IBM PC, including education, graphics and financial planning.

We began with the Astronauts. For more than a decade our staff of over 70 instructional development specialists have scientifically developed hundreds of successful employee and customer training programs. IBM, Prudential, Merrill Lynch and scores of other organizations rely on us for many of their most crucial training programs. And our unique training methods have proven long-lasting. So much so that the special task programs used to train NASA's space astronaut is still being used today — ten years later!

How we can make this guarantee. Before releasing PC Master to the public we tested it in real-life situations with business executives, educators, students, professionals and senior training directors. After using PC Master for only a short time, their response was unanimous — PC Master is the best introduction to the IBM PC ever. Here are a few comments from actual users:

"Finally, someone did it right. Congratulations."
Dr. John Hughes, III/Los Angeles
Baptist College

"Help! I made the mistake of testing your PC Master on my wife and 13-year-old son. How do I get my computer back?"
John Meade, President/Hagan Assoc

"As an international marketing firm, we constantly review new products. PC Master is one of the best designed packages we've ever tested. Your staff is to be congratulated."
Martha Biddle, President
MB International

Here's what you get:

PC Master includes three complete training programs that act as your own personal instructors. They use computer graphics, sound effects and interactive step-by-step instructions that make learning a pleasant, enjoyable activity.

What your PC can do for you: A hands-on guided tour through eleven of your PC's most useful applications.

When to apply your PC: Participate hands-on in the four most used applications — word processing, data management, communications and spread sheets. And you'll even learn how and when to choose the software that best suits your needs.

How to use your PC: How to run applications software programs. You take command of the keyboard and PC DOS in less time than it takes to see a movie!

Novice or experienced computer users can profit from PC Master.

You can use PC Master to introduce your business associates or family members to the exciting new world of computers. If you're a new user who doesn't want to waste valuable time in long, often boring classes, PC Master is the perfect answer to your needs.

GUARANTEE

If after using PC Master you or your company's management are not completely convinced PC Master is the finest and most complete interactive IBM PC training program available, return it within ten (10) days and we will refund your purchase price in full.

Make your second best computer buy today.

Your first smart buy was choosing the IBM PC. Now make the second. Order PC Master today. And start finding out for yourself, in complete privacy, how and when to use all the potential power available in your PC.

TO ORDER YOUR PERSONAL COPY OF PC MASTER CALL (619) 578-1700 TODAY OR CLIP AND MAIL THIS COUPON!

Mail to: Courseware,® Inc., 10075 Carroll Canyon Road, San Diego, CA 92131.

Please send me____ PC Master at $79.50. Price includes shipping. California, C add 6.5%. ____ Check enclosed

NAME ____________________

TITLE ____________________

COMPANY ____________________

ADDRESS ____________________

CITY ____________ STATE ______ ZIP ______

AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE ____________________

____________ Purchase Order no. (if relevant)

COURSEWARE
IBM PC
COMPUTERIZED LEARNING—PC MASTER
HOW AND WHEN TO USE YOUR PC
COURSEWARE
IBM PC MASTER
COURSEWARE
IBM
WARE
HOW, WHY, AND WHEN TO USE YOUR COMPUTER
COMPLETE ON-LINE INSTRUCTION FOR THE NEW PC ENTREPRENEUR BROUGHT TO YOU BY EXPERTS
WHO MAKE LEARNING QUICK AND EASY.
IT'S COURSEWARE, OF COURSE.

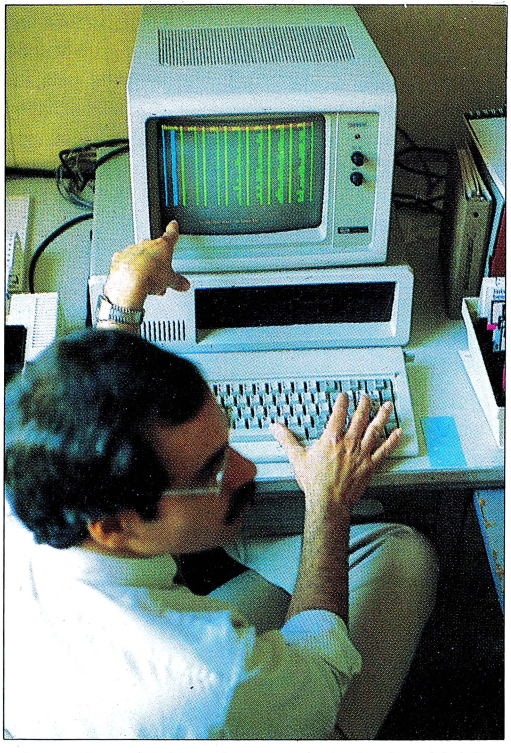
COURSEWARE®

PC Master is a trademark of Courseware, Inc. IBM PC is a trademark of IBM Corporation.

by Michael Ferris

SOFTWARE PHYSICIANS

PCs Join the Johns Hopkins Staff

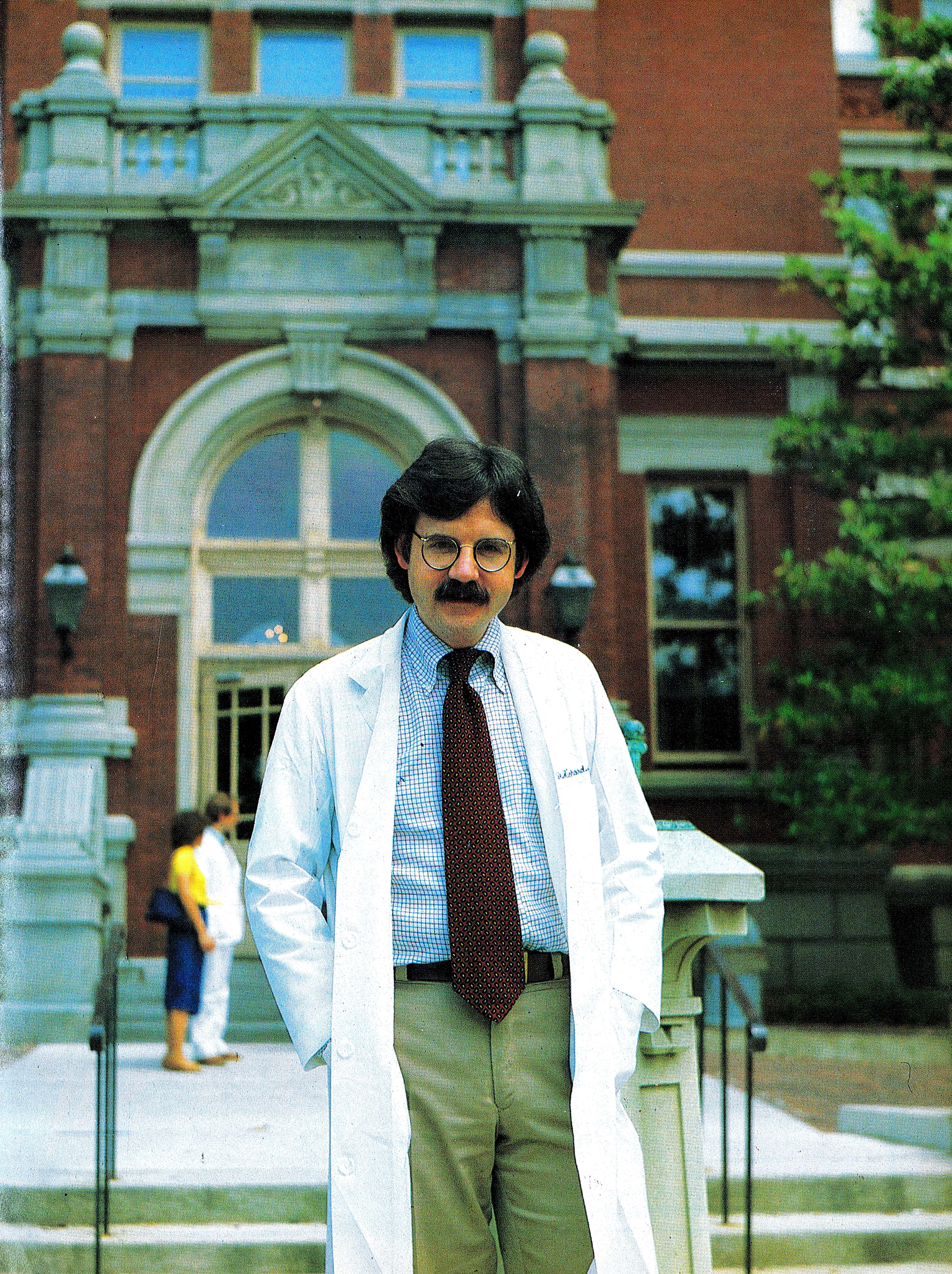


Above: Custom pH probe software is displayed by Dr. William Ravich. Right: Dr. Dick Johannes, graduate of '72, on the old hospital's front steps.

Ghosts walk the corridors of Johns Hopkins Hospital in Baltimore. Says one doctor who works on the ninth floor, "The walls talk to you late at night. Sometimes," he confides, "you can hear William Osler, one of the founders of the hospital, discussing the symptoms of an illness."

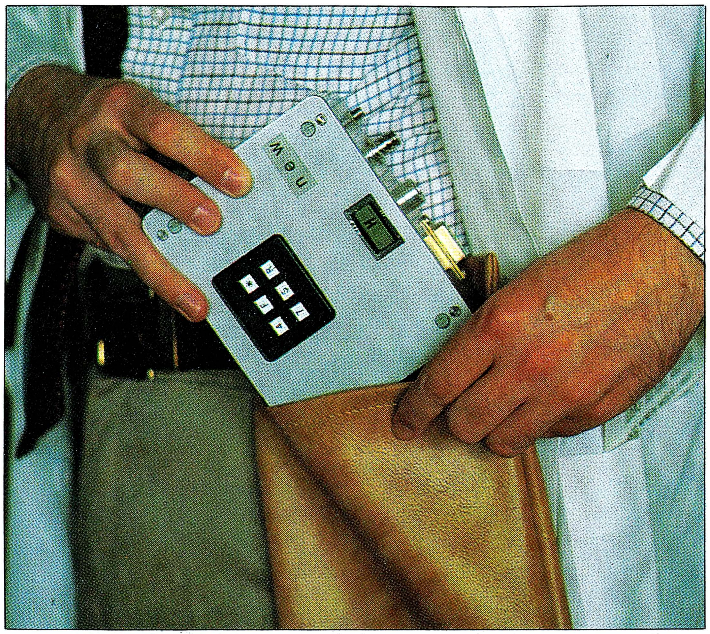
Osler, a Canadian physician, was a pioneer of institutional medical care. He initiated the doctors-in-residence concept and transformed medical practice from a European guild system to a business of live-in interning. He was also the first to create a formal record of the symptoms of more than one hundred illnesses, several of which now bear his name. Until that time—around the turn of the twentieth century—a diagnosis was about as good as a doctor's best guess.

Achievements by Johns Hopkins doctors constitute a succession of great moments in medicine: the first open-heart surgery, the first understanding of a drug's therapeutic action, and fundamental findings that led to a polio vaccine. The ghosts of those who achieved these milestones are here, along with the spirits of psychiatrist Adolf Myer, Harvey Cushing, the father of modern neurosurgery, and John Jacob Abel, the discoverer of adrenalin.



Some folks even claim to feel the presence of the restless soul of Edgar Allan Poe wandering nearby. Poe lived and died three blocks from here. Legend has it his bones were dug up by some medical students soon after he was buried; that's a prank that undoubtedly would have amused Poe.

Pale spirits of the past returning to Johns Hopkins would see changes in the hundred-year-old institute. It still occupies the same stately grounds as it enters its second century of research and healing. But it's being renovated now, inside and out. A new front door on Wolfe Street is only one of the alterations these ghosts would see in the huge red-brick hospital complex. They'd surely notice too that departments such as urology, surgery, trauma, and pediatrics, once scattered more or less randomly around the hospital, are now stacked in levels, one discipline per floor. And they'd behold other differences, both in medical education and in the way that medical research and practice are being carried out.



Above: Using the prototype, Johannes demonstrates how the pH probe is worn by a patient. Left: The colonoscope gives a clear picture of a patient's insides. Right: A hundred years ago, a Johns Hopkins surgeon wore the first pair of rubber gloves.

Johns Hopkins *is* haunted, but not by ghosts. It's haunted by tradition, a tradition of innovation, of doctors topping the accomplishments of their heroes and teachers. The institute is steeped in a rich history of medical milestones, radically new methods of health care, and character.

A Reputation for Innovation. Doctors at Johns Hopkins nowadays are pressured to at least equal their predecessors' best work or, preferably, to go them one or two better. "There's always all those famous people sitting over you, looking down and asking, 'Now what are you going to do?' " says Dr. Dick Johannes. The 1972 Johns Hopkins graduate has returned to the hospital as assistant professor of medicine. A specialist in two seemingly unrelated fields—gastroenterology and microcomputers—Johannes exemplifies in some ways the kind of change that has been going on here during the last few years.

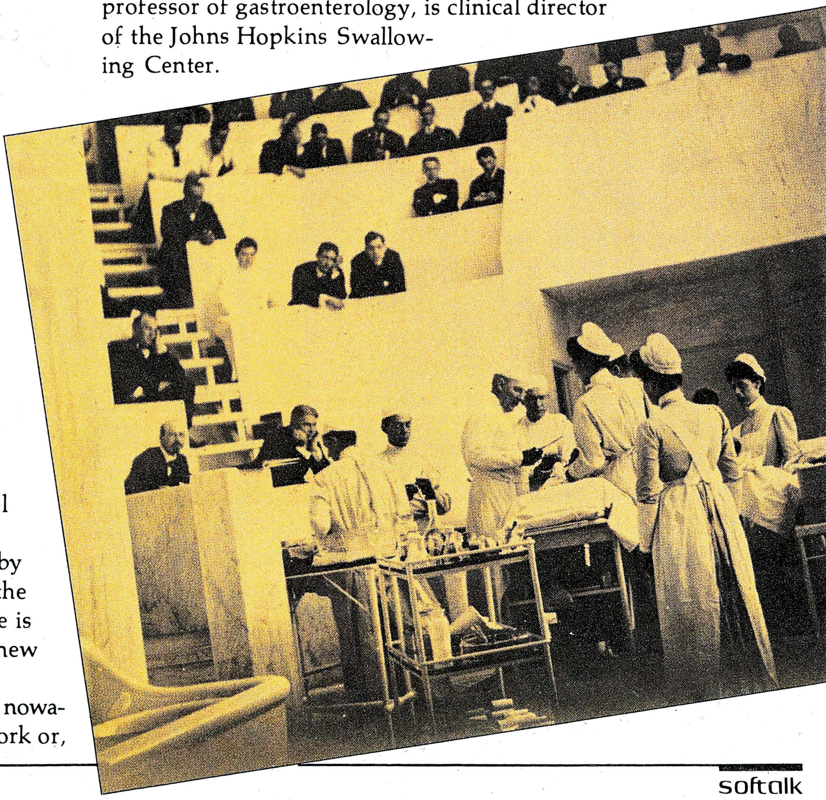
In speaking of his computing abilities, he admits to knowing less about micros than a data processing person, but more than your average doc. "I'm an interval person," he says, "walking on both sides of the fence."

According to recommendations resulting from a three-year study by the Association of Medical Colleges, the inclusion of computer science, along with the promotion of lifetime learning, is one of the new directions medical education must take in the information age. So far, relatively few medical schools have started using micros and minis to deal with the explosion of medical knowledge that threatens to overwhelm apprentice physicians today. Eventually, perhaps, all med schools will include computer literacy in their programs or specify it as prerequisite training.

Johannes's own computer work comes at a ripe moment in medical history. Before Johannes and others like him, there were few M.D.s who knew much about programming. Soon there will be many, some attempting to create their own specialized databases and database management systems, as Johannes is doing, and others creating software to work with diagnostic hardware invented by specialist colleagues.

Physicians like Johannes have taken to doctoring their own software. The fact that they've gotten involved with computers can be traced in part to their desire to stay as sharp as the next generation when the patter turns to pixels and palettes as well as to platelets and blood counts. A more pressing reason for their interest in programming is the lack of ready-made software suitable for the medical profession.

"It's an incredibly difficult problem if you have a sophisticated application. Most packages are light and commercial," says Dr. William Ravich, also of Johns Hopkins. "You try them and they're not quite right, or they're not at all useful. Ravich, also an assistant professor of gastroenterology, is clinical director of the Johns Hopkins Swallowing Center.



Johannes and Ravich, working together on two big Personal Computer projects, have come to the same conclusion: When it comes to software, it's best to roll your own. Johannes does the programming and Ravich gives the second opinion.

The more impressive of their collaborations, and also the more revolutionary, is an esophageal-reflux program that charts data taken from a pH probe (a device to measure acidity) that a patient swallows and keeps down for a day. To gastroenterologists, reflux in the esophagus, also called heartburn, is an ongoing mystery.

A major subject for speculation among gastrointestinal (GI) specialists is whether heartburn, like sunburn, is something one gets after exposure—in this case, to an acid event. Ravich's monitor, with Johannes's software, is helping to get the facts.

This medical detective work began ten years ago. "We would put down pH probes—wires with glass or metal tips. These were hooked to bulky monitoring machines on carts the patients had to push around," recalls Ravich. "Very fifties, space-age technology. After twenty-four hours, the severity of a patient's esophageal acidity was calculated from data recorded on a huge sheet of paper, using a tedious ruler, pencil, and calculator method."

Enter the Chip. Seventies technology brought doctors a choice of improvements over this Buck Rogers-and-the-seven-monks routine. They could go with either a cassette recorder system, like cardiologists, or a microprocessor unit. Guess which won.

A patient now wears a small metal box on his belt, with the probe wire taped to the side of his mouth. An 8K microprocessor with a 2K program measures acid attacks, converting analog information to digital.

The patient pushes a button when he feels a symptom like heartburn, chest pains, or sour mouth. On the screen, these pains are shown as points over the top of a ragged city-skyline-type chart. Then the visual evidence of acid activity is checked against the times when the patient reported symptoms. "The low points of the graph are the most interesting to the doctors—below the normal 5.00 pH level," explains Ravich. "The deeper the drop, the more acid."

Thanks to Johannes's software, it's now possible to dump sixteen to forty-four hours' worth of pH information from the handmade tin box into the pc in three minutes. While this is going on, the pH monitor recharges itself. Then the program charts the ups and downs of a patient's reflux activity, calculating when stomach acid entered the esophagus and how long it stayed there.

The characteristics of each reflux event, such as the time pH spends below normal level and the duration and depth of each episode, are of interest to people studying heartburn. "The more you look at it, the more complicated it gets," says Johannes.

Ravich is one of the developers of this pH monitor. The prototype was built from scratch, in concert with colleagues from the applied physics lab and the department of biomedical engineering at Johns Hopkins. Eventually, he explains, every hospital will have a pH monitor—providing that a development company gets involved in the production of the instrument. Johannes's software, which really enhances the monitor's usefulness, also enhances the probability that the monitor will find widespread use.

Johannes's other Personal Computer project is a database comprising ten years of colonoscopy information—and a set of tools with which to generate useful reports from the data.

A colonoscopy is a thorough search of the large intestine. The procedure used to be done with x-rays; now it's done by means of a snaking rubber fiberoptic video camera that crawls through a patient's bowels. A doctor observes the journey through a hand-held camera lens.

Thanks to Johannes's Basic, Pascal, and Fortran skills, which he picked up as a physician consultant to the hospital's IBM 370 installation several years ago, data from every colonoscopy performed at Johns Hopkins in the last decade is now on-line. That's over two thousand cases, handled by fifteen different doctors. It took Johannes a year to do the coding and a hired hand three months to keyboard the data.

Mixing Modules. Begun on an Apple while the programmer mastered various programming tongues, the database is part Basic and part Pascal; both parts are compiled and linked into a single exe file. "I stumbled onto the exe method," Johannes confesses. "There wasn't anybody to ask if it was a good idea to mix modules written in different languages." He has since found out that it works fine.

This isn't the sort of database program that will ever make the software bestseller list; it's just too specialized. But the colonoscopy database is of enormous benefit to a specialist like Johannes. "The GI tract is the major cause of morbidity these days," he explains. "In the early antibiotic era, you got sick and were cured. Now we're seeing illnesses that make you miserable, incapacitate you, and linger for years. These kinds of afflictions are taking over medical practice."

Risks of and the potential for intestinal illness can be calculated with the help of the database, and the current status of every person with a particular disease is immediately accessible. "It's nice to have a machine that remembers 2,265 people by name," Johannes quips.

Johannes now does his programming at home on a pc equipped with an 8087 math coprocessor, having traded up from the Apple when he was ready to bring the colonoscopy disks to the hospital.

Among other things, it was the eighty-column RGB video display, *EasyWriter*, memory addressability, and the function keys that cinched Johannes's decision to get the pc. The fact that Johns Hopkins uses IBM 370s did not enter into the decision, although, as it turns out, using the pcs as 370 terminals could save the hospital about two thousand dollars per workstation.

Reliable Business Software

DATASMITH software requires no previous computer experience, so it can be used effectively by your present office staff. The menu-driven systems feature extensive error detection and correction facilities, so they are "friendly" to the user.

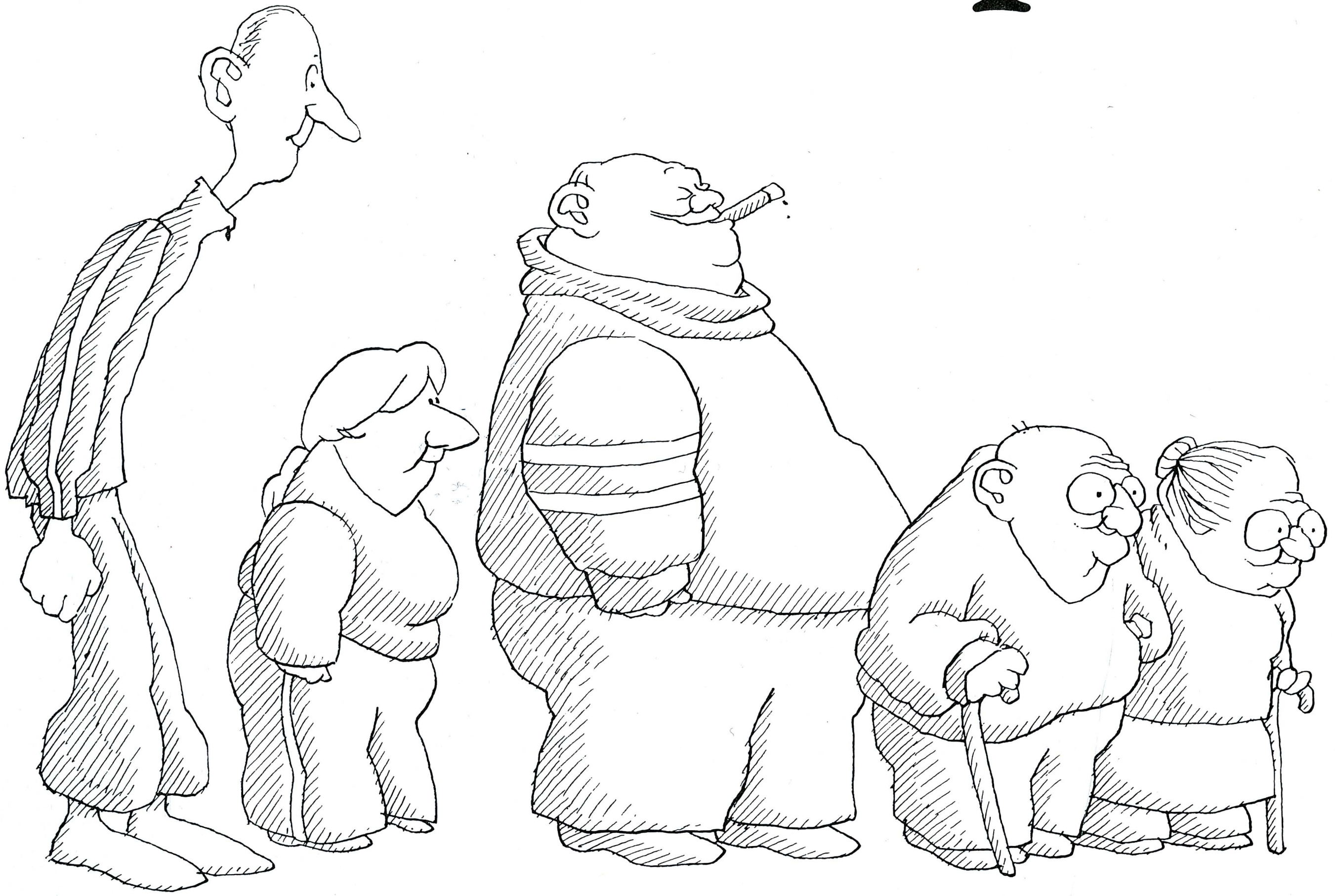
- GENERAL LEDGER. Everything you need to keep the books. Features easy-to-use data entry and error correction, trial balance, fast post, and a variety of comprehensive reports. Automatic error detection keeps the books in balance. Writes checks and makes journal entries in one operation.
- PAYROLL. A very flexible system that adapts to a wide variety of needs. Features Federal, state, and local tax calculations, EI credit, and special pay and deduction amounts. Prints all necessary reports, paychecks, and W-2 forms.
- DATA MANAGER. A powerful generalized data management system that lets you define, enter, update, sort, select, and print reports from a database of your own design. Applicable to almost any job where records must be kept, this system can replace literally hundreds of programs.

Put your computer to work with these sophisticated systems now. Programs are available for 48K or larger two-disk systems in your choice of code for Microsoft BASIC-80® under CP/M®, IBM® Personal Computer BASIC, or Micropolis® BASIC.

DATASMITH

Box 8036, Shawnee Mission, KS 66208, (913) 381-9118

Get InShape!™



The personal diet and exercise program for IBM-PC users.

No matter what your fitness formula is, InShape™ and your IBM-PC can help take the work out of tracking your diet and exercise habits. Whether your racket is tennis or you're keeping tabs on the dinner table, InShape helps you measure your progress on the road to personal fitness.

The Waist Watcher

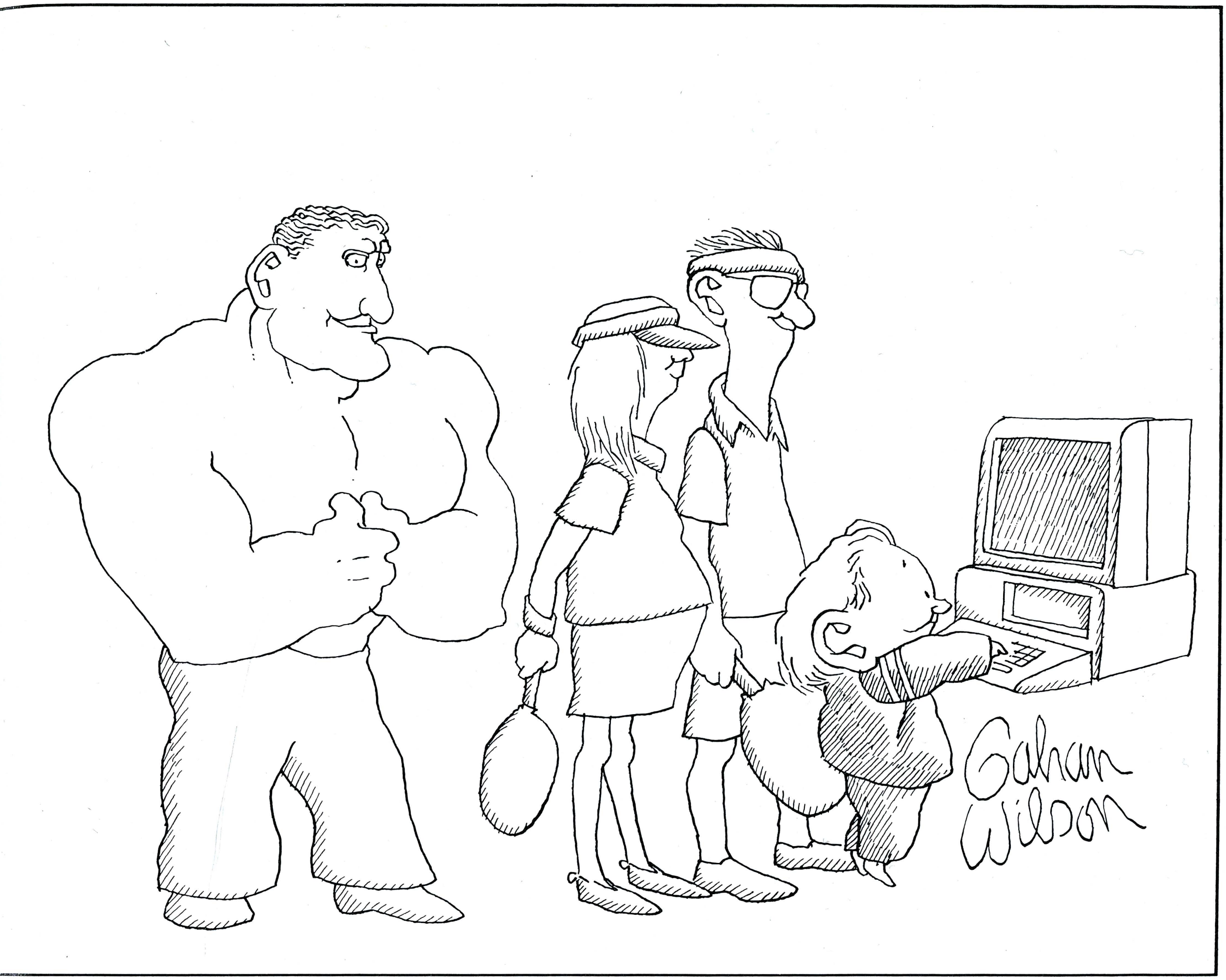
Keeping accurate daily records of what you eat is important, regardless of whether you're dieting or simply concerned about proper nutrition. InShape makes it easy. InShape's computerized food dictionary lists approximately 1,000 different foods, along with their food group and calorie, carbohydrate, protein, and fat content. The food dictionary can easily be edited and new foods added.

To update your daily record, simply select the food from the dictionary, then specify the number of servings and the meal — breakfast, lunch, supper, or snack. Over 50 entries per day can be recorded. InShape automatically totals your daily consumption by meal and food group.

And when it comes to exercise...

Of course, InShape can't do your exercising for you. But it *can* make getting started and staying with it a lot more fun.

Using the standard aerobics formulas, InShape automatically calculates points for 24 aerobic activities — from running to racquetball. Merely enter information pertinent to each exercise performed. InShape figures the points you've earned and keeps track of your weekly total.



Spotting trends

With InShape, you can *see* exercise and eating patterns over a period of time. Flexible plotting capabilities let you display up to a year's worth of information and view it on a daily or weekly basis. InShape can show you such detailed information as calories consumed compared to aerobic points, percentage of protein eaten at each meal, carbohydrates consumed by food group, and much more.

The main ingredient — you

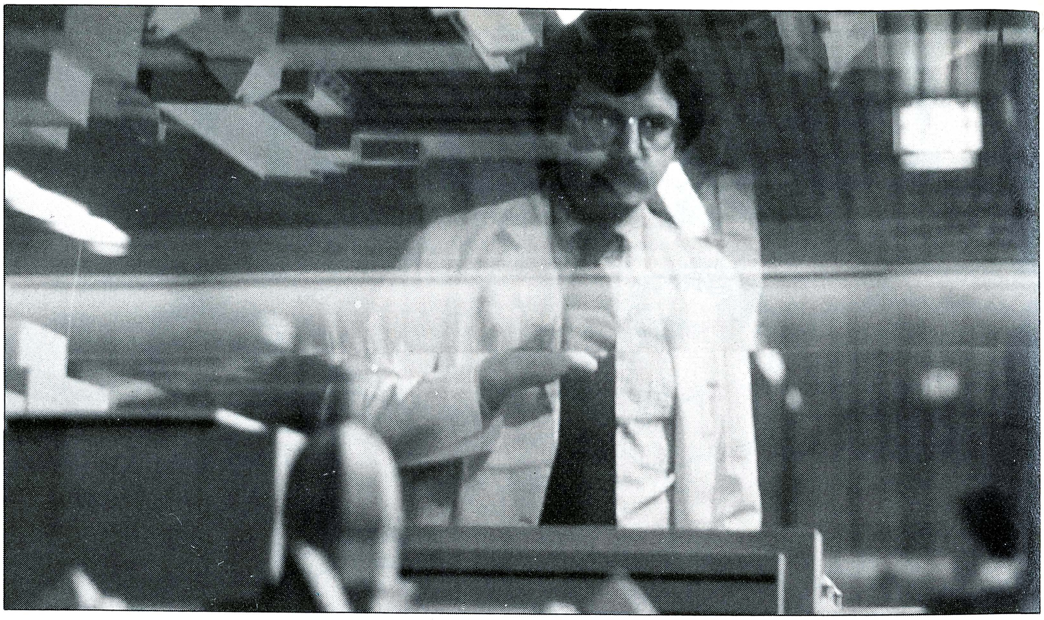
Once you've set your diet and fitness goals, InShape helps you pinpoint problem areas. And helps measure your progress as you build a computerized personal fitness and nutrition profile. All you need is willpower. And the desire to get in shape!

For the introductory price of $95,* *you* can get InShape. For more information or to order, write DEG Software; 11999 Katy Freeway, Suite 150; Houston, Texas 77079; 713/531-6100.

DEG software
11999 Katy Freeway, Suite 150
Houston, Texas 77079
713/531-6100

*Plus $3 postage and handling.

Requires IBM-PC, minimum one disk drive, and 80-column monitor. Printer optional. Compatible with DOS 1.0 and 1.1 with 64K memory or DOS 2.0 with 96K memory.



A model of the renovated hospital complex sits under glass in the spacious new reception area.

"I suppose I could have gone with an Apple IIe if it had been available a year ago," he says, but he's glad he didn't. Sixteen-bit speed is now a necessity. When you're accessing a single fact out of ten years' worth of patient records, you don't want it to take ten years.

Networking—The Tie that Binds. Networking is what makes micros really work in a large hospital. Currently a trio of pcs, networked to a Corvus hard disk with the Omninet system, is in use in the GI division. While interning, Johannes walked nine blocks for a lab report, thinking, "This is nuts." The main database is on the ninth floor of the Blalock Building, where he works, and new records are now entered by Linda Welch, the GI clinic coordinator, down on the third floor.

In the oncology center, seven other pcs are networked together. A lot of viral immunology lab data is figured on this network, with the help of *1-2-3,* and some locally written UCSD p-System programs, and a five-hundred-patient bone-marrow transplant database is shaping up. Johns Hopkins is one of the few bone-marrow-transplant centers in the United States. The database is being coded by Bill Burns, another doctor learning to program. The programming bug seems to be contagious.

A conference to standardize networking formats within institutions is the next item on Johannes's computing agenda. Achieving standardization among hospital departments and even among competing institutions is a priority with him.

Ravich concurs with Johannes on the importance of standardization: "This is a serious matter in medicine. Diseases have standards, and not all hospitals use the same standard terminology. This can hamper progress when doctors in separate hospitals are trying to define similar cases."

The art of diagnosis, says Johannes, is like "shooting at a moving target." Diseases often have shifting symptoms that change over time. Doctors must constantly monitor diagnostic data.

"In the case of a brand-new disease like AIDS, for example, it's crucial that every case discovered be reported and all symptoms collected for analysis in a hurry," he says. Only the rapid transfer of information between doctors and hospitals nationwide can take the fuzzy edges off diagnosing a potential epidemic.

Incidence of disease has its own ebbs and flows, which must also be tracked. "The peptic ulcer is going through a change right now," Johannes continues. "It has been around since antiquity. It was familiar to the Greeks. Now, apparently, its incidence is diminishing. Why that's so isn't clear." (Only their patients believe that doctors know it all.)

Gastro Graphics. Some light-pen graphics done in Pascal will be Johannes's next bit of programming on the colonoscopy database. A drawing of the colon will come up on-screen and, to enter the information, a doctor will need only point to the place where an intestinal abnormality has been found.

Actually, the entire program will be in Pascal by the end of the year. Basic is good, says Johannes—and bad. There's more power to the self-documenting Pascal. "Link-list routines are a nightmare in Basic," the doctor confides. "Seven months later you're looking and asking, 'What the hell is this statement doing?' "

On top of the Pascal revisions to the colonoscopy database, the pH monitor software, the future programming commitments, in-house consulting, and his ongoing medical work, Johannes has the strength to add Lisp to his repertoire.

He's a doctor who loves computers for more than just being terrific clinical tools. "They have the ability to answer a question that, before, couldn't even be asked," he says.

Let the illustrious ghosts of Johns Hopkins take note: This is what Dr. Johannes and his generation are doing. ▲

HI TECH COMPUTER SERVICES

IBM PASCAL USERS

TWO UNIQUE MSDOS PACKAGES THAT WILL IMPROVE YOUR PRODUCTIVITY

THE PASCAL TOOLKIT

- Console control including KEYPRESS, INKEY, LOCATE, 40/80 col screen set/clear, read from screen, SOUND.
- Turtlegraphics including PALLETTE & VIEWPORT.
- Serial Comm for up to 4 ports (you control parameters).
- Printer control, can be configured for any printer.
- Examples including menu selection, graph drawing, full screen input, communication, and more.

THE PASCAL SSP
(Scientific Support Package)

- Complex Math including trig functions.
- Vector & Matrix Math (inversion included).
- Spline, Regression, Sorting, and Smoothing.
- Integral, Derivative, & 6 statistical distributions.
- Source code provided for most units.

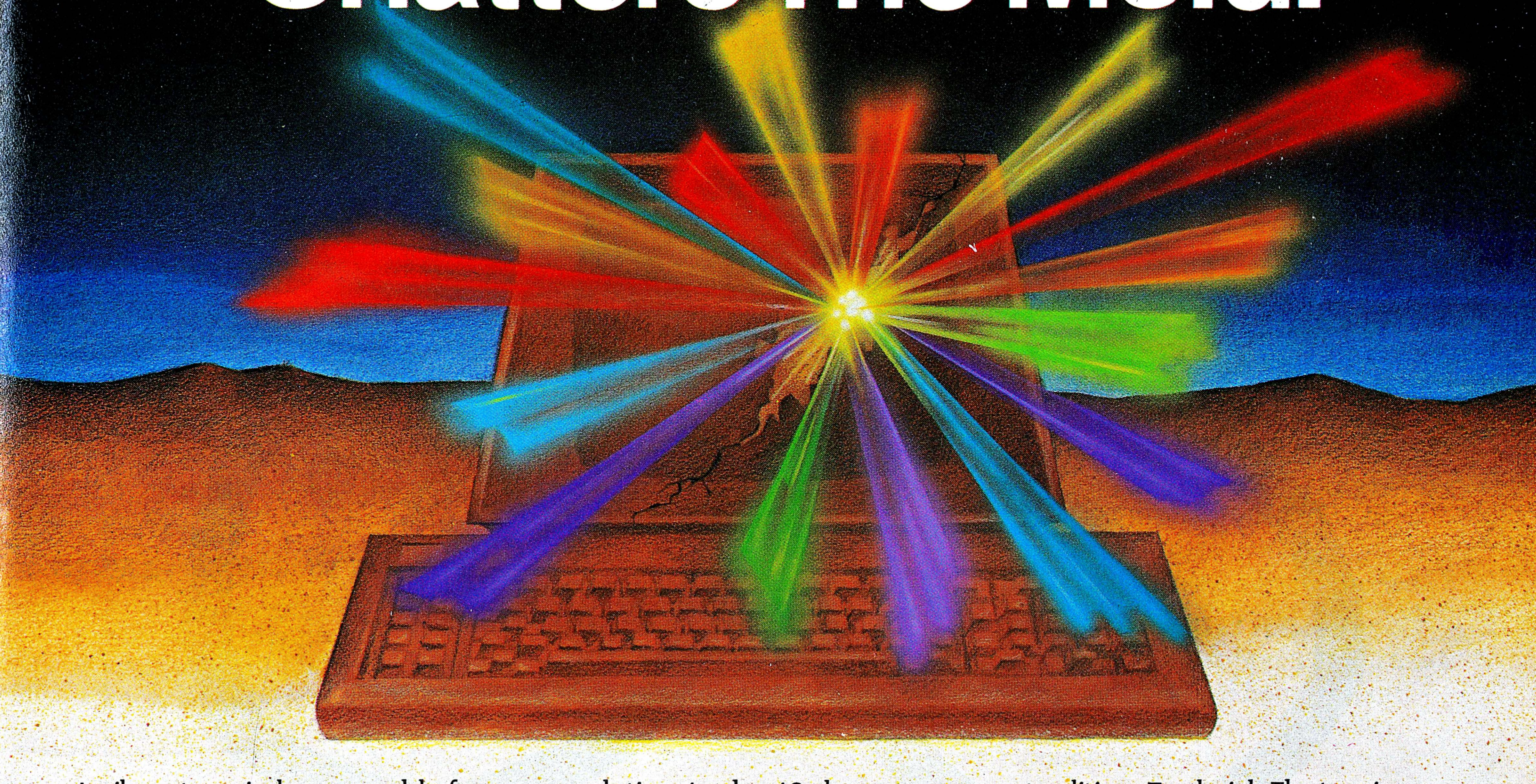
AND MORE

Both packages come with full documentation including a tutorial on how to construct your own units. Batch programs are provided to help you compile and run your programs. To order send $150 for TOOLKIT, $95 for SSP, or $25 each for doc + demo disk to:

HI TECH COMPUTER SERVICES
17 Mein Drive/New City, NY 10956/or call (203) 333-6034
Send for Free Brochure: "Configuring Your PC for Pascal"

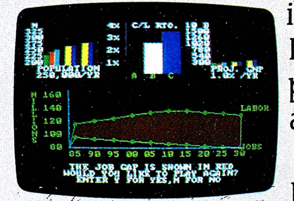
PROFESSIONAL PASCAL TOOLS

COLORPLUS™ Shatters The Mold.



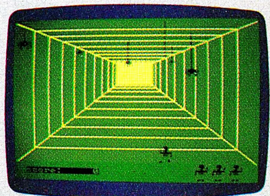
A vibrant, varied new world of color is now at your fingertips.

We've shattered the mold for color graphics adapters with COLORPLUS, a high resolution, full color breakthrough fully compatible with IBM Personal Computer hardware and software.



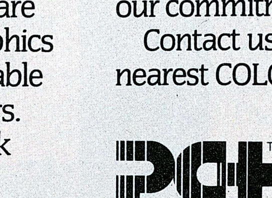
COLORPLUS produces incredibly sharp, detailed multicolor graphics of professional quality at a low PC price.* Its state of the art biplanar technology enables high resolution 4 color 80 character graphics or medium resolution 16 color 40 character graphics.

The current IBM PC capabilities of high resolution 1 color 80 character graphics and medium resolution 4 color 40 character graphics simply pale in comparison, now that the era of COLORPLUS has arrived.



XT COMPATIBLE

Using only a single expansion slot, COLORPLUS includes an integrated parallel port, thereby saving you an expansion slot for future needs. No modification is required to existing software in the IBM modes. Enhanced software supporting COLORPLUS Graphics capabilities is currently available from major software suppliers.



For over 31 years, Frederick Electronics Corporation has developed high quality electronic equipment world-wide. The key to our success is our international reputation for customer support. PC+ Products will continue in this tradition. Frederick Electronics Corporation is a subsidiary of Plantronics, Inc., a publicly owned company listed on the NYSE as PLX.

The goal of PC+ Products is to expand your options, to make your personal computer more valuable and productive. COLORPLUS is just one example of our commitment to that objective.

Contact us for the name of your nearest COLORPLUS dealer.

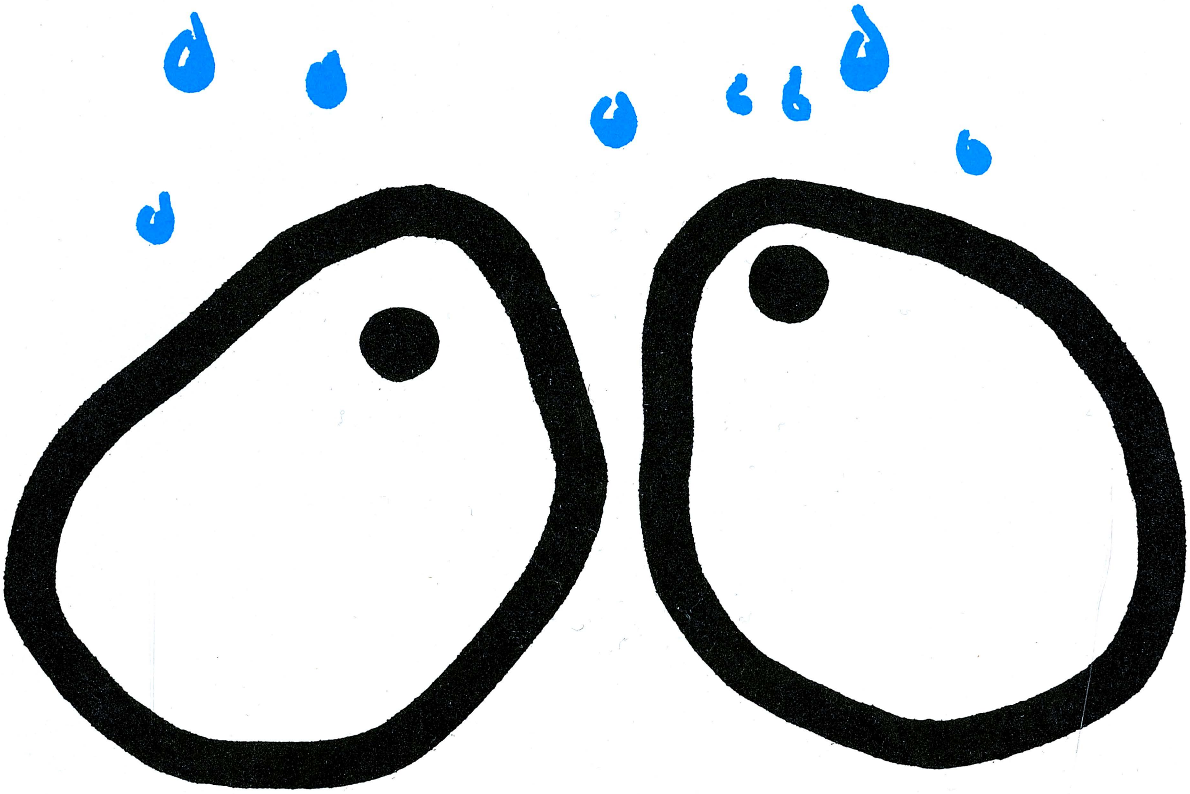
PC+™ PRODUCTS

PLANTRONICS™
Frederick Electronics
7630 Hayward Road, P.O. Box 502
Frederick, Maryland 21701
Telephone: 1-800-638-6211
(301) 662-5901, TELEX: 893438

---

* Suggested retail price: $475.00, including software.

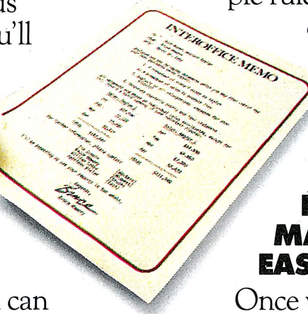
PC+ and COLORPLUS are trademarks of Plantronics/Frederick Electronics Corp. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.



HOW TO BREAK INTO WORDPROCESSING WITHOUT BREAKING INTO A COLD SWEAT.

Word is out. There's a new wordprocessing program that's easy to learn and to use and that takes advantage of one of your greatest assets: common sense. The name of this powerful program? EasyWriter II.™

EASY TO USE, OF COURSE.
Even though EasyWriter II is loaded with all the features you'd ever want, you'll still find it easy to get to know. With the friendly manual and a couple of serious hands-on sessions, you'll have the commands working for you, not vice versa.



...WITH FILE NAMES THAT ARE EASY TO IDENTIFY.
On EasyWriter II, you can use file names up to 30 characters long, instead of 8, like other leading systems. So your report on **Marketing Soft Lenses, 1983** can be called that instead of **MKSOLE. '83.** Think of the time you'll save when you can actually identify what you're looking for.

...AND A TEXT THAT'S EASY TO CHECK.
EasyWriter II shows you onscreen everything you're typing. Like underlines and **BOLDFACE**. You know what your text is going to look like when it's printed — before it's printed. Try that on other systems.

EASYWRITER II: RULER OF THE WORD.
EasyWriter II lets you create multiple rulers (margins) and save the commands in the document. So you can reformat in one quick pass, with variable margins and tab stops.

INTERACTION. MAKES OUR FAMILY EASY TO KNOW.
Once you learn EasyWriter II, you can produce an EasyPlanner™ spreadsheet or an EasyFiler™ information system using similar commands. We call this compatibility our interactive system. When you learn one, you're just a keystroke away from command of several Easy-Family™ programs.

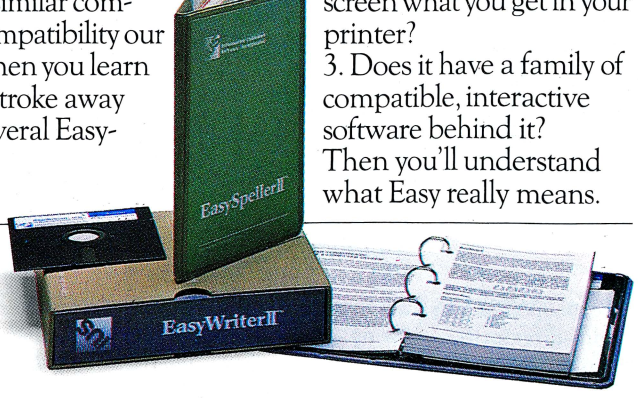
NOW IT'S EASY TO WRITE WELL.
Put the 88,000 word EasySpeller II™ dictionary to work with EasyWriter II and you can automatically correct your spelling at the stroke of a key. With the Webster's medical or legal dictionary supplement, nothing can escape unnoticed. Or uncorrected.

...AND TO GET HELP.
EasyWriter II is supported by a toll-free subscription PhoneSupport.™ Genuine human beings answer your questions in clear, easy-to-understand terms.

...AND EASY TO BUY.
Ask for a demonstration of EasyWriter II at your nearest computer dealer. Compare EasyWriter II to any competitive wordprocessing system and be sure to ask these questions:

1. Does it underline and boldface on screen?
2. Is what you see on the screen what you get in your printer?
3. Does it have a family of compatible, interactive software behind it?

Then you'll understand what Easy really means.



EasyWriter II
EasySpeller II
EasyFiler
EasyPlanner

EasyWriter™
EasySpeller™

EasyBusiness Systems™
General Ledger and
Financial Reporter
Accounts Receivable
Accounts Payable
Order Entry
Inventory Control Sales Analysis

Information Unlimited Software, Inc.
2401 Marinship Way, Sausalito, CA 94965, (415) 331-6700

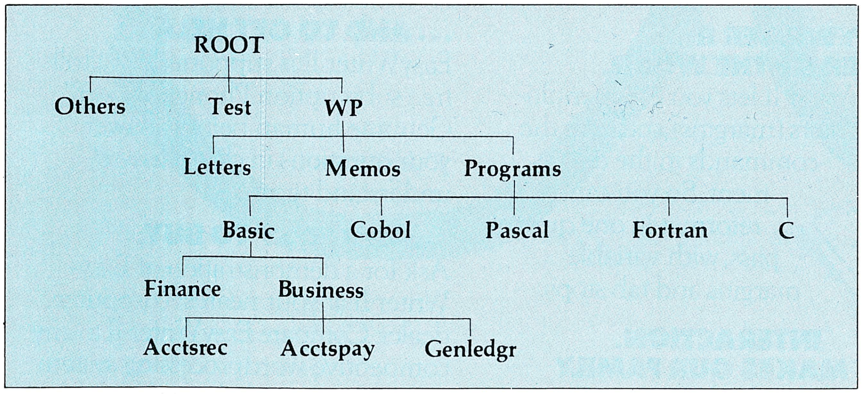
EasyFamily
MAKE IT EASY ON YOURSELF.

SYSTEM NOTEBOOK

by Alan Boyd

This month we'll wrap up our discussion of tree-structured directories and then take a look at some of the changes that version 2.0 has brought to our old familiar DOS commands. So far, we've constructed a not-very-complex tree-structured directory and played around with it in some fairly simple ways. In doing so, you may have realized just how easy it could be to get lost in a complex tree structure.

DOS offers a new command to help us find our way around complex directory forests. The *tree* command is an external command that creates a map of a hierarchical directory structure. To illustrate the tree command, we'll use it with a somewhat more complex version of the directory structure we created last month. A diagram of our overgrown tree looks like this:



Given this structure, the longest path we can traverse is from the root to one of the three directories under \WP\Programs\Basic\Business\dirname, five levels below the root directory. Applied to such a structure, the *tree* command can produce a report that supplies all of the information necessary to reconstruct this diagram. For example, with a DOS disk in drive A and a disk with the above structure on it in drive B, the tree command would produce the following report:

```
A:TREE B:
DIRECTORY PATH LISTING FOR VOLUME ???????????
Path: \WP
Sub-directories:    LETTERS
                    MEMOS
                    PROGRAMS
Path: \WP\LETTERS
Sub-directories:    None
Path: \WP\MEMOS
Sub-directories:    None
Path: \WP\PROGRAMS
Sub-directories:    BASIC
                    COBOL
                    PASCAL
                    FORTRAN
                    C
Path: \WP\PROGRAMS\BASIC
Sub-directories:    BUSINESS
                    FINANCE
Path: \WP\PROGRAMS\BASIC\BUSINESS
Sub-directories:    ACCTSREC
                    ACCTSPAY
```

The report is fairly long, because of the complexity of the structure to which it is being applied.

There is one switch that can be applied to the *tree* command—the /F, or *files* switch. When this option is exercised, *tree* will list, in addition to the standard directory path information, all the files in each directory. Taking our sample directory structure, when the command *tree/f* processed the \ WP\Programs directory, it would output

```
Path: \WP\PROGRAMS
Sub-directories:          BASIC
                          COBOL
                          PASCAL
                          FORTRAN
                          C

Files:                    CODE1     .SRC
                          CODE2     .SRC
                          CODE3     .SRC
                          CODE4     .SRC
                          MENU      .SRC
```

For anyone constructing a complex hierarchical directory on a high-capacity hard disk, it's a good idea to run the *tree* command at regular intervals, preferably with the printer turned on (control-P) so that a hard copy can be created. If you ever forget which directory a file is stored in, or the pathname required to access a file, this listing could prove quite valuable.

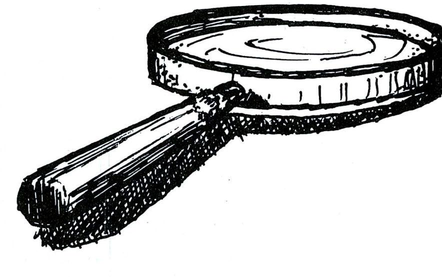
Now that we know how to construct a complex directory structure, let's destroy one. DOS 2.0 has a command that lets us do that fairly easily: *rmdir*, meaning remove a directory. *Rmdir* is an internal DOS command; like its cousins *chdir* and *mkdir*, it also has a short form, *rd*.

There is one very important point to keep in mind when trying to delete directories: *rmdir* will not allow you to remove a directory that contains any entries, whether they are subdirectories or files. That means that before a directory can be removed, it must be at the end of the path and must not contain any files. Given the alarming ease with which data can be erased, this approach is reassuring. DOS will abort any attempt to erase a directory with files or subdirectories in it and will issue the message

```
Invalid path, not directory,
or directory not empty
```

Like the *mkdir* command, *rmdir* will accept either relative or absolute pathnames.

If you're looking for productivity from your IBM, you're looking in the wrong place.



Your computer reads disks, not paper.

This magazine may be very interesting to you, but it doesn't mean a thing to your computer . . . because it's in a form your machine can't understand.

So when you see that interesting routine or program, you've got two choices: forget it, or sit there and type it in. If you've ever been through that frustrating, error-prone process, you know why so much good information never gets used.

At MENTOR Computer Services, we think paper is fundamentally the wrong medium to deliver information for your IBM-PC. That's why we created MENTOR magazine. It comes on disk, so you have the information where it really counts: inside your machine.

But that's just the first step. To get real productivity, the power that's latent in your micro has to be tapped by effective software.

That's why you bought some of the best programs you could find . . . like WordStar,† Visicalc,†† 1-2-3 .†††

Consider this, though. Those programs are really languages — better ways to talk to your machine. Give those programs the right instructions, and your PC will do tasks you never thought possible!

We feel that's the real key to productivity: providing the information that unlocks the potential of the software you've invested in.

That's why a large part of each issue consists of programs, procedures, and routines that can be used directly by the important software packages. Experts in every major aspect of computer operation — from hardware to business — will provide you with information that you can copy from the disk, and use right then and there!

MENTOR will enable software producers to furnish you with usable information on their products—applications, enhancements and updates that come right from the source. Selected issues will also include demo versions of major software packages. That way you won't have to rely on someone else's opinion — you can watch that software in action right on your own machine.

The cost? Just $19.97 per issue. If you subscribe now, you'll receive the first six issues for only $99.

Become a charter subscriber to MENTOR, by filling in the coupon, or calling our toll free number.

Call TOLL FREE 1-800-227-3900.
In California, 1-800-632-2122.

Mail to: MENTOR
533 Sutter St., Suite 914
San Francisco, CA 94102

☐ Enroll me as a charter subscriber. I've enclosed $99 for the first six issues.

☐ Send me the first issue. I've enclosed $19.97

I'll pay by

☐ VISA / MasterCard ☐ Check / Money Order

Name ______________________
Company ______________________
Address ______________________
City/St. ______________ Zip ________
Card # ______________ Exp ________
Signature ______________________

MENTOR®*

. . . the magazine on disk

---

† WordStar is a trademark of Micropro Corp.

†† Visicalc is a trademark of Visicorp.

††† 1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus Development Corp.

* registered trademark of MENTOR Computer Services

The Pizza Program

Have you ever come home and wondered, "What are we having for dinner?" Now there's a great time saver for anyone who cooks or shops at the grocery store. Announcing the first dinner menu planning system.

ENDS HO-HUM DINNERS

Are you tired of the same old thing for dinner? Would you like more variety in your evening meal? Is there something you'd rather have but don't get very often? The Pizza Program is designed just for you. It's a delightful new software package designed to end the dinner-blahs with computer generated menus. Here is how it works.

You review what you like from the pre-selected food groups in the system. Delete any foods you don't enjoy. Add anything new at any time. Then decide how often you like to eat certain items. For example. Don't like liver? Then eliminate it with a few simple keystrokes. Or, you can plan for it as seldom as once every 99 weeks or as often as daily.

Want to go out to your favorite restaurant? Enter the restaurant's name as a "Main Course." Now your computer will automatically remind you to go out to eat—and as often as you select. It will delete all other items from that meal except the name of the restaurant.

AUTOMATIC SHOPPING LIST

You get a new menu each week or for just a few days if you want. And, it generates a detailed shopping list, automatically. It can arrange each item on the list in sequence according to the aisles at your favorite store. Studies show a shopping list will discourage impulse buying and save you money.

Also, it generates a per serving calorie counter. This is easy to delete anytime you are not in a diet mood or want to celebrate for any reason. You never count calories unless you want to.

RANDOMLY DELICIOUS

Say goodby to boring meals. Your computer will remember variety is the spice of life. This system makes eating at home a pleasure again. Each menu is randomly generated from major food groups according to the specific criteria you select. The system is easy to learn and easy to operate. Yet it is a sophisticated piece of software which will prevent menu mix-ups.

The Pizza Program is not a recipe file. Instead, it is a complete menu planning system you customize to fit your tastes and budget. It's a practical and easy way to organize your meal planning. You'll appreciate it day after day, week after week. People across the country are finding it a super idea—a great companion to any kitchen.

TRY IT FOR 30 DAYS WITHOUT RISK

You can try it with no obligation. Our home trial lets you actually use The Pizza Program for a full 30 days before you decide to keep it. Watch the fun and convenience it creates. Enjoy better meals and see how much time it saves. If you are not satisfied for an reason, return it within 1 month for a prompt and courteous refund. Your investment is just $34.50 plus $2.00 for shipping and handling. (California residents add 6½% sales tax.) A full 40 pages of instructions are included. And, it will be shipped promptly by first class mail.

OUT OF THE RUT

One housewife's reaction to this program is typical. She wrote, "Before using your system I found myself getting into a rut of serving the same things over and over. The Pizza Program has changed all of this for me. We now have a wider variety of dinners and best of all I don't have to decide what they will be. If this was all it did, I'd be thrilled. But it isn't. The shopping list I receive along with my menus has been such a time saver. I quickly run through it and delete anything I feel I don't need and add something I might. I would have a hard time going back to doing my menus by hand."

This system is available for both the IBM PC and the Apple II Plus* or IIe. (A printer is optional). We urge you to take advantage of our no-risk, 30 day home trial offer. To order call toll free and use your VISA or MasterCard. Or, send a check to the address below. There's no obligation. Order today.

ORDER TOLL FREE
(24/hrs/day)
800-453-4000
(In Utah call **1-800-662-8666**)

Gourmet Software
671 Eden Avenue
San Jose, CA 95117

*Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

Take care in the design of your directory structures and you won't have to use this command very often. There is one time when the use of *rmdir* is almost unavoidable, however: Because the *rename* command cannot be applied to directories, you will have to copy your old directory structure into a structure with your new name, and then use *rmdir* on the old structure. That's a rather drastic measure, but it gets the job done while protecting the integrity of your directory structures.

In addition to complexity, a drawback to adding subdirectories is the overhead each new one exacts. A quick experiment on a blank disk will show that when you create a new directory DOS extracts 512 bytes from the space available on disk. While that doesn't amount to much on a hard disk, a complex directory structure on a floppy can easily eat up a significant amount of space.

Keeping in mind both the advantages and disadvantages of tree-structured directories, some general rules for their wise use can be divined. First, use them only when you're working with a large hard disk; they really don't offer that many advantages on low-capacity floppies. Second, to guarantee that you won't get lost in the limbs—or, worse, "lose" whole directories and their associated files—restrict the tree structure to as few hierarchical levels as possible. Third, keep the names of directories short; you're going to be typing them a lot.

New, Improved Format. Now that we've climbed around tree-structured directories, let's take a look at the changes to our old familiar DOS commands; several of these old standbys have been radically enhanced. The first command we'll look at is *format*.

While the function of *format* in DOS 2.0 remains the same—to configure blank disks for use with DOS—several new options have been added. As you probably know, the general form of the command is

FORMAT D:[switches]

where *D:* represents the drive containing the disk to be formatted (the target disk), and *[switches]* specifies which, if any, of the available options are selected. The changes to *format* under version 2.0 are to be found in the plethora of new switches that have been added.

As with DOS 1.1, the switch */1* requests the creation of a single-sided disk, even though the drive may be double-sided. Without this switch, DOS takes its cue from the type of drive: If the drive has double-sided capabilities, the disk will be formatted double-sided. DOS 2.0 adds a switch—the */8* switch—that looks similar but performs a very different function. This switch tells DOS to format the target disk with eight sectors per track—that is, format the disk to be compatible with earlier versions of DOS. As you may remember, version 2.0 has the very pleasant capability of storing 12 percent more data on a disk than could earlier incarnations. It does this by creating nine sectors on a track, one more than earlier versions of DOS allowed.

When DOS reads or writes a disk, it automatically determines whether that disk has eight or nine sectors per track. This impacts the user as little as possible, and overcomes many of the headaches that frequently arise from having a variety of disk formats in a single-user environment. Most of the time, you don't need to worry about whether a disk was formatted with eight or nine sectors per track. However, for those times when it may be necessary to write a disk with only eight sectors per track—creating a disk that will be sent to someone who may not yet be running version 2.0, for example—formatting the disk with the */8* option will guarantee compatibility.

Another new option in the *format* command is the */B* switch. This will primarily be used by software vendors to guarantee that the user will be able to write on the disk whatever version of DOS he or she is running. The */B* switch has two effects: The target disk is formatted with eight sectors per track, and several sectors are marked as used in the File Allocation Table. The sectors marked

How to make dBase II™ work magic. It's a snap with Autocode.™

IBM/PC VERSION NOW IN STOCK

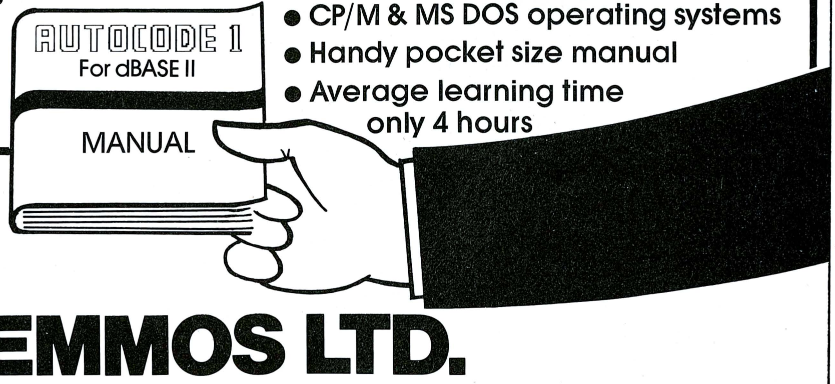
STEMMOS
AUTOCODE 1
For dBASE II™
IBM®
PC/DOS

Finally, the first practical application of artificial intelligence in personal computer software.

Autocode 1 is a powerful program generator for dBASE II. No prior knowledge of programming required.

IBM is a registered trade mark of International Business Machines, Inc.

- **Automatic menus & sub menus**
- **Automatic data entry screens**
- **Automatic data entry routines**
- **String, numeric, date & calculated fields**
- **Automatic multiple reports**
- **Automatic programs in dBASE II code with interactive screens**
- **No prior knowledge of dBASE II required**
- **CP/M & MS DOS operating systems**
- **Handy pocket size manual**
- **Average learning time only 4 hours**



ONLY $200.

STEMMOS LTD.

666 Howard Street, San Francisco, CA 94105

Just send the following to address above today.

- Your diskette format & hardware
- How many Autocodes you want at $200 each*
- Your name & complete address
- A check or money order.

MasterCard VISA

Credit card buyers may substitute their card number and expiration date for the check. Or call us toll free and save the trip to the mail box.

*In CA add 6% sales tax.

ORDER TOLL FREE 800-227-1617 (Ext. 417)
IN CA CALL 800-772-3545 (Ext. 417)

U.S. Address: 666 Howard St., San Francisco CA 94105
Tel: (415) 777-3800

U.K. Address: 344 Kensington High Street, London W14
Tel: 01 602 6242

Dealer inquiries invited.

dBASE II™ Ashton Tate

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines.

Autocode 1™ Stemmos Ltd.

used are the ones that will normally contain the DOS system files Ibmbio.com and Ibmdos.com.

As in previous DOS versions, the */S* switch can be used to create a disk with DOS on it; the operation of the *format* command when used in conjunction with the */S* switch has not changed.

A welcome addition to the *format* family is the */V* switch, which allows a volume name to be written on the disk. A volume name is a label specified by the user; DOS writes the name into a special location on the disk. The volume name is then displayed during directory and *chkdsk* commands; alternatively, the new command *vol* can be used to display the volume name.

The procedure to assign a volume label is straightforward:

```
A>FORMAT B:/V
```

When DOS has finished formatting the disk, it will prompt

```
Volume label (11 characters, ENTER for none)?
```

In addition to the standard set of characters that are legal for filenames, the space character may be included in a volume name. As with filenames, all characters will be converted to upper case when they're written to disk. The assigned volume name will appear at the top of all directory hierarchy. In addition to providing a backup to the paper label, storing the volume name on the disk itself allows applications programs to verify that they are indeed working with the right disk. Formatting hard disks is done exactly the same way as formatting a floppy.

As with all of the other DOS commands that use switches, *format* can be used with multiple switches. For example, to create a disk with DOS on it and assign it a volume name, execute the command

```
A>FORMAT B:/S/V
```

Notice that there are some combinations of switches that are contradictory and therefore illegal. For example, you can't use the */B* switch (which says, "Reserve room for DOS, but don't write it") in conjunction with the */S* switch (which says, "Write it"). And while not mutually contradictory, the */V* and */B* switches cannot be combined.

An Intelligent Diskcopy. The new disk format creates a potential problem for *diskcopy*. The problem arises if you attempt to copy a disk formatted with nine sectors per track to a target disk formatted with eight sectors per track. Since the source disk could contain more data than the target disk can hold, issuing such a command could be asking for the impossible. Likewise, it's impossible to *diskcopy* a double-sided source onto a single-sided target. *Diskcopy* neatly sidesteps this problem by reformatting the target disk to the specifications of the source disk when it detects a difference; this cures any incompatibility problems that could arise.

As a consequence, you don't have to format a target disk before doing a *diskcopy*. To show that the target disk is either not formatted or is formatted differently from the source disk, *diskcopy*, under both versions 1.1 and 2.0, displays the message

```
Formatting while copying
```

as well as a message detailing how many sides and sectors per track it has found on the source disk.

A More Conscientious Chkdsk. A major beneficiary of the changeover to version 2.0 is *chkdsk*. This harder-working command, which now has two optional switches, takes the form

```
A>CHKDSK d:filename F/V
```

When a filename is specified, *chkdsk* now reports on the distribution of the files on the disk (after it generates its usual report). The report might look something like this:

```
A>chkdsk b:*.*
      179712 bytes total disk space
      10752 bytes in two user files
      168960 bytes available on disk
      131072 bytes total memory
      106496 bytes free
All specified files(s) are contiguous.
```

The report that all the files are contiguous means that, for each file, all sectors are adjacent—that is, the file has not become fragmented and spread around the disk. Fragmentation can occur, for example, if a short file located somewhere in the middle of the disk is deleted and then a long file is written to the disk. Because DOS allocates the earliest available disk space, the first portion of the new long file is written in the middle of the disk, where the old short file had been. The remainder of the new long file is written at the end of the disk. While this example illustrates a file fragmented into only two chunks, you can well imagine how a lot of interspersed erasing and writing could lead to very fragmented files.

Noncontiguous files are not bad or dangerous; they merely slow down reading and writing procedures, since they cannot be read from or written to as one large block. You probably know when a file is badly fragmented; the disk drive sounds more like a buzz saw than usual. That noise is caused by the movement of the head back and forth to different tracks. You can confirm your suspicions by requesting a *chkdsk* on the file; your answer might look something like this:

```
B:\ARTICLE.BAK
   Contains 5 noncontiguous blocks.
```

If the *chkdsk* command reports many noncontiguous files, you can clean it up by copying all the files on the disk to a new disk (*copy *.**; don't forget to copy each directory). The *copy* command cleans up fragmented files by writing them to contiguous blocks on the target disk.

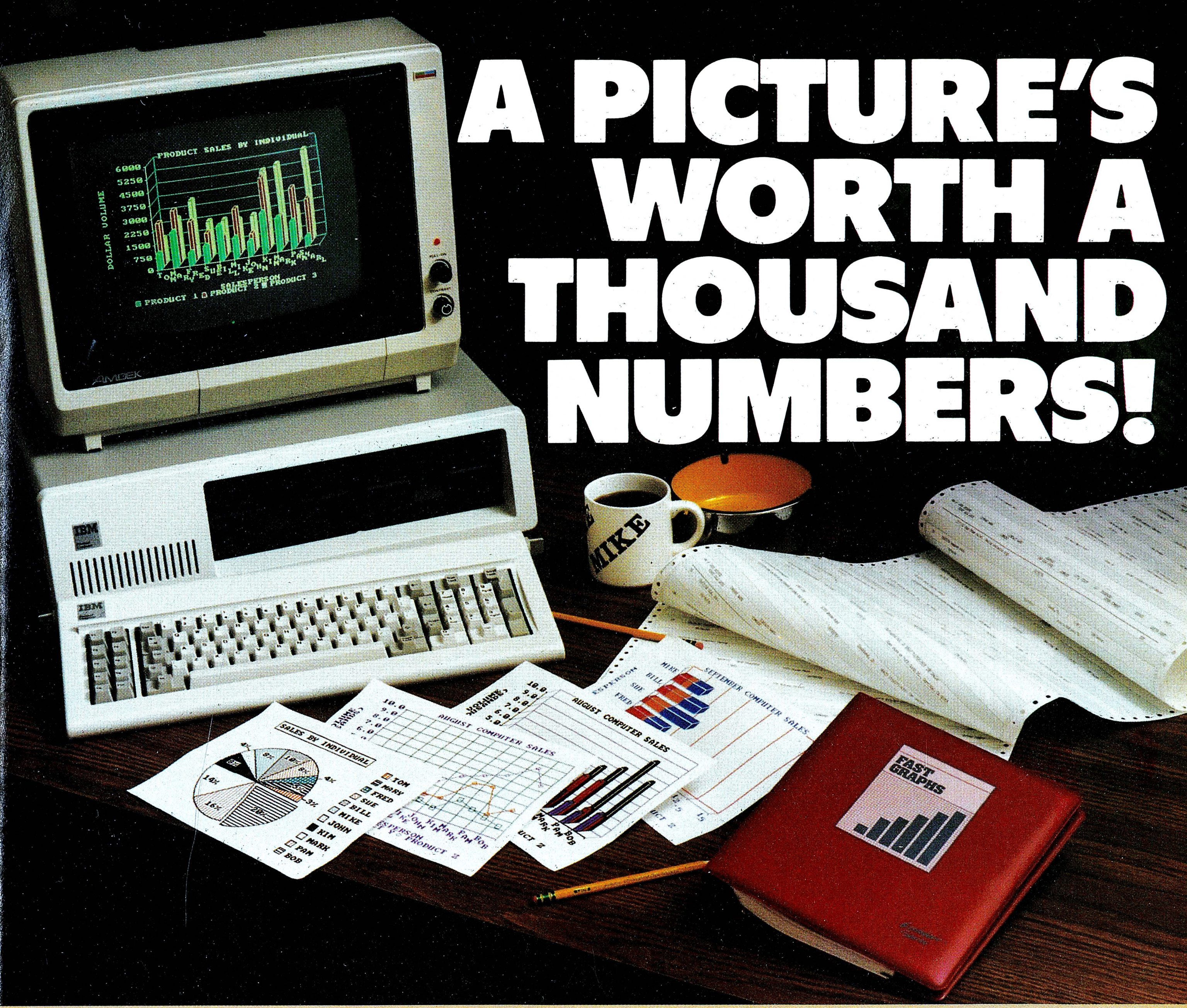
Incidentally, it's important to note that when you're using hierarchical directories, any command that contains a wildcard character (* or ?) operates only on the currently logged directory (unless, of course, you've included a specific pathname). Files stored in a directory other than the current one will be ignored.

Another major change to *chkdsk* becomes apparent when the command unearths errors in the File Allocation Table: *Chkdsk* reports the error but no longer automatically corrects it, as it did under previous DOS versions. Instead, the */F* switch (for *fix*) must be set to tell *chkdsk* to correct any errors it finds. The switch was added presumably because some users had found that strange or unusual file structures could be damaged by indiscriminate use of the old *chkdsk*.

The other new *chkdsk* switch, */V*, invokes a version of the command that reports additional information, including more detailed error data and a directory. The standard procedure for using the new *chkdsk* is as follows: First run the command with no switches. If errors in the file are found, rerun the command with the */V* switch for more complete error reporting. Finally, if you determine that the errors could be destructive (for example, if you have two files sharing a common block in the File Allocation Table), rerun *chkdsk* with the */F* switch to clean up the errors.

If *chkdsk*, running with the */F* switch, finds any lost clusters (that is, clusters that are marked as used in the File Allocation Table but that aren't associated with any files), you may instruct the command to bundle them, thereby creating a group of standard files from the lost clusters. These files will be placed in the root directory and will be given the special names Filexxxx.chk, where xxxx represents a sequential number between 0000 and 9999. By putting the clusters into special files, you may check their contents via standard commands, such as *type*, to see if they contain any valuable information. If the contents are junk, you can free the clusters simply by deleting the files.

Two very powerful new features of DOS 2.0 are I/O redirection and piping. Piping, which is essentially an extension of I/O redirection, allows you to transfer the output of a command either to a file or to another command. The latter option is especially useful for commands like *chkdsk* or *dir*. Piping is both an elegant and powerful tool—as we shall see next month. ▲


A PICTURE'S WORTH A THOUSAND NUMBERS!
PRODUCT SALES BY INDIVIDUAL
DOLLAR VOLUME
6000
5250
4500
3750
3000
2250
1500
750
0
SALESPERSON
PRODUCT 1
PRODUCT 2
PRODUCT 3
AMDEK
IBM
MIKE
SALES BY INDIVIDUAL
AUGUST COMPUTER SALES
SEPTEMBER COMPUTER SALES
FAST GRAPHS

The IBM Personal Computer and Printed Reports

Everyone knows that the IBM Personal Computer does a terrific job of storing and manipulating facts and figures. Unfortunately, drawing conclusions from this information requires printed reports often running into the thousands of numbers. Now, however, you can use **FAST GRAPHS**™ to replace all those numbers with one simple to understand, pleasing to the eye, graphic report.

FAST GRAPHS™ and the "Graphic Report

FAST GRAPHS™ is the most recent addition to Innovative Software's **EXECUTIVE SERIES.**™ It converts the numbers from Visicalc® DIF™ files, manual entry, or our **EXECUTIVE SERIES**™ packages, including **T.I.M. III**® into "graphic reports". Graphic reports may be viewed on your color monitor or sent to any popular graphics printer or plotter. A graphic report can have scatter or line charts, pie charts, and two or three-dimensional bar charts, etc., all of which may be customized by the full graphic editor. This same editor may also be used to paint and draw characters or shapes to be overlayed on a graph.

Your Data Never Looked So Good

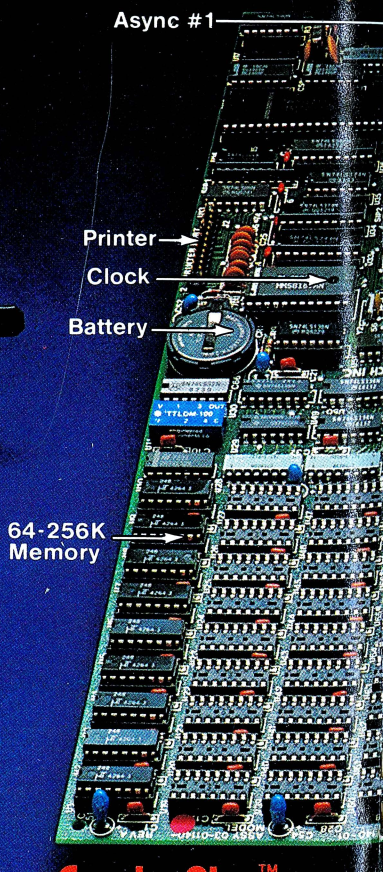
If your meetings seem to be "bored meetings" rather than Board Meetings, then **FAST GRAPHS**™ is for you. **FAST GRAPHS**™ turns dull, boring, printed reports into exciting, colorful "graphic reports". Visit your local IBM dealer today for more information about **FAST GRAPHS**™ and our other products. Or call us directly. Either way, you'll be drawing colorful conclusions in no time.

Innovative Software®

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089
Telex: 209542

AST Quality Add-On P

Communications



Advanced Comm. Card (CC-232)

- Programmable to communicate in Bisync, SDLC, HDLC, and Async protocols.
- Two Ports of RS 232

AST products are available from Computerland, Entré, ComputerMart and selected dealers worldwide. Call factory if your dealer does not have the AST products you want.

CC-332 For use with AST-3780

- An IBM 2780/3780 RJE Emulator
- Supports Bisync point-to-point communications protocol
- Allows file transfer between Host & IBM PC
- Ideal for IBM **System 34, 38, 4300**

AST-SNA

- Emulates IBM 3274 Model 51C Control Unit
- Emulates 3278 Display Station
- Emulates 3278 Type Printer
- Optional 3770 Emulation
- Cluster Controller Operation
- Protocol Converter Support

ComboPlus™

Standard Features:

- 64K-256K Memory
- One Battery Backed-up Clock
- One IBM Compatible Async Port
- One IBM Compatible Printer Port
- SuperDrive™
- SuperSpool™
- From $395

IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines. PCnet® is the registered trademark of Orchid Technology. AST-3780 is developed by Wilmot Systems Inc. and AST Research In

roducts for IBM® PC/XT

Multifunction Cards

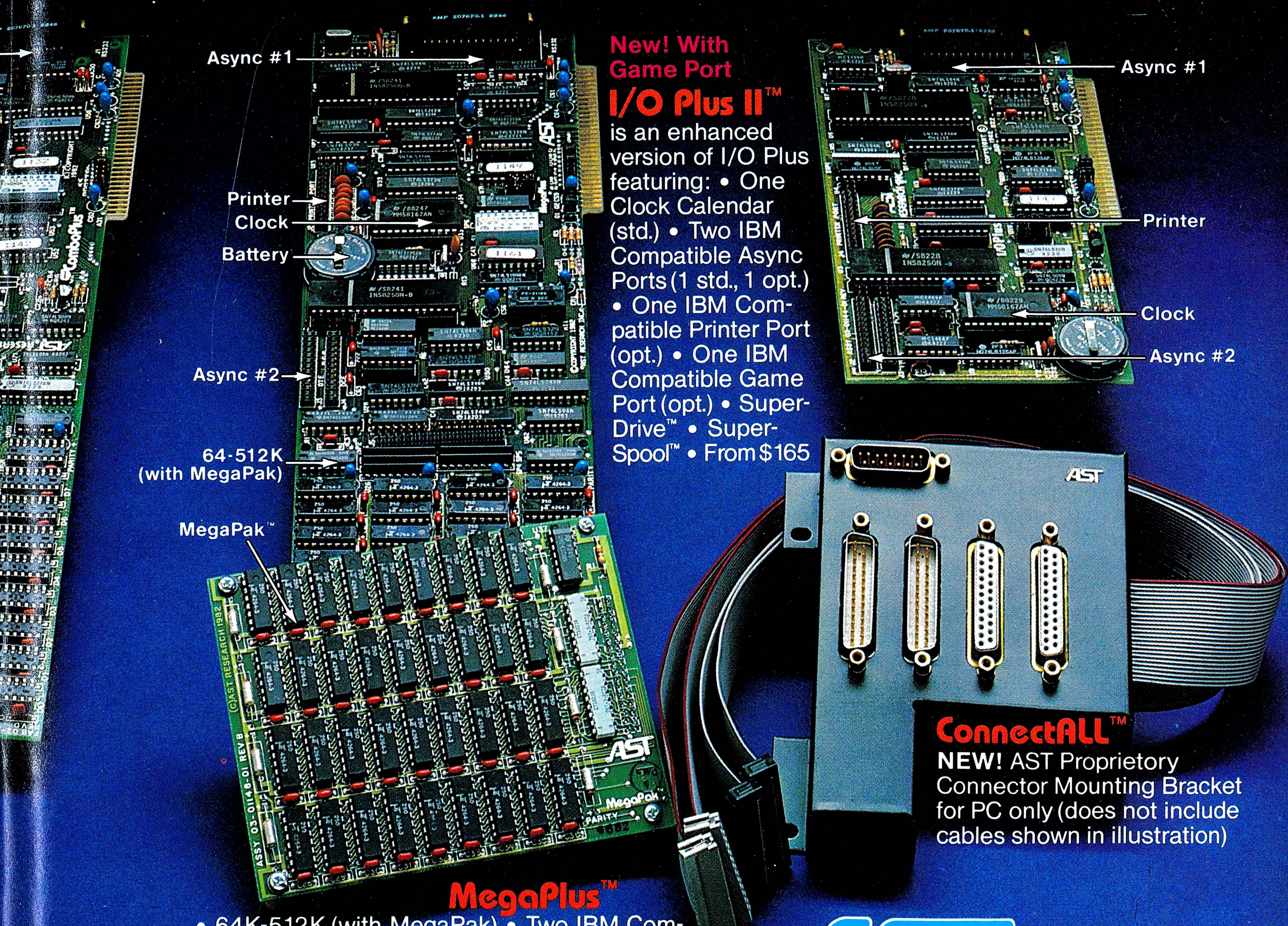
NOW! New Product Highlight

AST-5251 – An interactive IBM 5251 Model 12 remote work station emulator using PC

PCnet® – A Local Area Network for IBM PC featuring disk sharing, file locking, printer sharing and supports up to 64,000 PCs. One M bit CSMA/CD technology using 75 ohm CATV Cable. Hundreds of PCnets have been installed in IBM PCs.

PlusModem™ – Integrated Direct Connect 212, 1200 band auto-dial modem, clock, game port, printer port and second Async port.

Call Factory For Details



New! With Game Port

I/O Plus II™ is an enhanced version of I/O Plus featuring: • One Clock Calendar (std.) • Two IBM Compatible Async Ports (1 std., 1 opt.) • One IBM Compatible Printer Port (opt.) • One IBM Compatible Game Port (opt.) • SuperDrive™ • SuperSpool™ • From $165

ConnectALL™
NEW! AST Proprietory Connector Mounting Bracket for PC only (does not include cables shown in illustration)

MegaPlus™
• 64K-512K (with MegaPak) • Two IBM Compatible Async Ports (1 std., 1 opt.) • One IBM Parallel Printer Port (opt.) • One Battery Backed-up Clock Calendar (std.) • SuperDrive™ (std.) • SuperSpool™ (std.) • Ideal for Concurrent CP/M, MBA, VISI Series software packages.

AST RESEARCH INC.
Dealer Inquiries Welcome

2372 Morse Avenue
Irvine, Calif. 92714
(714) 540-1333

THE PROFIT PLOT

by Jack Grushcow

This month we'll delve into some of the more complex aspects of spreadsheet use. We'll unravel the (apparent) mysteries of the *Lookup* and *Choose* functions. Then, next month, we'll get into the logical functions—*If*, *And*, *Not*, and *Or*. Once we've covered that ground, we'll use these advanced functions to construct a detailed employee payroll spreadsheet.

We'll start with Lookup. The purpose of this function is to automate the selection of an appropriate value from a list of values.

The general form of the Lookup function is:

LOOKUP(INDEX,RANGE)

VisiCalc users, of course, must add an "at" sign (@) before the function name (as in *@Lookup*).

Index and *range* are said to be the arguments of the function; the term argument here means a value (it may be a simple number, a formula, or even a range of cells) upon which a command or function is to be carried out.

The Lookup function behaves a bit like a person searching for a book in a library. In a library, you first go to the card catalog and find the number of the book you want; then you use that number as an index, or selector, to help you pick the appropriate book off the shelf. Lookup goes through these same two steps. First it evaluates the index specified in the Lookup formula (the first argument of the formula), then it uses that value to scan through the range of cells specified as the formula's second argument.

But then Lookup does something else. When it matches a value in the range to the value specified as the index, it returns *not* the matched value (as you might expect), but the value next door. If the range is a row, the Lookup function returns the value directly below whichever cell in the range matches the index; if the range is a column, Lookup returns the value in the cell directly to the right of the match.

Let's make this a little more concrete. Suppose you sell a product that has a discount structure based on size of order. If the discount is directly proportional to the sales price, you don't need Lookup; you can just calculate the discount as a percentage of the sales price. In the more common situation, however, where the discount isn't directly proportional to the sales price, Lookup can automatically select the correct discount for any sales price.

Let's assume the discount table looks like this:

Value of order	Discount
$100-499	**2%**
$500-999	**3%**
$1,000-4,999	**4%**
over $5,000	**5%**

To calculate the cost of an order we need some way to select the applicable discount. Examine the spreadsheet in figure 1.

We'll use cell B1 for the list price of the order; B2 will hold the correct discount, based on the cost of the order; and B3 will calculate the appropriately discounted price of the order. Let's see how to use Lookup so that the correct discount is displayed at B2.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Cost						
2	Discount						
3	Customer net						
4							
5							
6	Cost		0	100	500	1000	5000
7	Discount		0	2	3	4	5

Figure 1.

Rows 6 and 7 hold the lookup table. Row 6 holds the range that Lookup will scan through for a match, and line 7 holds the information that Lookup will return when it finds a match. Note that the values in row 6 are arranged in ascending order. This is important.

What we want Lookup to do is compare the value held at B1 against the values in row 6; when it finds a match in row 6, we want it to return the value in row 7 that lies directly below the matching cell.

In order for this procedure to be of any use to us, we need to have the Lookup function take a rather broad interpretation of the concept *match*. And, fortunately, that's just what it does.

Lookup scans through row 6, looking for a value there that exactly matches the value at B1. If it finds such an exact match, it stops, goes straight down to row 7, and returns the value it finds directly below the matching cell. If it finds no exact match in row 6, it continues scanning until it encounters a value greater than that held at B1. Then it backs up one cell in row 6, drops down to row 7, and returns the value it finds there in row 7.

Okay, now let's plug the Lookup formula into our spreadsheet. That done, you can experiment by putting various values into B1 and seeing what kind of results you get in B2 and B3. Figure 2 shows the spreadsheet complete with Lookup formula.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Cost						
2	Discount	@LOOKUP(B1,C6...G6)/100					
3	Customer net	+B1*(1−B2)					
4							
5							
6	List price		0	100	500	1000	5000
7	Discount		0	2	3	4	5

Figure 2.

Lookup uses B1 as an index into the range C6 to G6 and then grabs a discount figure from row 7. Then it converts the discount figure to a percentage by dividing by 100. Finally, to get the selling price of the order, the formula at B3 takes the result of B2's labor and applies it to the list price entered at B1.

Figure 3 is a list of what the Lookup formula stored at B2 will return based on various (arbitrary) entries at B1.

B1: List price	50	250	99	1500	6000	500
B2: Discount	0	.02	0	.04	.05	.03
B3: Customer net	50	245	99	1440	5700	485

Figure 3.

In the example of the fifty-unit order, Lookup examines the first value in row 6. It sees a 0. Since zero doesn't match or exceed 50, Lookup goes on to the next value in the range. Here it finds the number 100. Since 100 is greater than 50, Lookup backs up one number in the index range—to the 0. Then it selects 0—the discount percentage below the 0 in the index range. A discount of zero, of course, means no difference between list price and customer net.

In the next example, Lookup scans the index for a number equal to or greater than 250. It skips the 0 and 100 and stops at 500. Then it selects the number 2 from the discount list.

Imagine the list-price list in row 6 as a series of barriers, each trying to trap the index. A specific order cost can challenge the next barrier only by being greater than the previous one. When the index finally encounters a barrier it can't cross, it selects the answer beneath the last barrier successfully challenged.

This game of electronic hurdles has several rules. First, if the index is less than the first item in the hurdle range, Lookup returns NA. Being blocked by the first barrier means having no value to reach back for. Our would-be hurdler has had a pretrial washout.

Second, an actual match results in the selection of the value directly beneath the matching hurdle.

Third, if the index is larger than any value in the hurdle list, the value below the last value in the list is returned.

Now we can get back to how our lookup table has been constructed, which is critical to the successful use of the function. You must learn to translate from a list you use in real life to a list Lookup can use.

To examine how we went from the "human-readable" discount list to the one Lookup could use, let's go back to our initial discount table. Our first category is for orders of between $100 and $499.

Since we'll have orders of less than $100, our first barrier must catch them. If we forget this category and start our list with the value 100, we'll have problems. An order of $35, for example, would be less than the first value in the list, and would cause Lookup to return an NA; the NA would get propagated into any cell whose formula referred to B2, so our bottom line—our selling price—would also turn out to be NA.

So, we have to supply a range that will allow Lookup to return a zero discount for orders ranging up to $99, since these will not qualify for a discount.

We set the first part of our lookup table thus:

Cost	0	100
Discount	0	2

Remember, each time an index is compared to a value in the

Computer Case Company

WE MAKE A GREAT CASE FOR YOUR IBM.

CALL TOLL FREE: (800) 848-7548

IB501

One size does not fit all. Our cases are designed for specific hardware configurations. When you put your computer in our case, it fits hand-in-glove. Once your equipment is safely inside the attache-style carrying case, it never has to be taken out again. To operate, simply remove the lid and connect the power. To store your computer, disconnect the power, enclose your disks, working papers, and manuals in the compartments provided, and attach the lid. It's as easy as that.

• AP106	Amdek Color I, II or III Monitor	119
• P401	Paper Tiger Printer (400/445/460)	99
• P402	Centronics 730/737 & Radio Shack Printer	89
• P403	Epson MX70 or MX80, Microline 82A Printer or Color Computer	89
• P404	Epson MX100 Printer	99
• P405	IDS 560 or Prism 132 Printer	109
• P406	C. Itoh Starwriter/Printmaster F-10 Printer	119
• P407	Okidata Microline 83A or 84 Printer	99
• P408	C. Itoh Prowriter 2 Printer	99
• P409	C. Itoh Prowriter (Apple Dot Matrix) or NEC PC8023 Printer	89
• IB501	IBM Personal Computer with Keyboard	129
• IB502	IBM Monochrome Monitor	99
• CC50	Case Cart	79
• CC80	Matching Attache Case (5")	85
• CC90	Matching Attache Case (3")	75
• CC91	Matching Accessories Case (5¼" Diskettes, Paper, etc.)	95
• CC92	5.25" Diskette Case (Holds 75 Diskettes)	49

MasterCard VISA

Computer Case Company, 5650 Indian Mound Court, Columbus, Ohio 43213 (614) 868-9464

lookup list it will bounce back from one that exceeds it. In our example, orders of less than $100 will bounce off the 100 barrier and cause a discount of 0 percent to be selected.

We erect our next barrier at the 500 mark, which will create a 2 percent discount for orders between $100 and $499. Now our lookup table appears as follows:

Cost	0	100	500
Discount	0	2	3

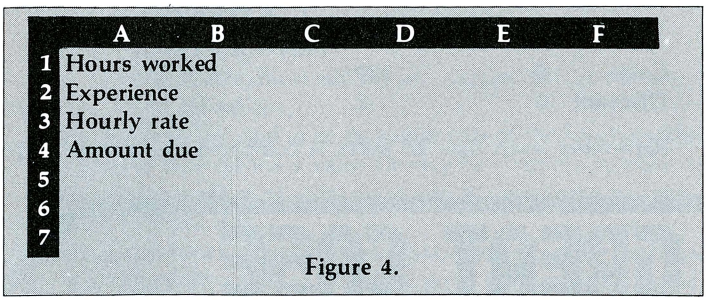
Now that we've established the pattern, you should be able to create the lookup table in the discount model.

For more practice, let's use Lookup in another example.

Many professional services bill clients on an hourly basis. Architectural and engineering firms, for example, use varying bill-out rates, which often depend on an employee's experience level. Suppose a company has a list of hourly billing rates such as these:

Years of experience	Hourly billing rate
1-2	18.50
3-5	24.00
6-8	35.00
9 or more	41.00

Try to complete the outlined spreadsheet in figure 4 on your own, adding the required formulas and lists.

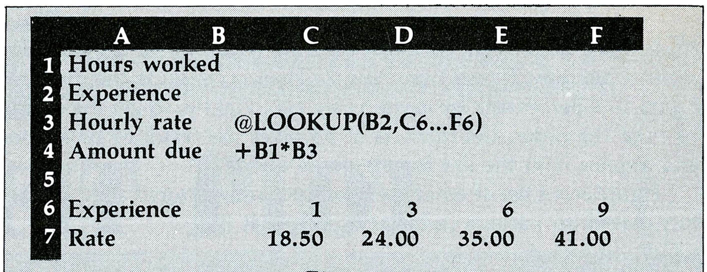


	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Hours worked					
2	Experience					
3	Hourly rate					
4	Amount due					
5						
6						
7						

Figure 4.

Assume that the hours worked will be entered at B1 and the experience at B2. You'll need to have Lookup scan a table to select the appropriate hourly wage.

One possible solution is shown in figure 5.

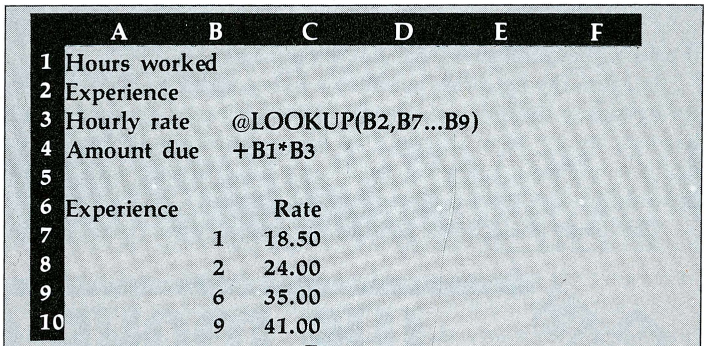


	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Hours worked					
2	Experience					
3	Hourly rate	@LOOKUP(B2,C6...F6)				
4	Amount due	+B1*B3				
5						
6	Experience		1	3	6	9
7	Rate		18.50	24.00	35.00	41.00

Figure 5.

The solution in figure 5 is one way to approach the billing application. An equally valid solution appears in figure 6; the only difference between the solutions shown in figures 5 and 6 is that the lookup table in figure 6 is in two columns instead of two rows. Lookup can scan columns as well as rows. The syntax for the function is the same; the function automatically adjusts by selecting values from the column to the right of the specified range.

Use either row- or column-oriented lookup tables in your spreadsheets, depending on which suits the structure of your model. It's up to you. Just be sure the ranges and data tables are correct.



	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Hours worked					
2	Experience					
3	Hourly rate	@LOOKUP(B2,B7...B9)				
4	Amount due	+B1*B3				
5						
6	Experience		Rate			
7		1	18.50			
8		2	24.00			
9		6	35.00			
10		9	41.00			

Figure 6.

Lotus's *1-2-3* uses a variation on the lookup theme. *1-2-3* has two lookup commands: @HLookup, which scans horizontal (row-oriented) lookup tables, and @VLookup, which scans vertical tables.

The general form of the commands is:

This could be the most comprehensive utilities package ever designed:

MASTER SERIES™ UTILITIES From the research team at PC TechniCorp.

GENERAL UTILITIES

BEEP—Sounds a user specified number of beeps at regular intervals; handy for alerting users in batch files.

ETIME—Provides a friendly display of time; measurement of elapsed time.

ETYPE—*(Extended TYPE)* Interactive display of text files; pause after user specified number of lines; scrolls or moves forward and backward through pages.

GPIP—*(General Peripheral Interchange Program)* Allows users to copy or append files using pipe command format.

HELP—Provides on-line help for all PC-DOS commands, user customizable and extensible ASCII help files, general purpose on line retrieval system.

PRINT—Prints files and performs complete printer control.

SORT—Sorts text and data files in any order.

(All accept DOS format wild card filename specifiers.)

DISK MANAGEMENT UTILITIES

DOPT—*(Disk OPTimize)* Compress entire disk or individual files into contiguous sectors; maximizes disk efficiency.

DVIEW—*(Disk VIEW)* Provides a visual representation of disk allocation for the entire disk or individual files; includes a file sector map.

(All accept DOS format wild card filename specifiers.)

FILE MANAGEMENT UTILITIES

EDIR—*(Extended DIRectory)* Displays all file information, including attributes, starting cluster, number of clusters, and total space requirements.

MDIR—*(Modify DIRectory)* Allows user to modify file attributes to either normal, system, or hidden; protects files from unauthorized access and accidental erasure.

SDIR—*(Sorted DIRectory)* Sorts directory by name, extension, or date; can write back sorted directory.

SERASE—*(Selective ERASE)* selective interactive batch erasing of files.

UNERASE—Recovers erased files; provides peace of mind concerning accidental erasure of important files.

SCREEN CONTROL UTILITIES

CLR—*(CLeaR)* Clears screen; sets cursor to top of screen.

COLORS—Allows user to set foreground and background colors at the DOS level.

CURSOR—Sets number and position of scan lines in the screen cursor.

REVERSE—Sets screen to reverse video or vice versa.

SWMON—*(SWitch MONitor)* Switch between monochrome and color adaptors.

Comprehensive on-line help for all utilities. Easy-to-use documentation. MASTER SERIES™ works with standard PC configuration and all single to quad density disk drives. Check, money order, MasterCard and Visa accepted.

Special Introductory Price $60 (reg. $80) until September 1, 1983

PC TechniCorp To order, call collect: (617) 431-7854
40 Grove Street, Wellesley, MA 02181

The Executive Secretary

- **Document editor**
- **Powerful printing program**
- **Flexible database**
- **Mail list merge for business letters**
- **Auto-outlining for reports**
- **Pre-printed forms manager**
- **Electronic mail**
- **25,000 word spelling checker**
- **Alphabetical indexer for books and theses**

INTEGRATED

RELIABLE

INTEGRATED means that all of the above is included in the $295 suggested retail price, a combination that would cost hundreds of dollars more—IF you could find a set of programs that would work together in the first place.

INTEGRATED means that every part of the package follows the same rules. There's no need to learn one set of keypresses for the editor and a separate set of rules for the database.

RELIABLE means that earlier versions of this software have been in the field for years on the Apple and other computers.

RELIABLE means that thousands of users have logged more than 1,000,000 hours of use on the Apple version.

RELIABLE means that we back you up after the sale with a hotline number printed right on the program disk. If your dealer doesn't know the answer, we do.

And yet this release of The Executive Secretary goes far beyond what the Apple version can do. Let's be specific:

THE EDITOR: It allows you to format as you type. You can do on-screen justification and alter left and right margins. The mark and move options let you arrange your work in multiple columns, if you desire. And Quickprint™ lets you alter your margins even further and produce finished copies immediately.

THE PRINTER: For more demanding output needs, you can embed format commands in your document while you edit and let our reformatting printer program handle all of your layout concerns. More than 40 embedded commands allow you to control every aspect of layout, including pagination, binding margins, flexible page headers, volume-length documents, outline indentation, and far more. You can employ electronic shorthand so that commonly used phrases are represented by three or fewer keystrokes. And if your printer is capable of it, you can do justification by incremental spacing, boldface, and more.

THE DATABASE: Our users tell us that the Electronic Card File is worth the price of the entire package. It's not really, but with its ease of use, its multiple alphabetic and numeric sorts, its report options that include totals and subtotals, it is superior to many databases costing well over $100.00.

MAIL LIST MERGE: You can write documents in the editor that call for information from the Electronic Card File and merge the information to produce customized forms and form letters. Conditional printing allows you to skip words, blocks of text, or entire letters based on criteria that you define in each card in the card file. And you can also draw information from other popular databases, from Visicalc, and from your own custom programs.

ALPHABETICAL INDEXER: This unique tool allows you to specify page numbers for each occurrence of a term and to produce a properly formatted alphabetical index of those terms. Two levels of indexing are supported, so that entries like 'beans, navy' and 'beans, green' are handled properly with two levels of indentation.

AUTO-OUTLINER: You can plan outline up to five levels deep with an unknown number of entires per level. As you add entries, the outline is renumbered automatically.

PRE-PRINTED FORMS MANAGER: Use a sequence of special embedded commands to define the row and column positions of the blanks on pre-printed forms. Our template helps you. Then use mail-list merging to combine information from your database with your pre-printed forms.

ELECTRONIC MAIL: Either by direct connection or with a Hayes Smartmodem you can transfer your documents to another computer—or to your local typesetter for printing.

SPELLING CHECKER: Easier to use than any other spelling checker. Ours comes with 10,000 words and a capacity for 15,000 more. Or you can start your own list from scratch. Documents are scanned, and you are shown misspellings in context. Correct them on-the-fly, or add words to the dictionary as you scan.

ORDER BY PHONE

Available at your local dealer or call us at

(612) 929-7104

We accept VISA/MasterCard

Ask for The Executive Secretary at your local dealer.

SOF/SYS, INC.

4306 Upton Ave. South, Minneapolis, MN 55410

@HLOOKUP (INDEX,TABLE,OFFSET)
@VLOOKUP (INDEX,TABLE,OFFSET)

The index in these commands is identical in function to the index in *VisiCalc/SuperCalc* lookup functions; it acts as a criterion for the lookup function to match. The second and third arguments in *1-2-3*'s lookup commands take them a dimension beyond what was offered in earlier spreadsheet programs.

Table can be a grid composed of any number of rows and columns. The first row in the HLookup table or the first column in the VLookup table acts as the range that's scanned for a match. *Offset* allows you to select the row (HLookup) or column (VLookup) you'll pick the value from.

As an example of the use of HLookup, there's a little spreadsheet in figure 7 that keeps track of personnel information.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Employee name					
2	Employee #					
3	Salary		@HLOOKUP(B2.C8...F11,1)			
4	Experience		@HLOOKUP(B2,C8...F11,2)			
5	Department #		@HLOOKUP(B2,C8...F11,3)			
6						
7	EMPLOYEE INFORMATION TABLE					
8	Employee #		100	110	120	130
9	Salary		24,000	22,000	28,000	27,000
10	Experience		3	3	5	4
11	Department #		202	100	98	105

Figure 7.

State-of-the-art, mouse-driven full screen editor for IBM PC

The MASTERVIEW™ Visual Editor provides UNDO and CANCEL functions for easy recovery from accidental operations.

Use mouse or keyboard to select and perform all editing operations including search, select, move, copy and delete. User can edit multiple files viewed concurrently in separate windows. Common word processing functions such as word wrap, margin justification, paragraph formatting and centering are also provided. Includes comprehensive on-line help and IBM-compatible documentation.

Price $175 (mouse not included). MasterCard, Visa, check or money order accepted. To order call collect: (617) 431-7854.

A new release in the MASTER SERIES™

PC TechniCorp™
40 Grove Street, Wellesley, MA 02181

The HLookup table extends from C8 to F11. The top row of this table, C8 to F8, contains the values that HLookup will scan to find a match to the index value (held in B2).

The *offset*, the third argument in the HLookup function, specifies which row of the table you want to get your data from. If the offset is 1, HLookup behaves just like a *VisiCalc* lookup; it returns the value directly below the index match. If the offset is 2, HLookup drops to the second row below the index match, and so on. This extension of the Lookup function allows you to select several different pieces of data based on a single index match.

For example, to look up an employee's salary, we use an offset of 1; experience is found using an offset of 2; and department with an offset of 3. Type in the employee number at B2 and the HLookup formulas will display the salary, experience, and department for the specific employee number matched in the index range.

A cousin of the Lookup function is *Choose*, which allows you to select one of a series of arguments in a list. The general form of Choose is:

CHOOSE(INDEX,ARG1,ARG2,ARG3,...)

Here, *index* refers to a value, cell, or formula (just as it does in Lookup), and the list of arguments that follows specifies the choices available. The list may include a range within it; in other words, you could have a formula like this:

@CHOOSE(B2,C9,D11,3092,Z26,H5...H14,Q1)

The list arguments may be cell references or numbers, and references may be to contiguous cells or not; list items may also be complex formulas, if you like. How you arrange the list is your business. Choose will evaluate the first argument, then count the appropriate number of items into the list.

For example, *Choose(5,2,4,6,8,10,12,14)* would display the number 10, since 10 is the fifth item in the list. Similarly, *Choose(3,B2,8,H12,7,5)* would return whatever value was stored at H12, since that cell reference is the third item in the list.

As an example of an application suitable for Choose, consider a printer who makes estimates on a variety of jobs. To help speed up estimation, he assigns an overall degree of difficulty to each job, which will raise the job estimate by a predefined factor:

Degree of Difficulty	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
	1.2	**1.5**	**2**	**2.4**

The figure 8 spreadsheet will multiply the job estimate, presumably calculated in another part of the sheet, by the appropriate factor.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Estimate				
2	Difficulty				
3	Adj. estimate		CHOOSE(B2,1.2,1.5,2,2.4)*B1		

Figure 8.

To use the sheet in figure 8, enter an estimate at B1 and a degree of difficulty (between 1 and 4) at B2. Choose will then select the appropriate multiplier and apply it to the estimate, reporting the outcome at B3.

The index used to select the argument must be greater than or equal to 1 and must also be less than or equal to the number of arguments in the list. If the index is out of this range, then Choose returns NA. A difficulty factor of 0 or 5, for example, will cause our example Choose formula to return NA at B3.

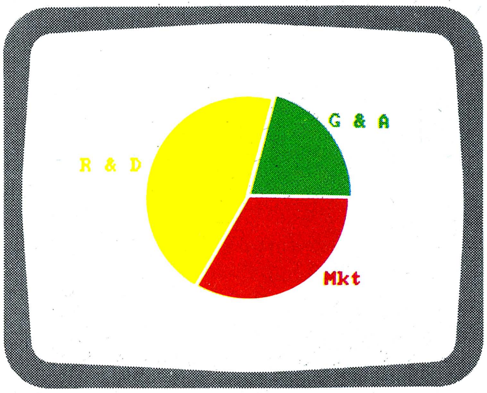
Next month we'll move on to logical functions—*If, And, Not,* and *Or*.

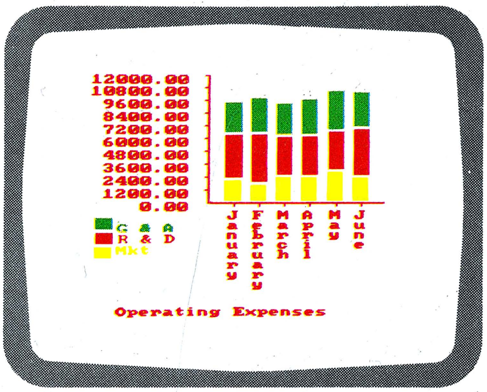
Your questions and comments about spreadsheet applications are invited. Send them to Profit Plot, Softalk/IBM, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

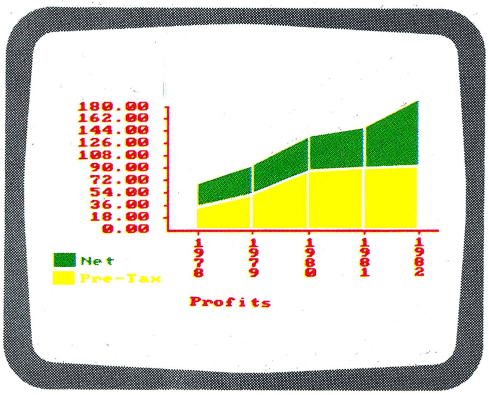
Questions and comments of general interest may be printed. ▲

Good News for VisiCalc® Users

INTEGRATED GRAPHICS For Under $100!







In just a few keystrokes, transform the columns of figures from your VisiCalc spreadsheet into a pie chart or any of 7 other types of charts and graphs. Without ever leaving VisiCalc!

That's only the beginning. The StretchCalc™ program also adds powerful spreadsheet management and user-convenience features. At a fraction of the price of comparable products.

- **GRAPHICS:** Eight kinds of charts and graphs allow you to uncover important trends and patterns behind that mass of numbers. View the graphics in your choice of color or monochrome. Or print them. Either way, you gain immediate impact from your data that those rows and columns just can't provide.
- **SPREADSHEET MANAGEMENT:** Need to examine your budget, portfolio, or sales forecast by relative value of spreadsheet entries? StretchCalc™ SORT commands automatically rearrange your spreadsheet based upon its contents. Would you like the convenience of obtaining a single page summary of a large spreadsheet with a single command? A REARRANGE command lets you instantly set the columns of your spreadsheet in any order.
- **USER CONVENIENCE:** Store a series of VisiCalc commands under a function key. One keystroke and the StretchCalc™ program executes them for you. Up to 66 sets of VisiCalc and StretchCalc™ commands can be stored in a single diskette file. No more memorizing the right sequence or recovering from costly keystroke errors.

The StretchCalc™ program is available now for just $99 [49 without graphics]. A lot of added capability for your VisiCalc spreadsheet at a modest price. Ready to order? Need more information? Call **toll free** 1-800-322-4110 or, in Oregon call (503) 626-4727. We'll accept your VISA or MasterCard orders or provide you with the name of a dealer carrying StretchCalc™.

Required hardware: IBM P.C. with 128K RAM (DOS Version 1.1) or with 192K RAM (DOS Version 2.00) and at least one 5-1/4″ diskette drive. For screen graphics: IBM Color/Graphics Adapter and compatible color or monochrome display. For printer graphics: IBM or Epson printer with GRAFTRAX option and IBM Color/Graphics Adapter. **Required software:** IBM DOS, Version 1.1 or Version 2.00; VisiCorp VisiCalc, Extended Memory ("256K" or "512K") Versions, or IBM VisiCalc, Version 1.10 or greater.

StretchCalc is a trademark of Multisoft Corp.; IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation; VisiCalc is a VisiCorp trademark; GRAFTRAX is a trademark of Epson America, Inc.

MULTISOFT CORPORATION
14025 S.W. FARMINGTON RD., BEAVERTON, OR 97005

QUADRAM™ INAUGURATES THE

Use Apple software in your IBM PC and XT
Who said you can't mix Apples and IBMs? Innovation by Quadram makes it possible with Quadlink.™ A simulated Apple computer on a revolutionary new enhancement board.

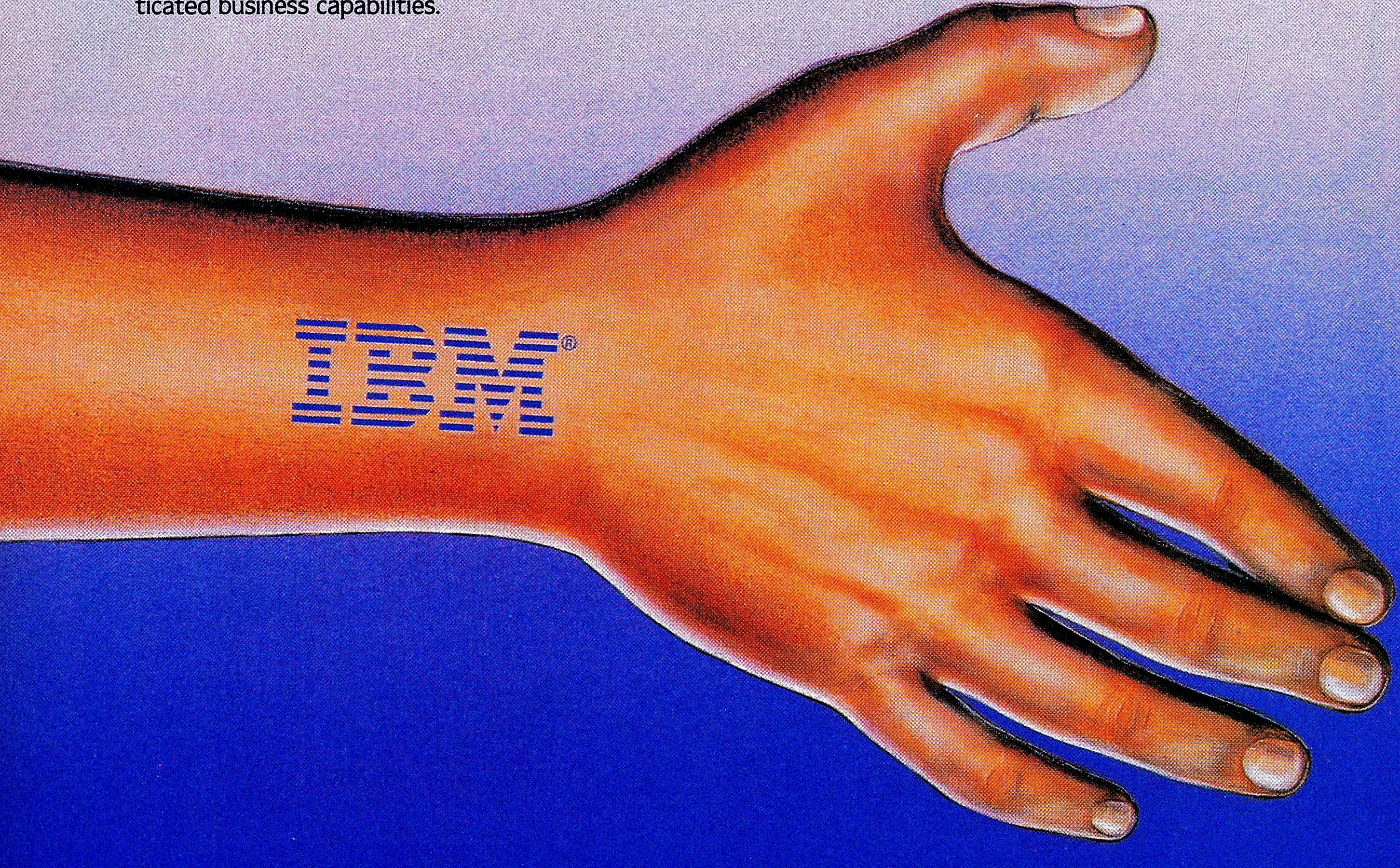
Most programs designed for the Apple II, II Plus or IIe — including educational software and entertainment options — are now compatible with IBM PCs sophisticated business capabilities.

That's right. An Apple and an IBM. In one computer with no software limitations. Quadlink by Quadram opens a whole new world of possibilities.

Easy to use
Quadlink plugs inside IBM PCs. No conversion or reformatting of diskettes needed. Just load Apple software in the IBM and key one command. That puts you in the Apple mode. When ready to switch back, just press a different key. It's that simple. Like having an Apple 64K computer inside your IBM.

Keep the extras
Quadlink allows use of all IBM enhancements while running Apple software. Printers, buffers, monitors and more.

When using a monitor there's no plugging or unplugging cables. Apple programs will appear on an



Apple and the Apple logo are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.
IBM and the IBM logo are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

MERGER OF APPLE AND IBM

IBM monochrome or color monitor, like Quadram's chrome vivid RGB color monitor Quadchrome, more clearly than Apple's own screen — even while working with Apple's high resolution color graphics.

Explore your options
Quadlink comes standard with 64K memory. Requiring only one expansion slot, it offers a game port and works with all I/O devices designed to enhance the IBM PC. Like parallel and serial ports for operating printers, modems and other peripheral accessories. There's nothing like Quadlink. And nothing like reliable Quadram Quality to stand behind it.

Quadram Corporation is an Intelligent Systems Company. For over a decade, ISC has been an innovator in personal computer enhancements and color graphics peripherals.

Quadram products are available only through authorized dealers worldwide. Visit one and ask for a demonstration of Quadlink. Priced at only $680, we think you'll like what we've discovered.

Check on our other enhancements too, especially Quadboard, the original multifunction board for the IBM PC.

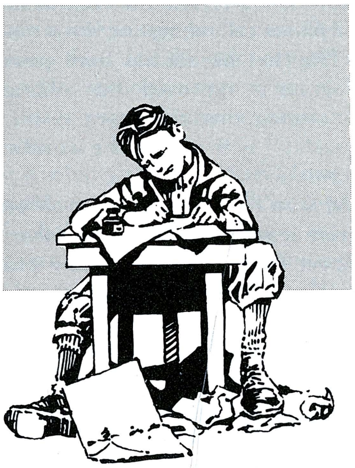
QUADRAM
CORPORATION
An Intelligent Systems Company

4357 Park Drive / Norcross, Ga. 30093 / (404) 923-6666
TWX 810-766-4915 (QUADRAM NCRS)

Available for delivery to retail stores worldwide in late June.

How To Submit Software to Big Blue

DEAR IBM...



by Douglas Clapp

IBM's biggest surprise in the unveiling of the pc was its reliance on outside vendors. A multitude of respected hardware and software suppliers, from Intel to Tandon, contributed product to IBM for the pc.

The corporate giant made a giant shift in philosophy, then treated the change as obvious. "A personal computer, by definition, is a product of third-party vendors," said Philip Estridge, head of the project that developed the pc.

With 1983 pc sales projected at more than five hundred thousand units, a bonanza is in store for suppliers of pc components and software. IBM won't be the only company to cash in on the Personal Computer's success—earnings of all firms supplying IBM should skyrocket.

The "open door" philosophy was pushed to the limit when IBM announced its Software Submission Plan. Not only was Big Blue looking to the established names in microcomputerdom, it was holding the door open to anyone who could program a pc.

Insiders credited IBM with again making a savvy marketing decision: With pc sales zooming, there was an immediate need for quality software. Sales would come "up to speed" only when there was a wide selection of programs. IBM may have cast its eye at Apple Computer and noted that Apple II sales in 1982 (in excess of forty thousand units a month) were due in large measure to the huge base of Apple software.

America's software industry is exploding. Basement programmers take on VisiCorp and MicroPro, while the large firms themselves battle to write the top-selling word processor, database, or spreadsheet. Advertising is expensive and support is costly. Fortunes are made and risked daily.

For consumers with a limited budget for software, the hunt for good programs is often a costly trek through uncharted jungle.

To ensure a wide selection of enticing software, IBM played an ace in the hole, a card no other manufacturer can play: the letters *IBM*. The IBM logo would assure buyers that the world's premier computer corporation had given its blessing to the software it packaged.

Once again, everyone wins. Established software companies can let IBM handle marketing and watch the royalties roll in. For its part, IBM gets a chunk of a sale without any investment in program development and often gets the chance to market proven winners like *VisiCalc*. Programmers with a good product can do what they do best, while IBM, in effect, works for them.

Judging from IBM's previous releases, quality is the prime consideration. *VisiCalc* was an initial offering. *Multiplan* by Microsoft, another excellent spreadsheet program, is also marketed by IBM. Just as owners were given the choice between three operating systems—PC-DOS, CP/M-86, and the UCSD p-System—choices are being given in other software areas. The sentiment, simply, is that if it's good, IBM will market it.

The Software Submission Plan, since its inception in 1982, has undergone one important change. When first announced, the plan offered vendors royalties with a ceiling of $100,000.

Most of us would be perfectly happy to earn $100,000 for writing a computer program. But the software industry howled. "Only $100,000? What if we give you the next *VisiCalc?*" IBM would reap all profits once the ceiling was reached, went the cry.

IBM relented. The ceiling was eliminated. Payment for software is now negotiated on a case-by-case basis. Negotiable items include royalty percentages, duration of royalty payments, lump-sum payments, or advance payments. Royalties are a percent of IBM's wholesale price and are paid quarterly.

In charge of the submission program is the elegant, intelligent Vicki Fairchild, manager of product publishing. Fairchild smiles when the talk turns to numbers but says that elimination of the royalty ceiling has increased the number of submissions.

Although Fairchild declines to reveal the total number of submissions, others have speculated that most of the first pc sales went to programmers. That may be confirmed by Fairchild's comment that "most of the submissions have been business-oriented."

Most isn't all, however, and gamers and hackers can take heart in the diversity of programs IBM has received for consideration. "People continually open our eyes to creativity," Fairchild says, emphasizing the range of submissions that have poured through IBM's doors.

That range is already showing up in IBM outlets. *Casino Games, Personal Editor* (a full-screen editor), *Adventure in Serenia, Disk Librarian* (a utility), *Programming Development System, PFS:File* and *PFS:Report*, and household budgeting are among programs now available.

The path from inspiration to marketing is a careful sequence. The first step is requesting the *Software Submissions Guide* by writing to IBM Corporation, External Submission Department 765 PC, Armonk, NY, 10504.

The guide, itself a model of excellent documentation, explains the submission process and offers tips and suggestions to would-be programmers.

Packaged inside are two software submission agreements. Fairchild is quick to note that IBM wants *only* the agreement returned, not the actual program, code, or documentation. "The first step is selling us on the program," she explains.

"Selling" IBM consists of explaining the program's function, characteristics, hardware/software requirements, and targeting the program's intended users. Is the program now in use? Is it copyrighted? Who developed the program? Does anyone own rights? Information is also sought on the documentation, from reference cards to installation guides, that is offered with the program.

The agreement is thorough but shouldn't be intimidating. After all, we may be talking big money here, right?

Acceptance depends, in part, on the potential market. A program to aid in shearing Himalayan yaks, no matter how well written, probably won't get the nod from IBM. Although she won't discourage any submissions, Fairchild looks a bit wistful when she says, "We'd like to see more programs for the home."

The best way to have your program accepted is to "follow the suggestions in the guide." Those tips include making use of the pc's special features, including function keys, graphics, and the ability to work with both monitor cards. A program that works on a minimal system (one drive, 64K, DOS), may have a slight edge.

Also important is error checking. A program should be both easy to use and hard to "bomb."

The guide's documentation section even includes a sample outline to use in creating manuals. With typical thoroughness, this section also comments on the correct "tone," "voice," and "tense" to follow in writing instructions.

Good programmers aren't always good writers, as Fairchild concedes. "We do have a technical writer on staff for programmers that need help with their documentation."

If IBM is impressed, the programmer receives a phone call requesting the actual program. The first hurdle has been passed. If the program is approved, the programmer begins negotiations that may result in a "partnership" with one of the world's largest corporations.

IBM won't be pinned down on projecting future releases, but it appears that users can expect from one to five new program packages on a monthly, or almost-monthly, basis.

Could one of them be yours? ▲

PROFOUND PC PRODUCTS

XENO-COPY 2.0™

Now you can transfer files to your IBM PC or PC XT from your other computer disks without any additional hardware required!

All you need is the disk! Previously, file transfers between different computers required expensive modem programs and additional hardware, not to mention the hassle of serial file transfers. XENO-COPY allows direct disk-to-disk file transfers at a fraction of the cost with no complications.

Suppose you have a PC at the office and use a portable computer in the field or have a non-IBM PC computer at home. Leave those computers where they are, and just take the disk to the office. Run XENO-COPY™, then insert your source disk in one drive and a formatted PC-DOS disk in the other drive. Select the files to be transferred and watch it happen. No modem madness! XENO-COPY is fully menu-driven and easy to use. Compatible with different drive configurations, DOS 1.1 and 2.0, and hard disks.

XENO-COPY directly transfers disk files from Kaypro II, Lobo CP/M, Morrow Designs SS, NEC PC8001a, Osborne DD, Quark, Superbrain, Televideo TS 802, TRS-80 III CP/M, Xerox 820 II DD, Zenith/Heath w/Magnolia. Other formats being added. Now version 2.0 with IBM CP/M-86 capability $99.50

THE *ORIGINAL* KEYFIXER™

Enter
Home
Caps Lock

Precision molded collars fit onto existing ENTER, TAB, BACKSPACE, and both SHIFT KEYS to increase accuracy and reduce fatigue. Unique design does not change key height. Imprinted with "ENTER" as in IBM doc. Original equipment gray color matches existing keys.
Set of 5 ....only $14.95

If not available from your local dealer, send check or money order to:

Vertex systems DEPT. S
Innovation in microcomputer products
7950 West 4th Street • Los Angeles, Ca. 90048
(213) 938-0857

VISA/MC/Phone orders accepted. Include card # and exp. date. Add $1.75 shipping and handling. Calif. residents add 6% (6.5% in L.A. County) sales tax. Allow 2-3 weeks delivery.

KEYSWAPPER 2.0™

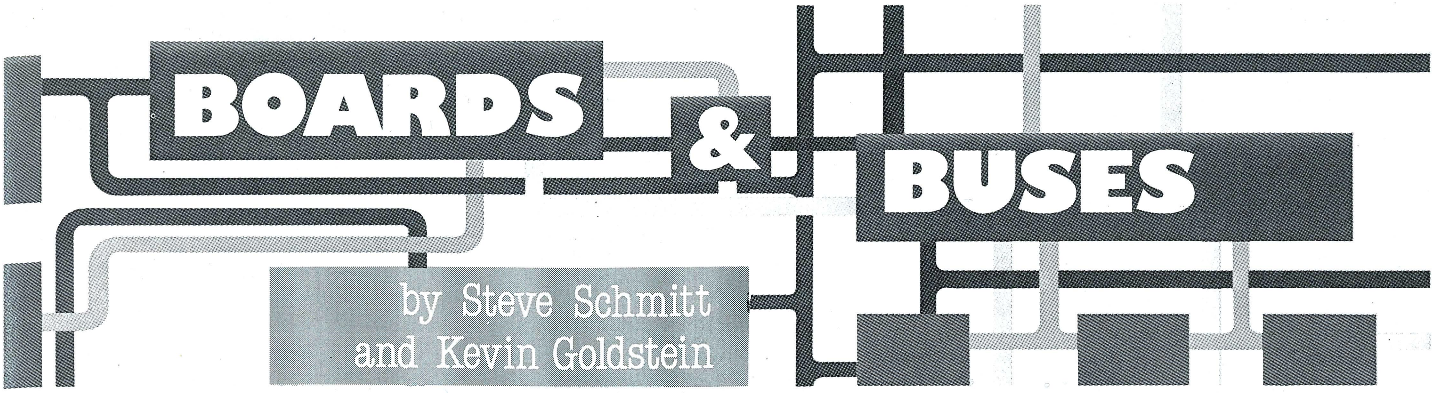
Let us modestly point out that additional new features makes KEYSWAPPER 2.0 the most advanced keyboard MACRO utility on the market.

You can now define any series of keystrokes or commands as MACRO. You can even define and record a new MACRO during another program. Temporarily suspend or reinvoke MACROs. Store MACROs in printable/editable text files. Display "help menue" and MACRO definitions during another program. Many other optional features like Date and Time Display at Cursor, etc.

KEYSWAPPER 2.0™ incorporates version 1.2 Typing Utility features. Move or change any key function, even switch to DVORAK. Spreadsheet users can use numeric keypad *and* cursor keys at the same time! Add (00) to the keypad. Audible "beep" on Capslock and Numlock activation, touch reset of Capslock like a typewriter. Easy to use menu driven configuration. Put convenience back into your PC.

Works with both PC & XT. under DOS 1.1 and 2.0 Transparent and compatible with 1-2-3, Visicalc, Wordstar, and most other programs ....$69.95.

KEYSWAPPER 1.2 typing utility only is still available at $39.95



BOARDS & BUSES

by Steve Schmitt
and Kevin Goldstein

Masatoshi Shima, the designer of both Intel's 8080 and Zilog's sixteen-bit Z8000, appears to be hard at work again, this time designing a pc-on-a-chip. Shima's new chip will use a technology known as CMOS, an acronym that stands for *complementary metal-oxide semiconductor*. Like all really good acronyms, this one is pronounceable: see-moss.

And what good is CMOS? Intel's 8086 and 8088 are made of NMOS (n-channel metal-oxide semiconductor), as is the rest of the current crop of sixteen-bit microprocessors, from Motorola's 68000 to National's 16032. So why the switch?

The answer is simple: If Intel tried to cram all the functions of an entire pc onto a single bitty chip, it would be creating its own micro Three Mile Island; the chip would probably melt down the first time power was applied to it. When designers add functions to a silicon chip, they don't increase the chip size; instead, they pack more and more functions onto the same piece of silicon real estate. And just as a skyscraper in Manhattan will consume more power than a suburban house occupying the same amount of ground space, so a chip with more functions draws more power than a chip with fewer functions. Compared to CMOS, the NMOS process technology that the 8088 is made in is a real power hog. Trying to cram too many more functions onto it would make the chip too hot; and remember, heat is the enemy of electronic components. Thus the decision to go with CMOS, which can do the same work while burning only a small fraction of the power.

You might at this point be wondering why, if CMOS is so great, it wasn't used for the 8088. Because there aren't any free lunches, that's why. CMOS costs more than NMOS, so there's no sense using it unless its low-power advantages are needed. And it used to be much slower than NMOS, although rapid advances in R&D seem to be turning that situation into a piece of techno-history. CMOS right now has a "granny's tooth" market: There's a big hole in the middle. It's strong at the bottom, where it's almost universally used in battery-powered equipment, and it's coming on strong at the high-performance end, where its low power usage prevents melt-down in high-density chips and its extra cost extracts a proportionately smaller penalty. As for the middle of the market—the Z-80s to 8086s—it's likely that as time goes on, CMOS versions of popular microprocessors will be used more and more, as evidenced by the fact that at least one company has already announced a CMOS 8086. A few years from now, microcomputers will be using CMOS almost exclusively.

Riddle Department. A rumor that's been picking up steam lately is that IBM is starting to ship Peanut, a low-cost version of the pc, to beta test sites. If you're the kind that likes to put 2 and 2 together to get 22, consider this riddle: Peanut is rumored to be a portable. Portable microcomputers need CMOS. IBM owns 12 percent of Intel, which is designing a pc-on-a-chip using CMOS. Intel will shortly be introducing CMOS RAMs. Does it look to you like Big Blue is out to conquer yet another microcomputer market?

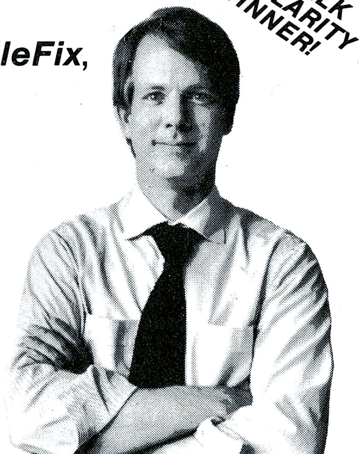
Building Blocks. Does that tidbit about a pc-on-a-chip pique your curiosity? Here's some more information. According to an article in *EE Times*, a technical newspaper for

The Norton Utilities™ POWER TOOLS for the IBM/PC

Your Data is in *Danger!*

if you don't have the file recovery routines ***UnErase*** and ***FileFix***, just two of the incredibly useful ***Norton Utilities.***

Top 30 SOFTALK POPULARITY WINNER!



File recovery:
- ***UnErase*** - recovers erased files
- ***Hard-UnErase*** - UnErase for hard disk
- ***FileFix*** - checks and repairs disks
- ***SecMod*** - patching and repair
- ***SSAR*** - special search and repair

Disk display:
- ***DiskLook*** - the acclaimed diskette displayer
- ***HardLook*** - DiskLook for hard/fixed disk

Disk patching ("super-zapping"):
- ***SecMod*** - easy changes to diskettes
- ***HardMod*** - easy changes to fixed disk

Hidden file control:
- ***FileHide*** - interactive hidden file control
- ***BatHide*** - automatic hidden file control

Diskette volume labels:
- ***Label*** - add, change, delete volume id's

Elapsed time and time display:
- ***TimeMark*** - time, date, elapsed time

Screen control:
- ***ScrAtr*** - set DOS default colors
- ***Reverse*** - work in reverse video
- ***Clear*** - clears screen, for DOS 1.10

Diskette file sorting:
- ***FileSort*** - sorts directory by name or date
- ***DiskOpt*** - sorts directory for fast access

Sound: Simple file printing
- ***Beep*** - alerts you, when work is done
- ***Lprint*** - prints files

BASIC convert to BLOAD format:
- ***Bload*** - converts "COM" to BLOAD

Fixed hard disk support:
- ***HardLook*** - complete disk display
- ***HardMod*** - easy disk modification
- ***Hard-UnErase*** - recover erased files

IBM buys The Norton Utilities again & again. Shouldn't you buy a set?

Available from ComputerLand, other dealers, and directly from me for $80.00.

Peter Norton 2210 Wilshire Blvd., #186E, Santa Monica, CA 90403

"An industry standard" — New York PC User's Group

PHONE ORDERS — (213) 399-3948 VISA master charge

Personal Computer
SMARTWARE™

MergeCalc™ $125

- Consolidates VisiCalc® spread sheets
- Compares two or more VisiCalc® spread sheets

Applications MergeCalc merges VisiCalc® files and extends the utility of VisiCalc®. One of the shortcomings of VisiCalc® is the inability to consolidate, merge or manipulate multiple VisiCalc® models automatically. With MergeCalc, you can perform operations between your models without changing the models in any way. MergeCalc is ideally suited to add segments of a total business into a consolidated model. This enables all types of complex analyses, such as variance analysis, percentage change reports, time change reports, share of market analysis, incremental sales or investment analysis.

LoadCalc™ $95

- Converts textfiles to DIF™ files

Applications: LoadCalc creates DIF files from textfiles, so you can move mainframe or minicomputer data into VisiCalc®, VisiTrend/Plot, VisiWord or any program that uses DIF. LoadCalc allows selective conversion of the data, so you only get what you want. No programming required. With LoadCalc you can load "Actuals" from the mainframe into your "Budget" spreadsheet and *compare* the numbers.

DocuCalc™ $95

- Prints organized documentation of VisiCalc® spread sheets

Applications: You need DocuCalc if you are building fairly complex VisiCalc® models and want an easy way to review your work. It also makes your models easy for someone else to review. . . even if they don't understand VisiCalc®. If you are an auditor and your clients use VisiCalc® for essential business reports, you can meet all audit requirements easily with this program.

Dealer inquiries invited

Send me a catalog! IST 1

CYPHER, 121 Second St., San Francisco, CA 94105
NAME__________
COMPANY __________
ADDRESS __________
CITY______ STATE______ ZIP______

800-SMARTWARE
Visa/MC accepted
In California 415-974-5297

engineers, the chip will be put together building-block style. First, all the functions that will eventually end up on the chip will be defined and built as individual chips—graphics controllers, communications interfaces, disk controllers, and so forth. Then to build the pc-on-a-chip, the proper functions will simply all be put on one chip, much as you now pick and choose different boards and put them all in your system unit. The analogy is apt, since the different functions (also called modules) will communicate with each other via a "silicon system bus" on the chip, similar to the way the different cards in a pc communicate over the system bus. The obvious advantage of such a modular design is flexibility: put one set of functions on a chip and you've got a pc; pick another set and you might be able to get a chip that emulates—meaning is functionally equivalent to—an Apple.

Speaking of Talking. Shortly before press time, we received some indications that IBM is taking telephone management systems like that introduced by Texas Instruments for its Professional Computer or Tecmar for the pc (see Comm Lines, this issue) quite seriously. Apparently the company thinks such systems will be vital elements in the "pc-as-productivity-tool" scheme. That means it's only a matter of time before Big Blue will be introducing its own telephone management hardware. The time frame is likely to be pretty short, considering the speed with which IBM has managed to react to the market. (Who says giants lumber?)

Another item that slides in somewhere between unsubstantiated rumor and unconfirmed fact is that IBM is working on its own operating system for its microcomputers. The industry talk is that it will be somewhat similar to IBM's VMS system, which runs on the big IBM machines. The OS war is really a hot one: Western Electric recently announced that it has entered into a software-development arrangement with Intel, Motorola, and National Semiconductor to produce versions of its highly acclaimed Unix for the companies' microprocessors. (Zilog has spent a lot of time and money developing Unix on its own for the Z8000.) Western Electric won't be offering Unix for the 8088, however; current plans slate Unix only for Intel's higher-performance 80286. Sritek (Cleveland, OH) is making a 286-board for the pc; don't be surprised if it turns out to be a popular add-on.

If you really want to change the personality of your pc, however, how about Quadram's Quadlink, a 6502 processor board that turns your pc into an Apple. It can even read Apple disks. Between that and other cards that let you drop in 68000 microprocessors or 16032 microprocessors, the poor pc could soon become hopelessly schizophrenic.

Of Hard Disks and System Integration. As a builder and seller of mainframes, IBM is what is known as a vertically integrated company; that is, it builds practically all of the parts for its products, from the smallest memory chips on up to gigabyte-capacity hard disk drives. (A gigabyte is a thousand megabytes; IBM's gigabyte hard disk looks a lot like a 5¼-inch Winchester with elephantiasis.) That's okay in the mainframe business, where things move more slowly than they do in the personal computer market; had IBM attempted the same strategy with its Personal Computer, however, it wouldn't have been able to move fast enough to keep up with the microcomputer market. That's why IBM chose to buy out most of its major subassemblies, from color terminals and disks to the operating system and application software. The pc is really a conglomeration of hardware and software from various companies, which IBM packages together to make the pc. In the electronics industry, companies that build products primarily by integrating subsystems built by others are called, reasonably enough, system integrators; when it comes to pcs, IBM is a system integrator.

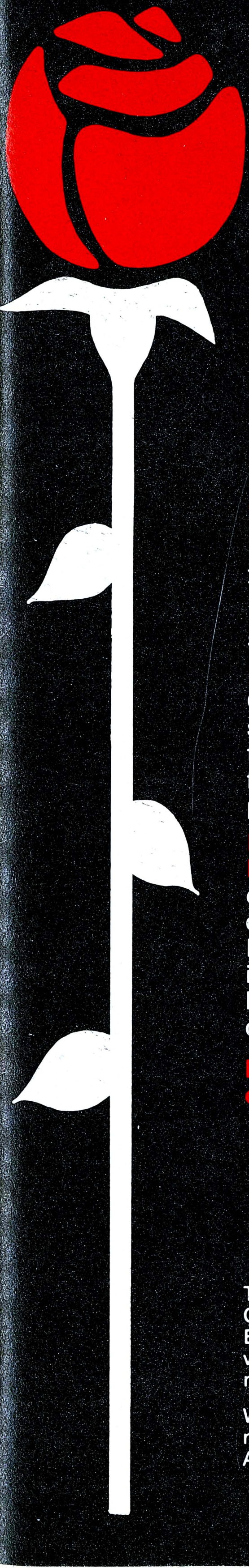
IBM's offering of a hard disk drive in the pc XT adheres to the formula the company proved with its original XT. IBM buys the hard disks from two different companies. Approximately 70 percent of the XTs appear to have drives from Seagate; the rest are made by Miniscribe. Being able to buy functionally equivalent subsystems from more than one supplier is an especially important factor to system integrators; it means that if one company can't supply sufficient product, goes belly up, or has quality problems, there's another company available to take up the slack. The concept is known in the industry as second-sourcing. The disk-drive controller cards come from yet another company, Xebec. Xebec's 1410 hard disk controller is highly regarded by the electronics industry; it includes a host of error-checking hardware and firmware designed to prevent the type of errors that can creep into systems with the high bit-rates common to hard disks.

The Xebec controller card uses an industry standard disk drive interface protocol known as SASI, which can be connected to drives from a variety of manufacturers. Since DOS version 2.0 provides support for hard disks of five, ten, fifteen, and twenty-five megabytes, adding a new hard disk should be a very simple task: Simply set a couple of switches on the controller board.

Incidentally, it appears that pc shipments are slow right now because disk controller cards are in short supply. That's an excellent example of the danger of depending on subsystems that are not second-sourced. ▲

"ProKey™, I THINK I LOVE YOU!"

Helen Harvey, Owner
Word-Works, Oakland, CA



You'll fall in love too with this powerful software tool from RoseSoft. With just a few simple commands, ProKey makes your computer friendlier and easier to use. Anything you can do with your keyboard, ProKey can do for you — faster, easier, and without mistakes.

Tired of repetitive typing? Don't repeat hundreds of keystrokes. Instead, use a "prokey" to recall frequently typed names, addresses, phrases, and formulas.

Can't remember complicated commands? Do each series of commands just once. Then let ProKey memorize it for you. Create "supercommands" to mark and move paragraphs, print spreadsheet tables, and update databases.

Frustrated by off-the-shelf software? Customize your keyboard to make sense for you and your business. Move the cursor arrows to other keys. Make function keys work the same in all your programs.

ProKey lets you define up to 130 prokeys. Each prokey can be any combination of characters, commands, comand sequences, and even other prokeys. Only ProKey lets you mark fields within definitions so that you can "fill in the blanks" later on. And only ProKey saves your definitions in files you can edit and print.

But ProKey is more than a keyboard enhancer. Create easy-to-use turnkey systems — ProKey takes care of the operating details. Or make ProKey the control center for your favorite software programs. Now your word processor, spreadsheet, database, and other programs can work together, doing more for you than ever before.

ProKey is easy to love! Start with the primer in the manual. Then take the online tutorial to walk through the basics. ProKey even comes with Starter Sets ™ of predefined prokeys you can use or adapt for WordStar, VisiCalc, and dBASE II. In minutes, you'll be defining your own prokeys as well.

Too good to be true? See what the experts say about ProKey! Read reviews in PC MAGAZINE (January), PC WORLD (premier issue), SOFTALK (April), and MICROCOMPUTING (June). Then ask your dealer for a demo.

For only $75, put a little love in your life with ProKey! Visit your dealer today. Or order direct from RoseSoft — please add $2.00 for shipping ($3.00 by air). Check, money order, C.O.D., VISA, or Master Card accepted. Washington residents should add sales tax.

You'll wonder how you and your computer ever lived without ProKey!

To run ProKey, you'll need an IBM Personal Computer or work-alike (COMPAQ, Corona, Eagle, or Columbia Data Products), DOS (any version, including 2.0), and 64K of RAM (WordStar requires 96K).

WordStar, VisiCalc, and dBASE II are trademarks, respectively, of MicroPro, VisiCorp, and Ashton-Tate.

RoseSoft
Elegant Software Solutions

4710 University Way N.E.
Suite 601
Seattle, WA 98105
(206) 524-2350

YOUR IBM® PERSONAL COMPUTER IS ABOUT TO BECOME MORE POWERFUL THAN YOU EVER DREAMED POSSIBLE.

PC'83

BOSTON

Saturday-Monday, October 8-10, 1983
(Columbus Day Weekend)
Bayside Exposition Center
10:30 AM to 5:30 PM Daily

Produced by Northeast Expositions Inc., the people who brought you Applefest, CP/M '83, Softcon, and the National Computer Shows.
826 Boylston Street, Chestnut Hill, Massachusetts 02167, 617-739-2000 or 800-841-7000.
For information on exhibiting at PC '83, please call 800-343-2222.

ANNOUNCING PC '83 THE INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE AND EXPOSITION FOR PC USERS

In the last few months, *thousands* of exciting new products have become available to make your IBM Personal Computer work in hundreds of innovative, landmark applications. By adding the right software, plug-in cards, peripherals and accessories, you can make your PC more productive and useful than you ever dreamed possible.

And now there's finally a way to learn about and try out all of these products: PC '83, the first international event *exclusively* for PC users.

THE LARGEST EVER

The exposition portion of PC '83 is the largest gathering of PC-compatible products ever held. You'll find, under one roof, more than 400 exhibits of software for business, professional, home, personal and education applications; plug-in cards for memory expansion, telecommunications, speech and many other functions; hundreds of peripherals, including printers, networking systems and innovative new storage devices; plus dozens of publications, books and invaluable support services.

PC '83 brings together the *entire* PC world.

RELIABLE AND COST-EFFECTIVE

Think about the different vehicles available for buying software and add-ons for your PC. You can shop at local computer stores, but they usually have a very limited selection of products and a less-than-expert staff. You can buy through mail order—and take some big risks if you get products that don't work or don't do what you expected.

At PC '83 you have the best of all worlds. You can see *all* the different PC-compatible products in one location at one time. You can talk with factory experts rather than just local salespeople. You can 'test drive' each product and decide if it's right for you. And when you find what you're looking for, you can buy it right on the spot.

Best of all, you'll save hundreds—even thousands—of dollars at PC '83. Most of the products shown at PC '83 are sold at special show prices, so you won't have to look hard to find incredible values. And because PC '83 will help you make more informed purchase decisions, you'll end up with products that are better suited to your applications.

A REMARKABLE CONFERENCE PROGRAM

The conference program at PC '83 isn't just a warmed-over, pared-down version of other computer conferences. The seminars, workshops and forums at PC '83 are the result of months of research and planning targeted toward one specific goal: helping you get absolutely the most out of your IBM Personal Computer.

The PC '83 Conference Program features world-renowned PC authorities speaking at over 100 educational sessions. SEMINARS provide an in-depth look at a broad range of PC uses in business, home, and education, emphasizing "how-to's" and telling you specifically what you need to know—in non-technical language—to use your PC in dozens of different applications. TUTORIALS are intensive, easy-to-understand sessions specially designed for both the beginning PC user and the PC veteran looking to learn a new technique. APPLICATION WORKSHOPS teach the ins and outs of an application: how it works, what it does, and what are some of the popular products available for it. INDUSTRY WORKSHOPS are specially designed for those in the business of producing or selling IBM-PC compatible hardware and software. Each workshop features a panel of distinguished authorities from the PC world and covers a topic of critical importance to PC support companies.

SOFTWARE and HARDWARE SPOTLIGHTS address one of the biggest problems that virtually all computer users face: how to decide which software and hardware packages are best for your applications. Each spotlight provides a detailed discussion and demonstration of a group of products, covering their features, capabilities, *and* limitations. Experts are on hand at each of these sessions to answer all your questions.

EASY ON YOUR FEET

We've thought of a lot of details to make your visit to PC '83 just a little more pleasant. As with all of our events, the show is fully carpeted, so your feet won't give out before you've seen all the exhibits.

Our unique Conference and Exhibits Guide helps you quickly find the exhibits and educational sessions you want to attend—even if you can't remember their names. And the Guide is provided free of charge to all attendees.

If you're traveling some distance to attend PC '83, we'll arrange a discounted hotel room near the show site. On request, we will also provide information on things to do, places to visit and where to eat in Boston—to make your stay a memorable and relaxing one.

A TOTAL SUPPORT SERVICE

Let's face it, getting support for your PC is tough. The PC magazines, newsletters, user groups and retailers are certainly helpful. But there are so many different products, services and things to learn about for your PC, what you really need is *one* event that brings everything together in one place in a well-organized format.

PC '83 does it all. It showcases all the PC-compatibles under one roof. It has a complete and comprehensive program of seminars, forums and product workshops. And it's produced with the quality and professionalism you've come to expect from Northeast Expositions.

So if you do anything with the IBM Personal Computer or if you're considering buying one, be sure to put PC '83 in your calendar right away.

Your PC will certainly appreciate it.

ADMISSION PRICES:

Exhibits Only Tickets—$10 Per Day. Three-Day Exhibits and Conference Ticket is $25.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

To receive additional information about attending or exhibiting at PC '83, including the Conference, Seminar, Workshop and Panel Discussions Program, or information on local hotels call 617-739-2000 or 800-841-7000 (Boston).

ANY QUESTIONS? CALL 800-841-7000 (BOSTON)

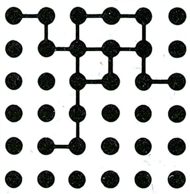
Produced by Northeast Expositions, nationwide producers of the National Computer Shows, Applefest, CP/M'83, and Softcon.
826 Boylston Street, Chestnut Hill,
Massachusetts 02167

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Photography by Buzz Lawrence; furniture courtesy of Computer Furniture Systems.

Part One

A PRIMER ON NETWORKING



by Bruce Churchill

The following is the first in a series of articles excerpted from the book Communications and Networking for the IBM PC, *by Larry Jordan and Bruce Churchill, to be published this month by the Robert J. Brady Co.*

Local area networking is a term that describes a form of computer communications generally used to transfer data internally in an organization. Internally, in this context, means within the confines of an office, a group of offices, a building, or a closely spaced group of buildings.

In its most elementary physical form, a local area network (LAN) is two or more computers connected together by some type of wire or cable; the wire or cable forms a data path between the computers. Once established, a local area network allows the exchange of program and data files among users connected to it. Such a network also allows users to send files to a printer or a hard disk attached either to another computer or directly to the network.

What benefits do local area networks offer for business applications?

First, local area networks allow the sharing of expensive resources—such as letter-quality printers and high-capacity hard disk drives. Second, local area networks allow the high-speed exchange of essential information between key people in an organization. If properly done, this sharing promotes greater efficiency and productivity and leads to more sophisticated computer applications, such as electronic mail. Finally, local area networks act as a catalyst to increase the range of potential applications for the personal computer.

Figure 1 illustrates a simple local area network. The printer and hard disk are shared resources, since all of the users have access to them. The hard disk in this example is attached to the network as a separate device through an interface box; it's also possible to attach the hard disk directly to one of the personal computers, just the way the printer is attached in figure 1.

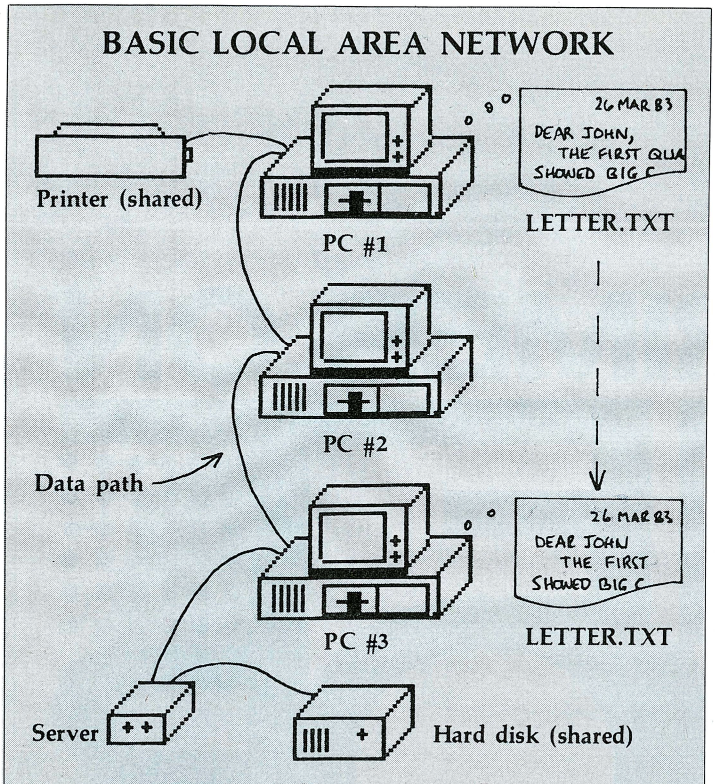

BASIC LOCAL AREA NETWORK
Printer (shared)
PC #1
26 MAR 83
DEAR JOHN,
THE FIRST QUA
SHOWED BIG C
LETTER.TXT
PC #2
Data path
PC #3
26 MAR 83
DEAR JOHN
THE FIRST
SHOWED BIG C
LETTER.TXT
Server
Hard disk (shared)

Figure 1.

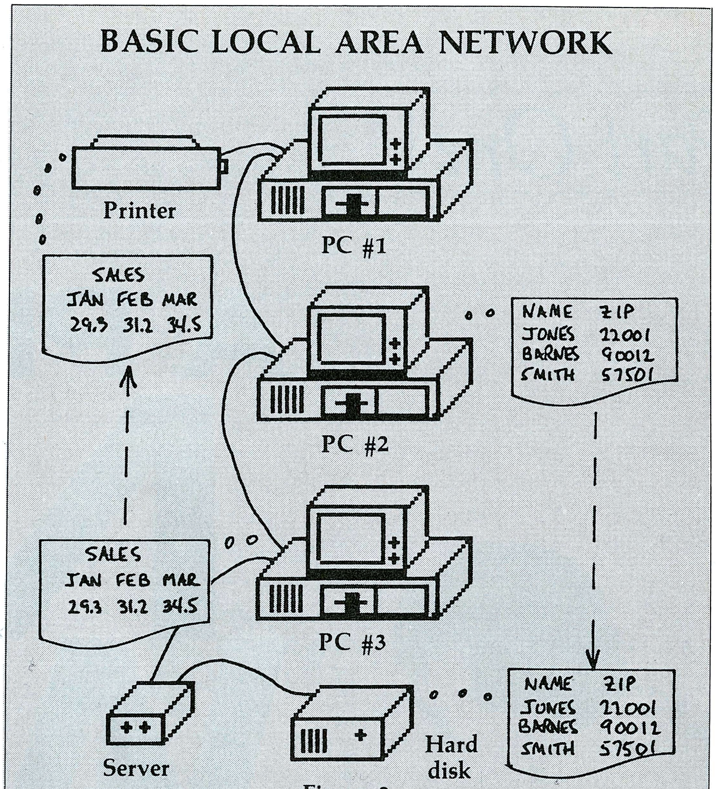

BASIC LOCAL AREA NETWORK
Printer
PC #1
SALES
JAN FEB MAR
29.3 31.2 34.5
NAME ZIP
JONES 22001
BARNES 90012
SMITH 57501
PC #2
SALES
JAN FEB MAR
29.3 31.2 34.5
PC #3
NAME ZIP
JONES 22001
BARNES 90012
SMITH 57501
Server
Hard disk

Figure 2.

Figures 1 and 2 show two types of logical processes that may occur in a local area network. Figure 1 depicts a user at pc #1 sending a word processor file to a user at pc #3. This file transfer could have been initiated by either user. The user at pc #3 can interact with the file as if it had originated at his own pc; he can, for example, write the file to a local floppy disk or use it as input to a word processor.

Figure 2 shows a user on pc #3 printing a file at the printer attached to pc #1. It also shows a user on pc #2 storing a locally created file on the remotely connected hard disk. An interesting consideration relating to pc #1 in figure 2 is the degree to which network software will allow that computer to support a local user and at the same time control access to its attached printer. We'll return to this subject later.

Theme and Variations. There are two ways to look at a local area network: as communications technology and as a multiuser computer installation. Before we go further in our discussion of LAN fundamentals, it would be useful to characterize LANs in the context of other communications systems and other types of multiuser data-processing systems.

Two primary characteristics of LANs distinguish them from modem networks, such as Telenet, Tymnet, Arpanet, and the public telephone system. First, LANs are designed to work in a restricted geographic area, generally limited to thousands of feet or closely spaced building complexes; and second, LANs operate at relatively high speeds, compared to the typical modem networks currently in use.

LAN data-transfer speeds may be as high as fifty million bits per second (fifty megabits per second), or slightly more than six million characters per second (rates of one to ten million bits per second are more typical). Compare this to the maximum data-transfer speeds of fifty-six kilobits per second (seven thousand characters per second) for high-grade telephone company digital trunk lines, or the 300/1200 baud (30/120 characters per second) transmission speed typical of most personal computer communication systems. At the higher speeds,

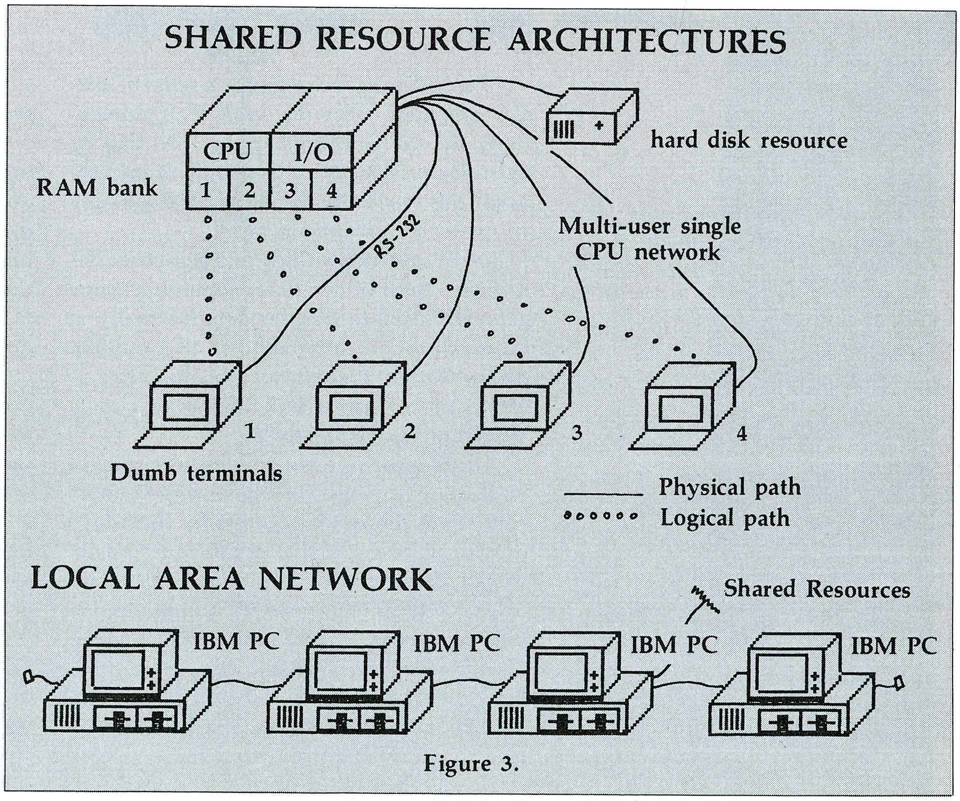

SHARED RESOURCE ARCHITECTURES
CPU
I/O
RAM bank
1
2
3
4
RS-232
hard disk resource
Multi-user single CPU network
1
2
3
4
Dumb terminals
Physical path
Logical path
LOCAL AREA NETWORK
Shared Resources
IBM PC
IBM PC
IBM PC
IBM PC

Figure 3.

LANs operate at a rate exceeding that at which many current microprocessors conduct data transfers to and from random access memory.

As multiuser data processing installations, LANs are a logical alternative to the "classic" multiuser system. The latter usually consists of a central processing unit, several terminals connected to the CPU, and a multiuser operating system, such as MP/M-86, Oasis-16, or Xenix. Terminals in a traditional multiuser system are generally not capable of standalone data processing; instead they rely on the central computer to assign a portion of its main memory to, and execute applications for, each terminal's user.

In contrast to the traditional multiuser setup, each workstation in an LAN is an independent, standalone computer, capable of executing its own applications programs. Both types of systems—LAN and traditional multiuser—can reduce peripheral costs by allowing users to share such resources as printers and hard disks.

The physical differences between a single-CPU multiuser system and a local area network are illustrated in figure 3. Terminals on a single-CPU system are physically connected to serial input/output ports on the central computer, and their users are usually assigned specific segments of main memory for program execution and data storage (because these terminals are not standalone computers, they're sometimes called "dumb" terminals). Users in a single-CPU system are typically assigned their own private areas of a shared hard disk for mass storage. (Each user in an LAN may also be assigned private mass-storage space on a hard disk.) The combination of a dumb terminal, its assigned area of main memory, and its share of the CPU execution time is functionally equivalent to a single workstation on a local area network.

The Basic Components. Now for some more details about the LAN setup shown in figure 1. Bear in mind that this is a very simple LAN; much more complex ones are possible, but this one illustrates the fundamental concepts.

The hardware components of this network system are three IBM Personal Computers, a printer attached to pc #1, and a hard disk unit. Each pc has an adapter card in one of its peripheral slots; this card goes by a number of different names, depending on which vendor produced it. Some of the more common names for such a card are network adapter card, bus interface unit, and communications interface unit. Whatever its name, this card functions in this network in much the same way that an RS-232 card functions in a modem network.

The network data path is commonly formed by a coaxial cable similar to that used on a 75-ohm television antenna (one of the two common types of antenna cable). Some systems use a cheaper means of data transport—the twisted-pair wire similar to that used in telephone installations.

The usual method of making connections between each of the pcs and the data path is by means of standard T-connectors on the backs of the adapter cards, as shown in figure 4.

Before we go further, let's stop to assimilate some vocabulary. The pcs and the hard disk interface shown in figure 1 are known as network devices, or nodes. In general, each device or node is connected directly to the network cable, or data path.

LOCAL AREA NETWORK HARDWARE (Typical)

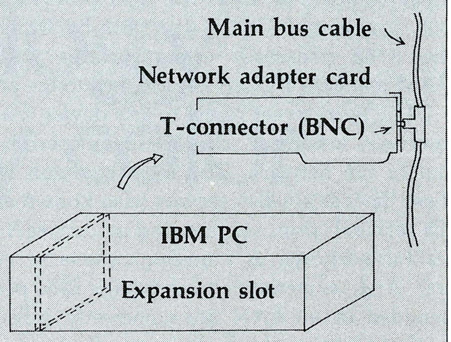


Figure 4.

SATORI SOFTWARE presents

SPECIALIZED DATA-BASE PROGRAMS

≡ BULK MAILER

A profesional mailing list program that includes a sophisticated duplication search and an incredible 32,000 name capacity with hard disk (2400 names with a dual drive, 1200 names with a single drive). Very straight forward and easy-to-use.

- **Duplication Elimination**
- **Broad Coding Capability**
- **Can upgrade to hard disk**
- **Zip and Alpha sorts**
- **1-UP,2-UP,3-UP & 4-UP labels**
- **Default Options**
- **Remarks line**
- **Plus other marketing features**

Apple II/IBM PC diskette version - 2400 names (dual drive) or 1200 names (single drive)**$125.**
Apple II/IBM PC hard disk version - up to 32,000 names **$ 350.**

✓✓ INVENTORY MANAGER

Perfect for retailers, distributers or any business involved with sales. Can track 2700 items (1200 items on a single drive system), and provides numerous information reports.

- **Stores up to 2700 items**
- **Up to 99 vendors**
- **Prints purchase orders**
- **Easy stock up-dates**
- **Lists stock sold & gross profits**
- **Prints suggested orders**
- **Sorts by vendor, department, profit**
- **Many more features**

"Inventory Manager is among the most complete programs of its type on the market today" SOFTALK, Dec. 1982

Apple II version - 2700 items (dual drive) or 1200 items (single drive) **$150.**
IBM PC version - 2700 items **$150.**

LEGAL BILLING

Very friendly and complete legal billing system. Allows a great deal of user control.

- **Prints customized statements**
- **Prints aging reports**
- **Up to 200 clients**
- **Up to 4000 transactions**
- **Includes Trust Accounts**
- **User designated codes**
- **Automatic interest added**

Apple II or IBM PC version - $350.

Available at your dealer or order directly from:

SATORI SOFTWARE

5507 Woodlawn N.
Seattle, WA 98103
(206) 633-1469

The terms transmission medium (plural media) and bus are commonly used synonyms for data path. The word bus appears in other contexts as well; the IBM pc system bus, for example, is the data path by which the 8088 processor communicates with RAM and with I/O devices attached to the pc.

The term server refers to any device that interfaces a non- or semi-intelligent peripheral to the network. The most common of these devices are disk servers (also known as file servers), print servers, and modem servers (also known as communications servers). And, as mentioned before, the IBM pcs included in an LAN are commonly called workstations, particularly in an office automation context.

The body of rules allowing an orderly, reliable transfer of data among all the network devices is known as a protocol.

The terms transparent and virtual are often used in discussions of local area networks. A process is transparent if it exists but does not appear to; a process is virtual if it doesn't exist but appears to. For example, a virtual memory process writes text to a floppy drive when the RAM text buffer overflows; a word processor operator enjoying the use of virtual memory may not know when internal memory has been used up. Another use for the term virtual is illustrated by the single-CPU multiuser installation shown in figure 2. That combination of terminal, RAM segment, and CPU time slice for a single user forms a virtual workstation.

LAN data movement is a good example of transparency: It obviously occurs, but how it occurs is not apparent to the LAN user.

The term throughput refers to a measure that describes the quantity of useful data that can be moved by a local area network in a given time interval. Contrast this with the term data rate, which merely means the rate of speed at which data moves on a network.

The term multiuser, in this discussion, refers to configurations of several users sharing a common CPU, central memory, and set of I/O devices. The term could, of course, also describe a local area network, but we'll restrict its meaning here in order to distinguish single-CPU setups from LANs.

Multitasking is the sharing of a single CPU by more than one process; the term concurrent is sometimes used as a synonym for multitasking.

One more term: direct memory access (DMA). This is an important concept, because direct memory access is commonly used in local area networks. Simply stated, direct memory access allows input/output devices to conduct data transfers directly to RAM, without CPU intervention. In the context of local area networks, the I/O device is the pc's network adapter card, which contains the logic chips necessary to conduct DMA data transfers. DMA is a prerequisite for the high-speed operations typical of local area networks.

High-Speed Data Movement. One of the major factors characterizing local area networks, as you already know, is the speed at which data moves on the network. Table 1 contrasts the speed of a one megabit per second LAN with speeds of other forms of data movement to and from, or within, an IBM pc. The important thing to notice here is that the speed of network data movement is on the same order of magnitude as that of data movement within a computer (that is, when you take into account the fact that parallel transfers use eight data lines simultaneously).

The fact that internal data transfers occur even a little faster than data transfers across the network, however, necessitates the buffering, or temporary storage, of data on its way into the network. It is the job of the network adapter card to compensate for data-rate and throughput mismatches.

As you'll note in table 1, the Ethernet protocol allows a considerably faster rate of data flow than other systems; this is a topic to which we'll return in a subsequent article.

Network Data Movement (Data Structure). Since the network shown in figure 1 must distribute processing and data-storage tasks among a number of users who may require near-simultaneous access to the network, data flow must be structured in a controlled manner. Control implies an orderly means of allowing each device access; it also implies a degree of service that allows data to arrive at its destination virtually error-free and in the same sequence it was transmitted.

A prerequisite to logical network control is the placement of data streams into formatted packets, which are then transmitted in accordance with network protocol.

The demands on a local area network system follow the irregular patterns of individual-user processing requirements. The irregularity, or randomness, of data transmission associated with these demands constitutes a form of data transfer called bursty communications. Network speeds are designed so that system demands, such as requests for file access, are fulfilled with no apparent delay attributable to the network itself. This type of system design, incorporating random bursts of data packets traveling at high speeds, is in stark contrast to what usually happens on modem network communication systems. Communications over a modem network are limited by the low-speed capability of that network; thus

Transfer Type	Operation	Typical Maximum speed (megabits/sec)
Serial	Network data flow	1.0/10.0*
Parallel	RAM read/write	9.5
Parallel	DMA transfer	9.5
Parallel	Processor-initiated I/O	7.6
Parallel	Hard disk I/O	6.5–8.0
Parallel	Floppy disk I/O	0.25
Serial	Multiuser terminal (RS-232)	0.0192
Serial	Modem at 1200 baud (RS-232)	0.0012

**Ethernet*

Table 1. Data transfer rate comparison

SPF/PC™

NO IBM computer, large or small, is complete without SPF. The IBM/PC is no exception.

SPF/PC, a full-screen editor with integrated utilities, is the answer for the PC.

It looks and works like IBM's large system editor ISPF.

- SPF/PC can use up to 786K of memory as workspace.
- Word processing commands.
- 4-way scrolling.
- Split screen support.
- On-line help facility.
- Monochrome or color support.
- Instantaneous screen display.
- Block Move/Copy/Repeat/Delete/Overlay/Shift

And much more . . .

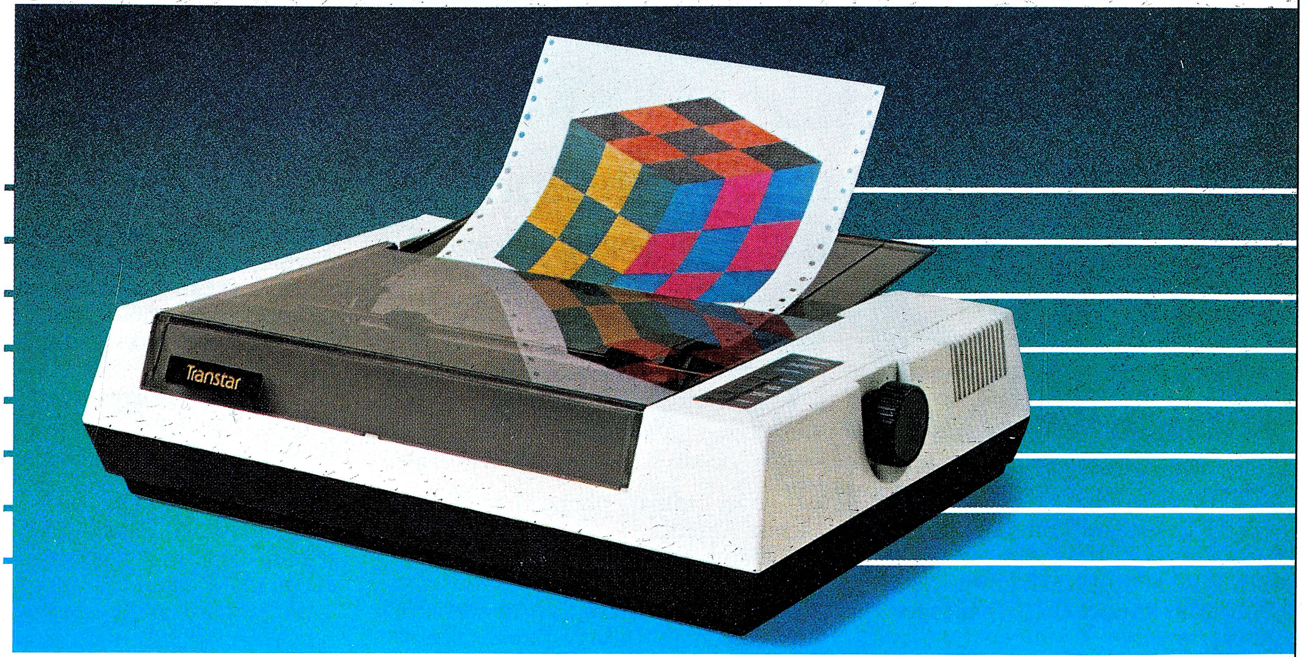
$99.95 Mastercard/Visa, Check, or P.O. accepted. Add $5.00 for shipping.

For orders and dealer information write or call Rogue River Software, 2822 Tahitian Ave., Medford, OR 97501, (503) 779-3002.

SPF/PC is a trademark of Rogue River Software.
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.

Innovative technology brings you quality color printing

for only $599



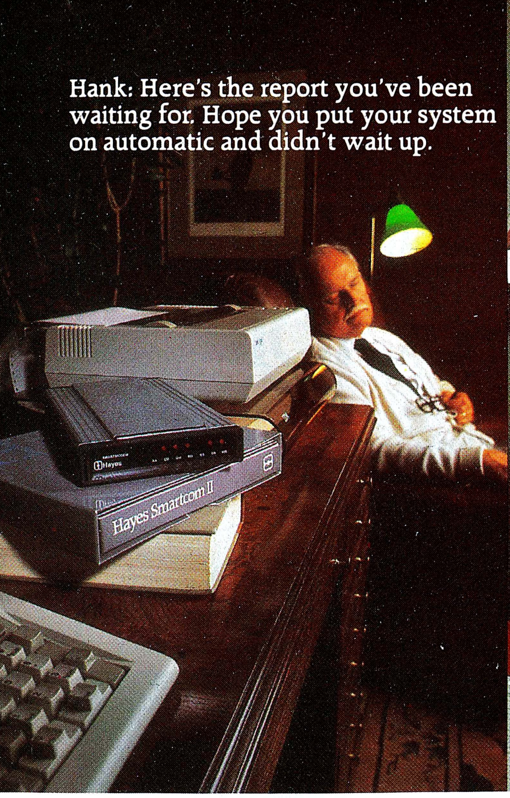
The technology of the all-new Transtar 315 color printer revolutionizes color impact printing! Unlike old-fashioned printers needing multiple passes with pins to print color, the Transtar 315 employs an innovative 4-hammer print head to allow 7 colors and more than 30 shades to be printed in a **single pass**!

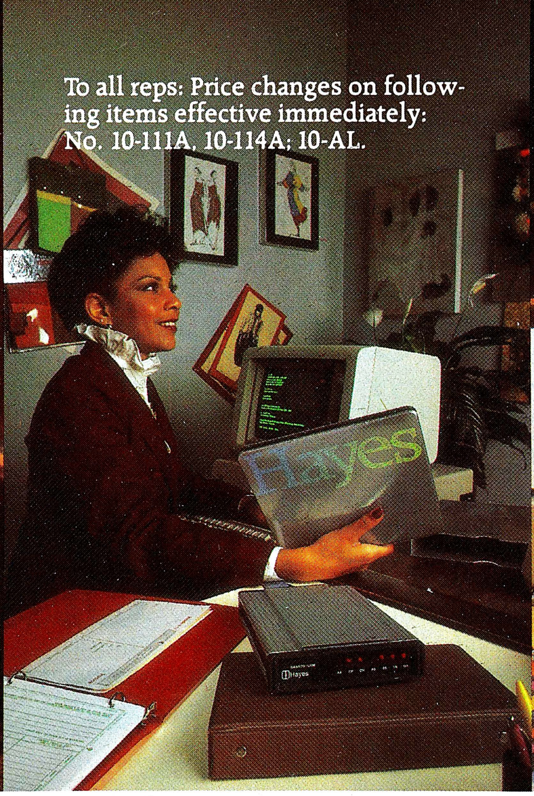
A unique 4-color diagonal ribbon maximizes the efficiency of the 315's color imaging and enhances its simple reliability. Built by Seikosha, the most experienced manufacturing company of the famous Seiko group, the Transtar 315 is **available now** and has been designed to be compatible with the IBM, Apple II/IIe and Franklin personal computers. An optional PICS card also allows Apple and Franklin users to simply depress the 315's "copy" button to print any high- or low-resolution screen without exiting a program!

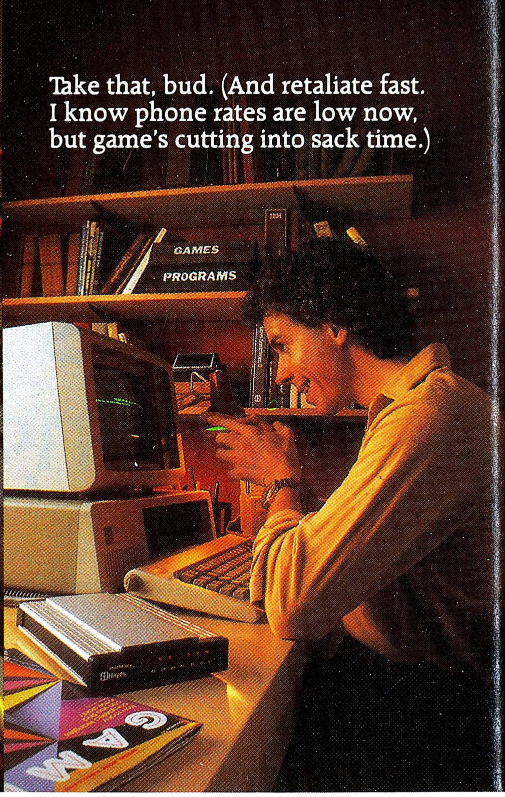
Transtar is bringing the technology of tomorrow to you today. **Your future in color printing is only $599 away.**

Transtar

P.O. Box C-96975, Bellevue, Washington 98009


Hank: Here's the report you've been waiting for. Hope you put your system on automatic and didn't wait up.
Hayes Smartcom II


To all reps: Price changes on following items effective immediately: No. 10-111A, 10-114A; 10-AL.
Hayes


Take that, bud. (And retaliate fast. I know phone rates are low now, but game's cutting into sack time.)
GAMES
PROGRAMS

Hayes Your computer's telephone.

Wouldn't it be great if, somehow, you could connect your computer to your accountant's, down the street? To the IBM** PC at the branch office, upstate? Or to your favorite chess challenger, across country?

SMARTMODEM
Hayes

With a telecomputing system by Hayes, you can.

Quickly. Easily. And for the price of a phone call.

Hayes Smartmodem. Think of it as your computer's telephone. Hayes Smartmodem 300, and the faster Smartmodem 1200, work with any computer with an RS-232 I/O port. They allow you to communicate, over ordinary phone lines, all across America.

But any modem will send and receive data.

Smartmodems also dial, answer and disconnect calls. Automatically. Without going through the telephone receiver, making them far superior to acoustic coupler modems.

Choose your speed; choose your price. The lower-priced Smartmodem 300 is ideal for local data swaps and communicates at 300 bps. For longer distance and larger volumes, Smartmodem 1200 communicates at 1200 bps or up to 300 bps, with a built-in selector that automatically detects transmission speeds.

Both work with rotary dials, Touch-Tone* and key-set systems; connect to most timesharing systems; and feature an audio speaker.

Either Smartmodem is a perfect match for many different computers. And if you have an IBM PC, Hayes also provides the perfect communications software.

Smartcom II.™ We spent a lot of time developing our software, so you can spend less time using it. Smartcom II prompts you in the simple steps required to create, send, receive, display, list, name and re-name files. It even receives data completely unattended—especially helpful when you're sending work from home to office, or vice versa.

And if you need it, there's always "help." One of several special functions assigned to IBM function keys, this feature explains prompts, messages, etc. to make communicating extra easy.

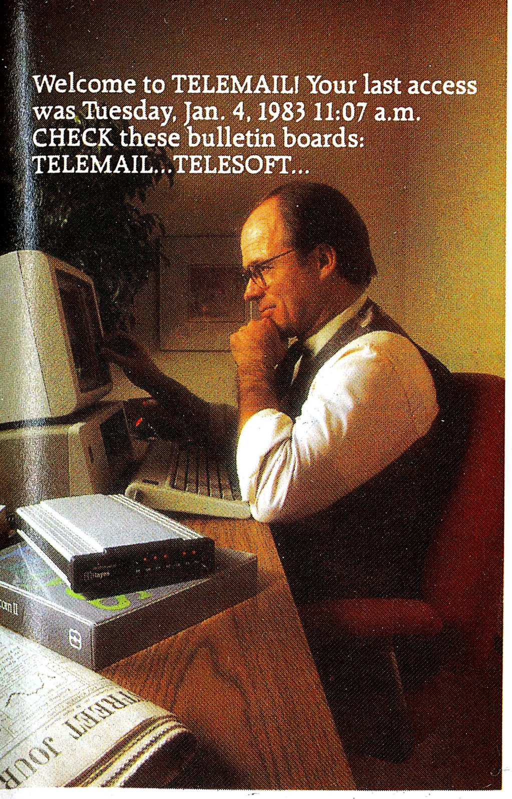
With Smartcom II, it is. The program remembers communication parameters for 26 different remote systems. Just punch a key, you're all set.

You can treat dial-up and log-on sequences the same way. In fact, Smartcom II comes with codes already set up for four popular information services. COMPUSERVE,® DIALOG'S KNOWLEDGE INDEX,℠ DOW JONES NEWS/RETRIEVAL® SERVICE, and THE SOURCE,℠ AMERICA'S INFORMATION UTILITY.℠ Procedures for obtaining an account with each of the services are included in the Smartcom II manual. But that's not all.

Hayes®

Special offers for Smartcom II owners! Dow Jones News/Retrieval Service has a special introductory offer for Smartcom II owners. By calling a toll-free number, they receive a free password and one free hour of service anytime after 6:01 p.m., local time.

You'll also be entitled to a valuable


Welcome to TELEMAIL! Your last access was Tuesday, Jan. 4, 1983 11:07 a.m.
CHECK these bulletin boards:
TELEMAIL...TELESOFT...

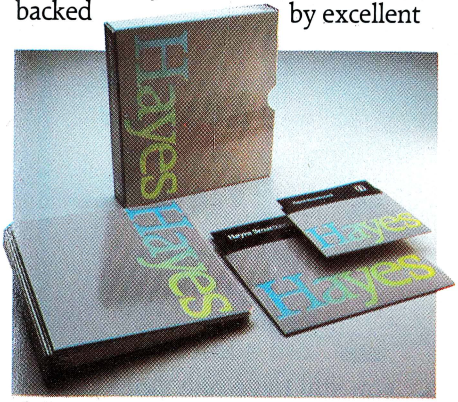
subscription offer for THE SOURCE. Smartcom II owners who subscribe to THE SOURCE will receive one free hour of daytime service.

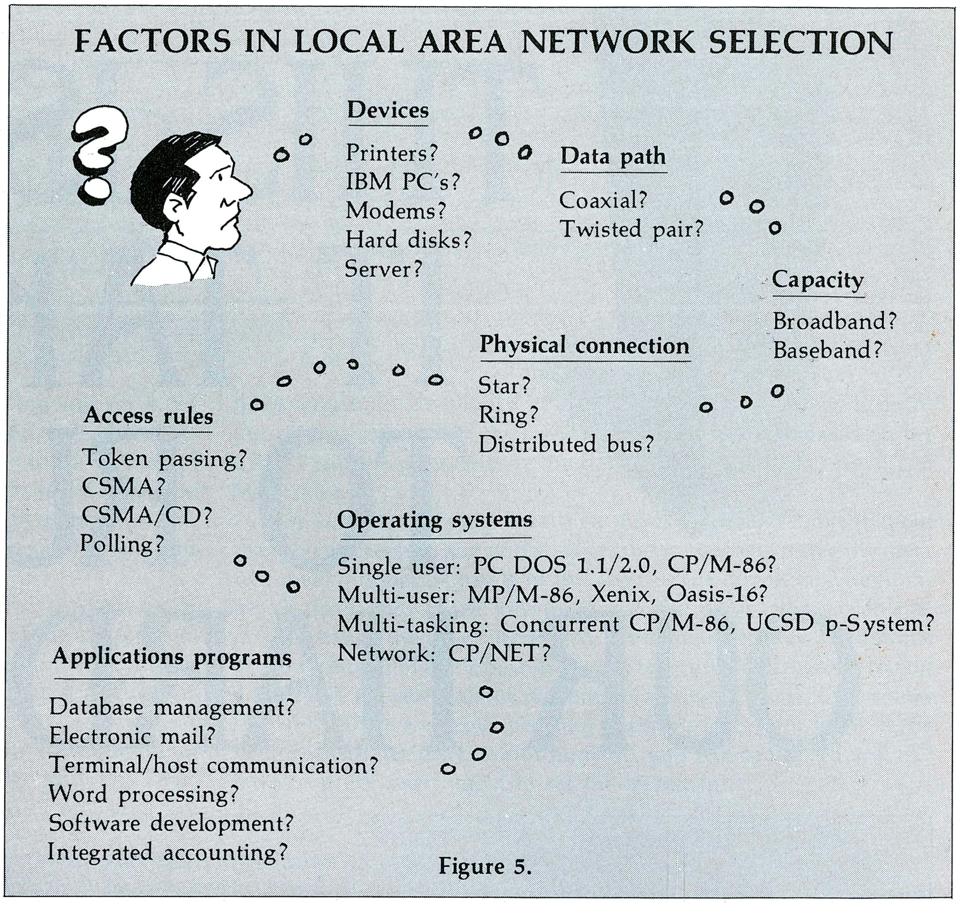
Like all our products, Smartcom II and both Hayes Smartmodems are backed by excellent documentation and full support from us to your dealer.

So see him today. Break out of isolation. Get a telephone for your desktop computer.

Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.,
5923 Peachtree Industrial Blvd.,
Norcross, GA 30092. 404/449-8791.

Smartcom II is a trademark of Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.
*TM American Telephone and Telegraph
**IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Corp.
© 1983 Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.
Sold only in the U.S.A.
COMPUSERVE INFORMATION SERVICE is a registered trademark of CompuServe, Incorporated, an H & R Block Company.
KNOWLEDGE INDEX is a service mark of DIALOG Information Services, Inc.
DOW JONES NEWS/RETRIEVAL is a registered trademark of Dow Jones & Company, Inc.
THE SOURCE and AMERICA'S INFORMATION UTILITY are service marks of Source Telecomputing, a subsidiary of The Reader's Digest Association, Inc.





FACTORS IN LOCAL AREA NETWORK SELECTION

Devices

Printers?
IBM PC's?
Modems?
Hard disks?
Server?

Data path

Coaxial?
Twisted pair?

Capacity

Broadband?
Baseband?

Physical connection

Star?
Ring?
Distributed bus?

Access rules

Token passing?
CSMA?
CSMA/CD?
Polling?

Operating systems

Single user: PC DOS 1.1/2.0, CP/M-86?
Multi-user: MP/M-86, Xenix, Oasis-16?
Multi-tasking: Concurrent CP/M-86, UCSD p-System?
Network: CP/NET?

Applications programs

Database management?
Electronic mail?
Terminal/host communication?
Word processing?
Software development?
Integrated accounting?

Figure 5.

modem network sessions tend to be continuous in nature and typically last for at least several minutes, tying up a communication channel for the duration of the connection.

LANs and Distributed Processing. Once a local area network is physically assembled and the communications rules are established, some interesting challenges present themselves. These concern the concepts and rules by which the shared resources will operate.

One obvious problem concerns access to the hard disk drive: Which user has priority and how are multiple requests to access data from the same open file or files arbitrated? The answers lie more in how the accompanying software (the operating system or applications program) is designed than in the mechanics of data movement from point to point on the network.

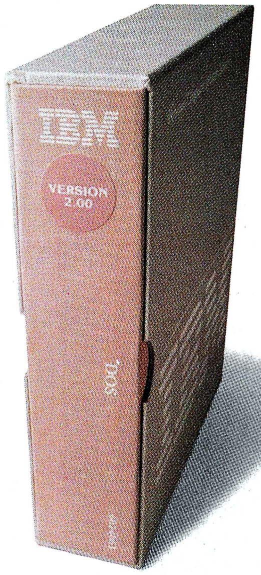
One popular way of handling the matter is to partition the hard disk drive and assign a segment to each specific user. Each segment can contain several files, which will then be accessed just as a user accesses floppy disk files. We'll refer to such segments as volumes and consider them logically equivalent to floppy disks.

Another design challenge in local area networks is the handling of requests for floppy disk or printer access from the network while the pc workstation to which these devices are attached is in use by its operator. This situation is best handled by interfacing the network to multitasking or multiuser operating systems on the host pc; examples of these operating systems are Concurrent CP/M-86, MP/M-86, or the UCSD p-System. Existing solutions range from not allowing local use of a pc when it provides a shared device to not using a pc for attaching such shared resources. Prospective users should investigate carefully the operating systems that a particular network will support, as well as any restrictions in the use of a network pc as a shared resource.

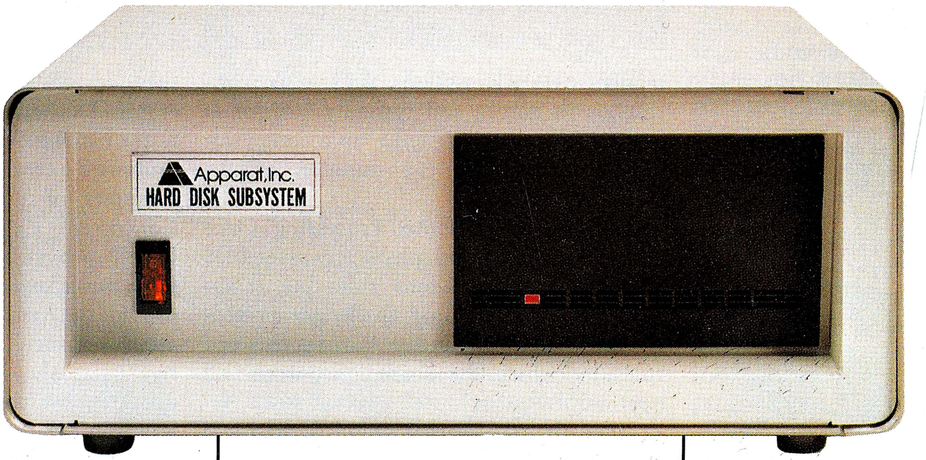
Obviously there are a good many considerations that go into the choice of a local-area-network configuration. Some of the key decisions concern the operating system or systems to be used, the design of applications programs to exploit the power of local networking, the amount of mass storage to include, and the need for modems and modem network resources. Another—more fundamental—decision must be made by the cost-conscious business user: whether to use an LAN at all or to go with a multiterminal, multiuser, single-CPU system.

The relevant variables to consider in selecting a local area network are summarized in figure 5.

Next month's installment will take up the subjects of capacity, types of physical connection, and access rules.—Ed. ▲



THIS IS ALL IT TAKES TO RUN OUR HARD DISK.



Compatibility. A lot of manufacturers talk about it. Mostly, compatibility is defined as something that almost works like the original. Our hard disk sub-system for the IBM PC runs on 2.0 without modifications, patches or use of device drivers. Just boot 2.0 and run.

And we haven't cut back on reliability either. The Apparat hard disk uses the Xebec controller and connects via a host interface module to one of the slots in your PC. The HIM also contains an RS-232 serial async port for use with a mouse, modem, etc. Even with compatibility and reliability built in, we've managed to provide some very competitive pricing. The 10 and 30 megabyte drives are priced at **$1,995** and **$3,395** respectively.

When you use a multifunction RAM Card, such as the Apparat Combo II (with up to 512K of RAM, RS232, parallel printer, clock calendar, and game adapter) along with the HIM, floppy disk controller and CRT monitor adapter cards in your PC, you still have one slot available for future expansion.

If you're considering a fixed disk for your IBM PC, look at all the systems available. Look for compatibility. Look for reliability. Look for value. We think you'll pick ours.

For more information or to order yours call **800/525-7674** or write Apparat, Inc., 4401 S. Tamarac Parkway, Denver, CO 80237, 303/741-1778.

IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machine Corp.

Prices and specifications subject to change without notice.

Apparat, Inc.

THE BASIC SOLUTION

BY JOE JUHASZ

Most video games get the player involved in moving some object about the screen. This movement is usually controlled by a joystick. You can hook up a joystick to the IBM Personal Computer, but you must first purchase a game adapter. For those wishing to do a little game programming without the game adapter, we offer this month some Basic code to allow you to control an object by means of the pc's cursor keys.

There are four cursor keys on the IBM keyboard. We'll create four more to allow us diagonal movement as well as the usual north, south, east, and west. The diagonal moves will be controlled by the corner keys on the number pad. Finally we'll include a mechanism for controlling the distance, or move increment.

Advanced Basic is capable of trapping the four standard cursor keys by means of the *on key(n)* statement. Our diagonal cursor keys, however, cannot be trapped in this manner, so we'll create a little input routine to examine the keystrokes; this routine is based on the CKkey routine presented in the Basic Solution, *Softalk*, April and May 1983.

For our example we'll draw a *Pac-Man* figure and move it about the screen. Pressing any of the eight cursor keys will move the creature a set number of pixels in the appropriate direction. The number of pixels moved per keystroke is controlled by the variable *X*.

To change the move increment, press the insert key and hit one of the number keys (it's best to use the top-row number keys so you don't have to worry about the numlock toggle). Increment values from 0 to 10 are available; pressing 0 sets the increment to 10. If the key pressed after insert is not numeric, you will be beeped and will have to press insert again to set the increment.

```
100 '***---General Housekeeping---***
110 DEFINT A-Z                                    '-Make all variables integers
120 KEY OFF: FOR I=1 TO 10: KEY I,"": NEXT        '-Turn off function keys
130 GOSUB 450                                     '-Switch monitors
```

StarLogic Announces Savings on IBM PC Compatible Disk Drives

5¼" Winchester Disk Subsystems from Interface Inc

Includes Winchester disk drive, cabinet, power supply, cable, controller, I/O adapter, and software (JEL) for 1.1 DOS.

5 megabyte Winchester disk drive	$1375.00
10 megabyte Winchester disk drive	$1575.00
15 megabyte Winchester disk drive	$1775.00

Tandon Internal 5¼" floppy drives

Standard sized drive plug-compatible with IBM PC

Single-sided drive—160K bytes	$165.00
Double-sided drive—320K bytes	$235.00
Double-sided drive—650K bytes	$315.00

(includes software patch to 1.1 DOS

IBM PC XT Disk Drives from Interface Inc

Dual floppy disk drives each with 362K bytes storage; both drives mount in "A" position	$ 450.00
10 Megabyte Winchester Subsystem Slave compatible with IBM DOS 2.0	$1095.00

Add-on external drives from Interface Inc

Includes 5¼" floppy disk drive, cabinet, power supply and cable.

Standard sized 5¼" drives

Single-sided drive—160K bytes	$235.00
Double-sided drive—320K bytes	$305.00
Double-sided drive—650K bytes	$385.00

(Includes software patch to 1.1 DOS)

Half-height ThinLine 5¼" drives

Double-sided drive—320K bytes	$285.00
Double-sided drive—650K bytes	$365.00

(Includes software patch to 1.1 DOS)

Telephone Orders Only
MasterCard, VISA or
Cashier's Check COD
(213) 883-0587

StarLogic
20932 Cantara St.
Canoga Park, CA 91301

All storage capacities are IBM Format
IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation
ThinLine is a trademark of Tandon Corporation
JEL is a product of Tall Tree Systems
Prices are subject to change without notice

```
140   COLOR 17,0                                              '-Set background and palette
150   GOSUB 530                                               '-Initialization
160   GOSUB 760                                               '-Draw original picture
170  '
180  '***---get & test a keystroke---***
190   CK$=INKEY$:                    IF CK$=“” GOTO 190       '-Wait for a keystroke
200   IF ASC(CK$) <> 0          THEN BEEP: GOTO 190           '-We want a two-byte scan code
210   TCKI = ASC(RIGHT$(CK$,1))
220   IF TCKI>82 OR TCKI<71 THEN BEEP: GOTO 190               '-We want cursor or <Ins>
230  '
240  '***---process keystroke---***
250   IF TCKI<>82 GOTO 310                                    '-If not<Ins> then a cursor
260   '**-- <Ins>  key
270     CK$=INKEY$: IF CK$=“” GOTO 270                        '-Wait for next key
280     IF CK$<“0” OR CK$>“9” THEN BEEP: GOTO 190             '-We want a digit
290     IF CK$=“0” THEN INC=10 ELSE INC=VAL(CK$)              '-If 0 then make 10
300 GOTO 190                                                  '-Go get next key
310   CKEY=TCKI−70                                            '-Get cursor key #
320   GOSUB 340                                               '-Go process cursor key
330 GOTO 190                                                  '-Get next key
340 '***---set to move cursor---***
350   X.LOC=X.LOC+X.INC(CKEY)*INC                             '-Move in X direction
360   Y.LOC=Y.LOC+Y.INC(CKEY)*INC                             '-Move in Y direction
370   '*-if move would take off screen then ignore-*
380   IF X.LOC<X.MIN OR Y.LOC<Y.MIN OR X.LOC>X.MAX OR Y.LOC >Y.MAX THEN X.LOC=X.LST: Y.LOC=Y.LST: BEEP:
      GOTO 190
390   '*-erase old cursor
400   PUT (X.LST,Y.LST),PIC.ARRAY, XOR
410   '*-move cursor
420   PUT (X.LOC,Y.LOC),PIC.ARRAY,XOR
430   X.LST=X.LOC: Y.LST=Y.LOC                                '-Save current location
440 RETURN
450 '<==================== Switch to Color Graphics Monitor =====================>
460   DEF SEG=0: I=PEEK(&H410): POKE &H410,(I AND &HCF) OR &H20
470   WIDTH 40: LOCATE ,,0,6,7
480   SCREEN 0: SCREEN 1,0: COLOR 1,1
490   CLS
500 RETURN
510 '
520 '<============================================================>
530 '***---Initialization---***
540    TRUE=−1: FALSE=0
550    INC=1                                                  '-Start INC at 1 pixel
560   '* ------------------------------*
570   '*-  Define cursor keys and <Inc>  -*
580   '*-                                -*
590   '*- get second-byte scan code from  -*
600   '*- Appendix G−7                    -*
610   '*-                                -*
620   '*- X.INC, Y.INC set up to hold the -*
630   '*- increment in each direction.    -*
640   '* ------------------------------*
650   FOR I=1 TO 9: READ FKEY.A1(I): NEXT
660      DATA 71, 72, 73, 75, 77, 79, 80, 81, 82
670   DIM X.INC(11), Y.INC(11)
680   FOR I=1 TO 11: READ X.INC(I), Y.INC(I): NEXT
690     DATA −1, −1, 0, −1, +1, −1
700     DATA 0, 0, −1, 0, 0, 0
710     DATA 1, 0, 0, 0, −1, 1
720     DATA 0, +1, +1, +1
730   DIM PIC.ARRAY(600)                       '-Array to hold object being moved
740 RETURN
750 '
760 '***---draw original picture---***
770   CLS
780   PI=3.141593
790   CIRCLE (100,100),12,2,−.5*PI/2,−1.8*PI       'Draw Pac-Man
800   PAINT (95,100),2,2                           'Paint him in
810   PSET (98,94),3: PSET (102,94),3              'Draw his eyes
820   '**-- Set upper left-hand corner of picture
830   X.LOC=88: Y.LOC=88: X.LST=X.LOC: Y.LST=Y.LOC
840   '**-- Set height and width of picture
850   X.WIDTH=24:              Y.HEIGHT=24
860   X.MIN=1:                 Y.MIN=1
870   X.MAX=319−X.WIDTH: Y.MAX=199−Y.HEIGHT
880   '**-- Get picture --**
890   GET (X.LOC,Y.LOC)−(X.LOC+X.WIDTH,Y.LOC+Y.HEIGHT),PIC.ARRAY
900 RETURN
```

▲

You Deserve The BEST

FIXED ASSET SYSTEM

PC/FAS is an easy-to-use record-keeping system that makes it simple for you to have complete and accurate records of your property and equipment for the IRS, state and local governments, insurance companies, and your business auditors.

PC/FAS automatically calculates ACRS and five other types of depreciation and investment tax credits needed for you to get the full value from new, lucrative depreciation tax laws.

Its wide selection of reports gives you complete management information on up to 99,999 owned or leased items of property or equipment in your office, plant, home or fleet. **PC/FAS** reports on each item by location, custodian, date, vendor, manufacturer, etc.

PERSONAL FINANCE PROGRAM

PC/PFP is the **Best** cash management system for your business or home for only $95.00. This best-selling program is exciting because it shows you through a large choice of pre-formatted reports, bar graphs, and on-the-screen displays where your money comes from and where it goes. Businesses have found the precise, easily accessible, and complete summaries and reports of all receipts and income are invaluable management tools that can easily **(and less expensively)** be transformed by CPA's into tax reports, income statements, and balance sheets.

HERE'S WHAT OUR REVIEWERS SAY:

"Best Program's PC/PFP is first class all the way. Any company looking to sell to the personal computer market should take Best's whole package as a model—this is the way it should be done. Best Programs offers a superior package in all respects. Best is best of this lot."
Corey Sandler PC Magazine, Vol. 1, No. 10

"Well-documented . . . program runs smoothly, and always presents clear, easy-to-understand prompts. Functionally, PC/PFP is complete. The program is well done and a good value."
Will Fastie Creative Computing, January 1983

"My overall impression of PC/PFP is a good one . . . suits the needs of a great number of people who want simple, straightforward help in their personal finances."
Cliff Smith, C.P.A. Capital PC Users Group Monitor

WE LOVE TO READ OUR MAIL . . . YOU WOULD TOO!

"Brilliant software! Why? Because its simple. Covers all needed uses. You deserve much credit as everything is so well planned out. Price is most attractive."
Mr. Erwin Jackson, Jr. Charlotte, North Carolina

"I consider PFP to be one of the finest programs for the IBM PC."
Barry N. Parsley, M.D. Lexington, Kentucky

"I have bought programs since 1977 and I can unequivocably say that PC/PFP is the best buy for the money I have ever made. Please keep developing programs. The industry needs your high standards, and your reasonable prices."
Mr. James Gore Creskill, NJ

"The program works well and is easy to use. The newsletter is good and I must say the level of customer support couldn't be better."
Lorne Sheren, M.D. Staten Island, NY

"Your User Report is hot . . . support from software publishers is a welcome help."
Michael Truffer Deltona, Florida

The Quality Software Company

BEST PROGRAMS

5134 Leesburg Pike, Alexandria, VA 22302 (703) 931-1300

NEW VERSION

FileMaster™ 2.0

a high performance, low cost data management system

Do you want:

- ★ Organized Information
- ★ Better utilization of your computer
- ★ Easy to use programs

Do you need:

- ★ A variety of data stored
- ★ Several different reports from your data
- ★ Customer Lists, Personnel Lists, Client Lists
- ★ All this without programming

With FileMaster:

- ★ Create files with user defined descriptions
  - — 32 files
  - — 36 fields
  - — 65 characters/alpha or 16 characters/numeric
- ★ Sort and/or Select records on any field/fields
- ★ Select records with comprehensive selection criteria
- ★ Print columnar reports
- ★ Print mailing labels
- ★ Subtotal and Total report columns
- ★ Print reports on screen or printer
- ★ Interchange DIF (VISICALC®) files

FileMaster can be used for a wide range of applications. Ease of use features include uncrowded screens and single character commands. FileMaster's simplicity and function provide performance and productivity.

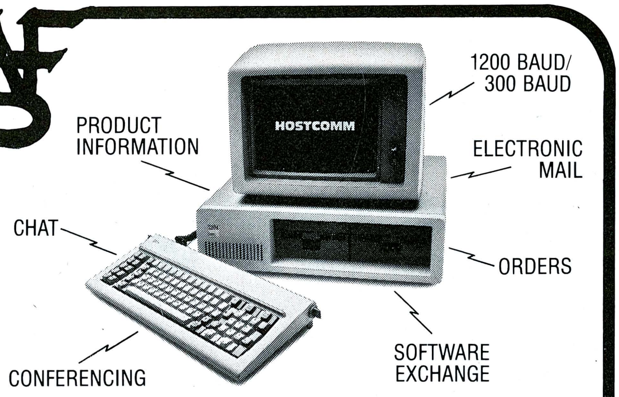
All you need to Master information on your IBM PC.

Minimum System — 96K, 80 Column CRT, 1 Diskette Drive (2 preferred)

Only $125.00

Trademark of Data Base Decisions

N. F. SYSTEMS, LTD.
P. O. BOX 76363, ATLANTA, GA 30358
404-252-4146—DATA 404-252-3302—VOICE
Add $2.50 Postage & Handling
MASTERCARD/VISA *CATALOG AVAILABLE*



HOSTCOMM

by JANADON

The Complete Host Communications System for The IBM Personal Computer

★ FEATURES

- ★ Full upload/download facility for ASCII files
- ★ Automatic 300/1200 baud operation
- ★ Three level password protection, full operator support
- ★ Run BASIC programs remotely from terminal or computer
- ★ Use as a personal communication system
- ★ Easy to set-up, unattended operation

$170.00

ADD-ON FEATURES FOR HOSTCOMM

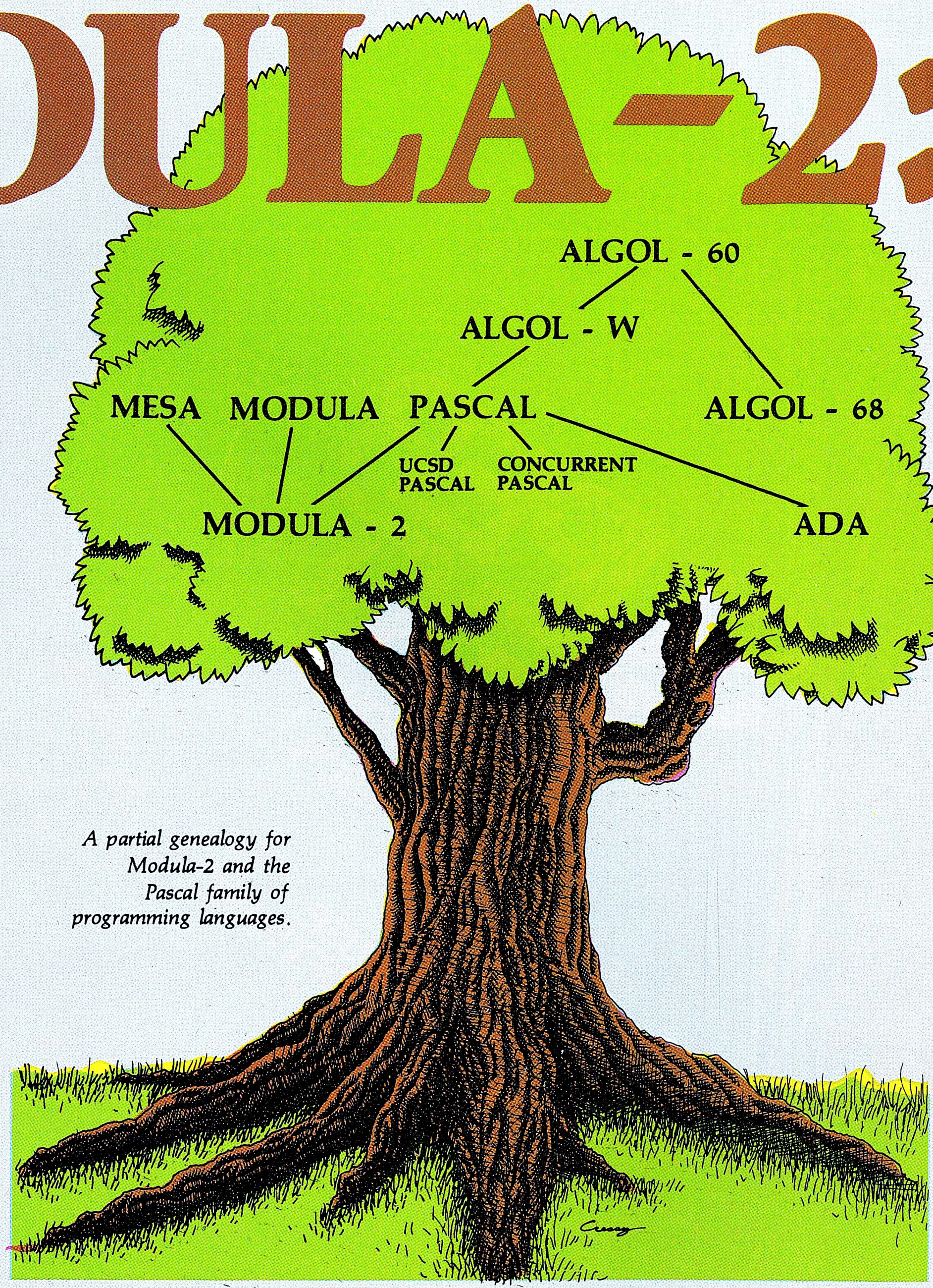
PCE-MAIL — Allow users to leave messages and correspondence for others. Password required. Extensive help files are provided.	**$80.00**
CONFERENCING — Make your host the most popular in town. Choose 12 topics for discussion. Both PCE-MAIL and CONFERENCING can use the same menu.	**$80.00**
HOSTCOMM UTILITIES I — A series of 4 programs to help the Sysop maintain the system. Compute transmission times, alter menus, track files.	**$49.95**
HOSTCOMM UTILITIES II — Programs to allow users to switch download directories and to examine and/or list system files.	**$49.95**
ORDERTRANS — Provide callers with information about your products and services, giving them the ability to order online. A must for Retailers.	**$39.95**

★ MINIMUM SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- ★ 128 K System unit, 320 KB Diskette Storage (1 or 2 drives)
- ★ PC DOS 1.0 or 1.1
- ★ Video display (40 or 80 characters)
- ★ Asynchronous communications adapter, printer
- ★ Hayes Smartmodem 300 or 1200™

N. F. SYSTEMS, LTD.
P. O. BOX 76363, ATLANTA, GA 30358
404-252-4146—DATA 404-252-3302—VOICE
Add $2.50 Postage & Handling
MASTERCARD/VISA *CATALOG AVAILABLE*

MODULA-2: ALTERNATIVE TO ADA?



A partial genealogy for Modula-2 and the Pascal family of programming languages.

by Allen Munro

Even as hardware costs plummet, the price of software soars. Some highly specialized software packages for computers of the IBM pc class already cost more than the machines they run on. Pundits have long predicted that computers would some day be included at no extra charge with the purchase of software packages; now that day has arrived. MicroPro International has announced that purchasers of the Apple II version of *WordStar* will be given a free Z-80 coprocessor with its own 64K memory bank.

The precipitous decline of hardware prices is cause for rejoicing among personal computer users, but cheap hardware alone is of no value without useful and affordable software. What can be done to put the brakes on runaway software development costs?

A new programming language, Modula-2, offers hope for improving productivity in software production.

For a time it was thought that program generators would facilitate lower-cost software development. Program generators are complex programs that query users about their new applications and then generate code to meet their needs. Examples of program generators include last year's much-advertised *The Last One*. Thus far, the hopes for program generators have not been realized. Some program generators seem reasonably well suited to the requirements of a limited-application environment, but they haven't proven to be a general solution to the programming productivity problem.

Other efforts to reduce the cost of software focus on the design of superior programming languages. Languages, like computers, must be designed. Different language designs can have the effect of enhancing different features of the programs written in those languages. Some designs enhance execution speed; others place minimal demands on system memory; still others encourage rapid program design and coding. Some languages include constructs that simplify types of applications (such as those that employ interrupt-driven coprocesses) that may be difficult or impossible to write in other high-level languages.

Several language design features can be expected to lower software costs. These include the following:

Ease with which the language can be learned. Easier-to-learn languages should attract more programmers. There should be a smaller education or training cost to be amortized over the programmer's career with the language.

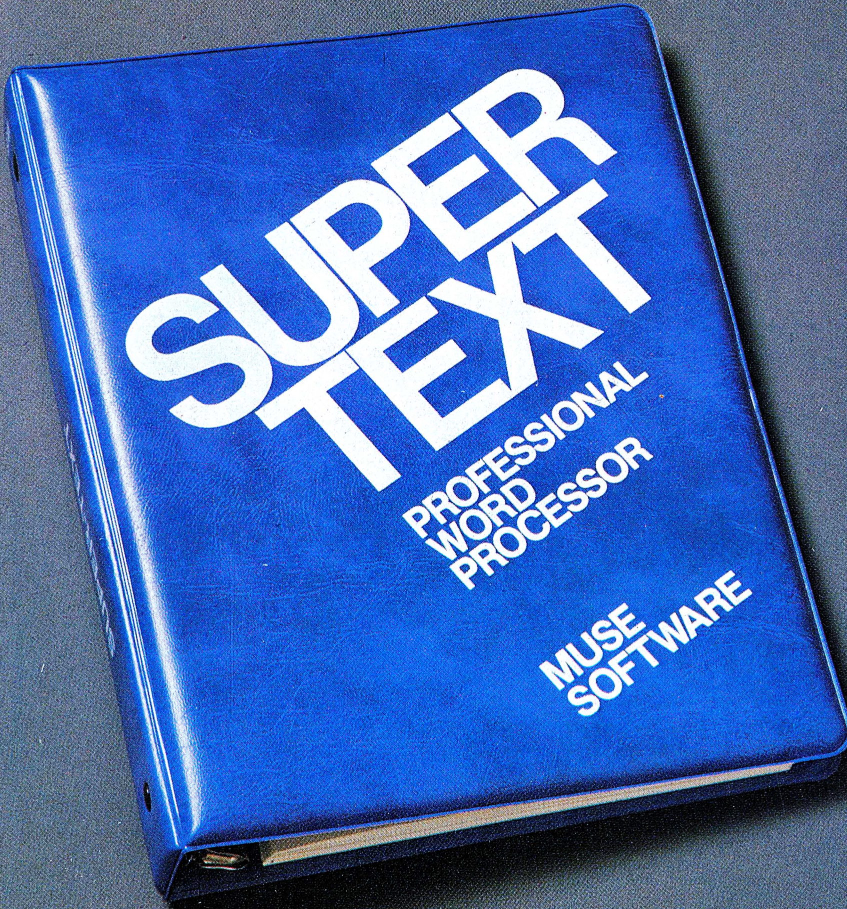
Encouragement of correct programming. Certain language features have a strong bearing on whether a program will work as intended. For example, those languages permitting a variable normally used to hold integer values to be casually assigned a character value instead make it easy for bugs to creep into programs.

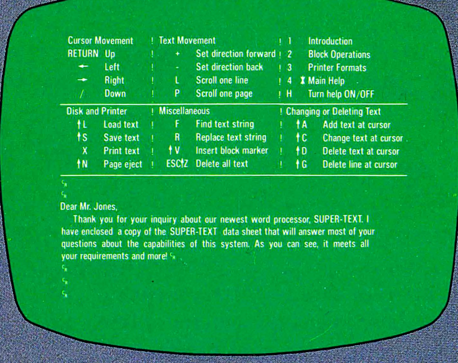
Transportability. Face it, even the IBM pc will eventually seem obsolete to us all. Will our software investment also be obsolete? Not if it can be readily transported to the

---

Dr. Allen Munro is assistant director of Behavioral Technology Laboratories at the University of Southern California.

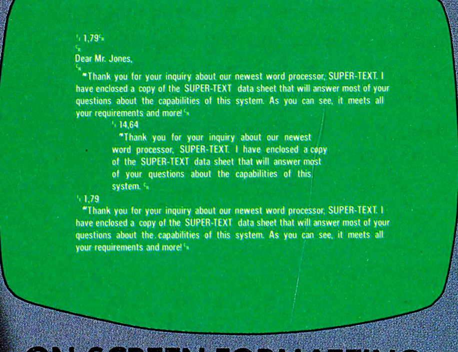
SUPER-TEXT Professional does everything the competition does, except one thing.





```
Cursor Movement    ! Text Movement                 ! 1    Introduction
RETURN  Up         !    +   Set direction forward  ! 2    Block Operations
  ←     Left       !    -   Set direction back     ! 3    Printer Formats
  →     Right      !    L   Scroll one line        ! 4  ⧗ Main Help
  /     Down       !    P   Scroll one page        ! H    Turn help ON/OFF
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Disk and Printer   ! Miscellaneous                 ! Changing or Deleting Text
  ↑L    Load text  !    F   Find text string       !   ↑A   Add text at cursor
  ↑S    Save text  !    R   Replace text string    !   ↑C   Change text at cursor
   X    Print text !   ↑V   Insert block marker    !   ↑D   Delete text at cursor
  ↑N    Page eject !  ESC↑Z Delete all text        !   ↑G   Delete line at cursor
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
␍
␍
Dear Mr. Jones,
   Thank you for your inquiry about our newest word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I
have enclosed  a copy of the SUPER-TEXT  data sheet that will answer most of your
questions about the capabilities of this system. As you can see, it meets all
your requirements and more! ␍
␍
␍
␍
```

ON-LINE "HELP"



```
1,79␍
␍
Dear Mr. Jones,
␍
  "Thank you for your inquiry about our newest word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I
have enclosed a copy of the SUPER-TEXT  data sheet that will answer most of your
questions about the capabilities of this system. As you can see, it meets all
your requirements and more! ␍
          14,64
            "Thank you for your inquiry about our newest
          word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I have enclosed a copy
          of the SUPER-TEXT data sheet that will answer most
          of your questions about the capabilities of this
          system. ␍
1,79
  "Thank you for your inquiry about our newest word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I
have enclosed a copy of the SUPER-TEXT  data sheet that will answer most of your
questions about the capabilities of this system. As you can see, it meets all
your requirements and more! ␍
```

ON-SCREEN FORMATTING

It doesn't cost nearly as much.

SUPER-TEXT PROFESSIONAL FOR IBM* provides the most powerful word processing features on the market today at a sensible price. Super-Text makes word processing easy. A few of its many features are valuable **On-Screen Formatting**, easy to use **On-Screen Help Reference Guides**, professional **Split-Screen capability**, and **Autolink**.

Super-Text Professional utilizes all of the IBM function keys. It provides automatic page headers and footers, automatic page and chapter numbering, and the Preview Mode allows you to check page endings.

Super-Text provides for easy text editing. Special block operations for text copy, save and delete. Automatic tabbing and formatting plus multi-file search and replace. User definable characters allow you to make full use of most printer functions, including multi-color printing, superscripting and subscripting. Plus Super-Text provides full compatibility with IBM Edlin Files.

This very powerful and easy to use word processor can be yours for only **$175.00**.

*Super-Text requires IBM DOS Version 1.1., minimum 64K. Also available for Apple II+ and Apple IIe.

INTRODUCTORY OFFER! $99.

MUSE®
SOFTWARE
347 North Charles Street, Baltimore, Maryland 21201 301/659-7212

IBM is a registered trademark of IBM, Inc.

next generation of computers.

There are degrees of transportability. Programs written in assembly language typically are not at all transportable. Basic programs can be transported, but only with a significant amount of rewriting, since each computer's Basic differs from every other computer's. Fortran-77 is transportable at the source level; that is, the text version of a program must be recompiled to run on a new computer. UCSD Pascal programs are (ideally, anyway) compatible at the compiled-code level.

Power. A powerful language is one that provides the tools to let the programmer implement a design in a straightforward manner. In some ways the Pascal language, for example, lacks sufficient power. It is possible in Pascal to refer to a specific memory address, but the technique for doing that is elaborate and difficult to understand. A language without sufficient power will either be ignored by the programming community or will be so thoroughly modified in each implementation that it will be represented by a different and incompatible dialect on every machine.

Maintainability. Applications written in some languages are much more easily maintained than programs written in others. To get a feel for the maintainability of programs in a given language, one must ask the question, "How difficult is it likely to be for a programmer who isn't the original author of a moderately large program written in this language to add a new feature to the program?" There are several components to maintainability. One of these is readability. Programs written in Forth or assembly language tend to be less readable than programs written in Pascal.

Modularity. Closely related to maintainability is modularity, or modular organization. Modular programs are those written in discrete chunks, such that the chunks can communicate with each other only in very restricted ways. Because interactions among modules are very strictly controlled, modifications made to one module tend not to generate unexpected bugs in other portions of the program.

Keeping It Simple. An ongoing debate in the design of programming languages centers on the issue of complexity. Language designers must weigh the virtues of simplicity—which promotes rapid learning, program readability, and correctness—against the advantages gained from complex features useful to expert programmers.

Basic is an example of a language that, at least in its original conception, was designed to be simple. That it failed to remain simple as machine-specific dialects evolved was the consequence of its failure to provide many essential features, such as disk I/O. PL/1, on the other hand, is an example of a language that was designed to provide many features, at the price of being complex. Its complexity has had consequences for the employment of system resources, for learning the language, and for the correctness of programs written in the language.

Pascal is an example of a simple structured language. Niklaus Wirth designed it as a teaching language. The advantage of simplicity in Pascal is not, however, just that it can be learned fairly easily. Its clear, comprehensible structure promotes a programming style that reflects the logic of a program's design. This simplicity increases the readability and modifiability of programs written in Pascal.

Pascal is a member of a class of "structured" languages that include Algol, which was developed before Pascal, and Modula-2 and Ada, the successors to Pascal. The goals of structured languages such as Pascal are (1) to help programmers write correct code and (2) to encourage the writing of maintainable programs.

Maintainable programs can be modified by someone other than the original programmer. Maintainability is a very important goal for major programming projects. Military and industrial studies have shown that software maintenance may account for 70 to 90 percent of the total software costs for such projects. Controlling this expenditure has become a matter of vital concern to software industry managers.

Programmers have their own reasons for being interested in the issue of software maintenance. It's a lot more interesting to design and write new programs than to spend 70 to 90 percent of one's time trying to figure out how to modify someone else's code. Pascal-related languages are therefore of interest to anyone who writes substantial programs that are expected to remain in use for some time. The question is, which language is best?

Wirth developed Pascal in response to another programming language, Algol-68, which was designed over a period of several years by an international committee of computer scientists. Perhaps because the language was committee-designed, it became unwieldy, as almost all the features desired by all the experts were added to the language. Wirth rejected the notion of a language built to the specifications of a committee, and produced, in 1968, a much simpler and more elegant programming language, Pascal.

The verdict of history, in this instance, supports the efforts of the individaul language designer over those of the committee. Today Pascal is the most widely used computer language for teaching programming in American universities. In addition, it has enjoyed widespread success on personal computers, with many thousands of personal computer users employing UCSD Pascal, as well as other Pascal implementations, such as IBM Pascal. There is no demand for Algol-68 compilers for personal computers.

Managers and programmers committed to the discipline of structured programming are now asking whether history is about to repeat itself. The Department of Defense has a very expensive software maintenance problem. Maintaining a software product may account for up to 80 percent of its lifecycle costs. The Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency financed the design of a new language to resolve the problem.

A large, complex, feature-laden programming language, Ada, was the final product of a series of defense contracts in the late 1970s. As of this writing, there is no fully validated Ada compiler available on any computer, although several have been in development for very large supermini computers and IBM mainframes for some time, and a few have finally been submitted for validation. Implementability was one of the design requirements of Ada, but the compiler-generation process is calling into question how well this requirement was met.

Ada—The First Programmer. Ada is named for Lady Augusta Ada Lovelace, the daughter of Lord Byron and the world's first computer programmer. She wrote programs for Charles Babbage's Analytical Engine, a mechanical computer that was never completed because the machining technology of the day could not provide the fine tolerances called for in its design. The Analytical Engine failed despite years of grant support from the British government, and Ada's critics see a parallel in the future of the language named after its programmer.

Hundreds of computer scientists and sophisticated computer users contributed to the many design phases of Ada. The result is that it provides a very large number of features, including some that work against the principle of simplicity. The parallels between Ada and Algol-68 are striking.

Is there a candidate for the role of a simple competitor to Ada? Can any programming language play the role of an alternative to Ada, as Pascal did to Algol-68?

The answer, of course, is yes. Wirth, apparently unhappy once again with the product of a language-design committee, has produced a new language named Modula-2. Modula-2 combines what Wirth considered the best features of Pascal with those of another language he designed, Modula.

Modula-2 is the design of a single computer scientist driven by a consistent vision that places a very high value on simplicity. As a result, the core of Modula-2 is quite small; Wirth defined it in a booklet of only

HBSoftware

for Your IBM Personal Computer

HBSort is the stand-alone direct file sort with a money-back performance guarantee – it creates a new disk file with your records sorted the way you need them. ($85)

- Sort 750 mailing labels in 4 minutes, 2000 accounting transactions in 7 minutes, a full floppy disk in 10 minutes.

HBSnoop lets you see exactly what is in your direct disk files. ($45)

- Print just the records you want to look at – selected fields or whole records.

PS – The People Sorter is an easy-to-use address book system that quickly prints mailing labels, listings, and updates for your address book. ($135)

- An alphabetic directory lets you find and update entries in just 3 seconds, even when you have a full disk of people and companies.
- Powerful selection features let you organize and manage your mailing and telephoning lists. You can select by special interests, geographic data, and more.

Script is the easiest-to-use word processor on the market today. A combination of easy-to-use menus and easy-to-remember commands like INPUT, VIEW, EDIT, SEARCH, and PRINT make word processing easy. ($190)

- The keys on your IBM keyboard work the way you expect them to work, eliminating the complicated key combinations found in other word processors. Margins, columns, and tabs work the way you expect them to work.
- A full page of your work is always displayed. Printed copy looks the way you expect it to look. You can use underlined, bold, italic, superscript, and subscript type. You can use justified printing. No print controls are embedded in your text.

Order direct or write for information.

HBS HARPER BUSINESS SYSTEMS

Harper Business Systems
910 - 179th Court N.E.
Bellevue, WA 98008
(206) 643-9762

Engineered and crafted like no other software

forty-eight pages. Not every desirable feature is present in the language itself. Instead, utility features can be added in modules, program blocks similar in some ways to UCSD Pascal Units.

Ada, in contrast, offers a very wide range of features, many of which are quite sophisticated but may be employed only rarely. Charles Moore, the inventor of Forth, says Ada has "tried to be all things to all people. It's much too complex a language—especially for the less experienced programmer."[1]

Ada and Modula-2 have a number of similarities. Both took Pascal as a starting point for development, although Ada has more extensive departures from that standard than does Modula-2. The experienced Pascal programmer will be able to easily follow most of the source text of programs written in either language. Both languages sought to remedy a number of the same flaws in Pascal's design. Enhancements provide for concurrent processing and more direct programmer access to the machine. An important set of changes enforces a more modular approach to programming than does Standard Pascal.

Modular programming encourages the independent development and testing of conceptually separate portions of a program. This modularity permits the different functions of a major programming project to be assigned to different programmers, who can develop program portions independently, once the software interfaces among the separate parts have been specified.

Modular programming is an important prerequisite for the emergence of a discipline of software engineering. From a software engineering viewpoint, a program should not be the product of a single mad-dog genius programmer, developing a system that is in no way compatible with the work of other programmers. Instead, programs are built up out of a set of software components produced by professional software engineers. The discipline of structured programming should even make it possible for the authors of these different modules to be anonymous to each other.

Beyond UCSD Pascal. Modula-2, however, goes several steps beyond UCSD Pascal Units. Modula-2's modules have two parts, a *definition* and an *implementation*, and these two parts are compiled separately. A module is used by other modules and programs, which are its clients. All communication between a module implementation and a client is specified in the module definition.

Tom DeMarco, a structured systems development expert with Yourdon, Inc., argues that "if you go back and compare Modula-2 to the statement of objectives published for Ada, you're likely to conclude, as I do, that Modula-2 satisfies most of them as well as Ada, but with far less obfuscation."[2] A comparison of the design goals of Modula-2 and Ada may convince software developers that Modula-2 deserves serious consideration.

Volition Systems, a software house based in Del Mar, California, has made hands-on Modula-2 experience possible for owners of the Apple II and III, the Sage, and now the IBM Personal Computer. The Volition Modula-2 system is more than just a Modula-2 compiler. It is a complete software development system. The package is built on a version of the UCSD Pascal Operating System, which is included.

The UCSD Pascal Operating System is based on the concept of the p-machine, a mythical computer with optimal characteristics for Pascal program execution. P-System compilers, be they on Apples, DECs, Sages, or IBM pcs, all compile Pascal text files (the readable source) into machine instructions for the p-machine. At execution time, a special p-System interpreter interprets the p-machine instructions to run on the real computer. Since the p-machine instructions, called p-code, are closer to real machine language than are the commands of a higher-level interpreted language like Basic, p-code programs usually run a lot faster than Basic programs.

The Volition p-code interpreter is based on the UCSD Pascal II.0 version rather than the IV.x version from Softech Microsystems. Is this an advantage or disadvantage? The most important advance of version IV over version II was the implementation of a method of coprocessing in IV. (Don't ask about version III.) Unfortunately for Softech p-System users, the speed of IV is typically a great deal less than that of version II. Does this mean there is no concurrency in Volition's UCSD Pascal System? No, indeed; coprocessing can be implemented in a library module. One of the Volition-supplied library modules, called Processes, implements a model of sequential processes.

Two versions of the p-code interpreter are provided. One runs on 64K pcs, the other on systems with at least 128K. An included configuration program lets you choose the interpreter to fit your machine. A file manager is included for managing disk files and volumes. In addition, the Volition Systems Advanced System Editor (ASE) is part of the package.

ASE is attracting a dedicated following among p-System users; an ASE special-in-

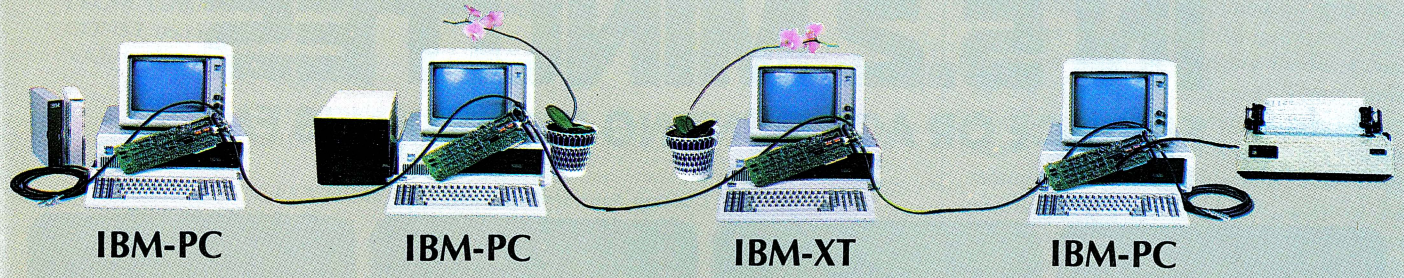
---

[1] "DOD Wants a Twenty-five-Year Lifespan for Its New Languages," *Infoworld*, vol. 4, no. 41, October 18, 1982, p. 27.

[2] DeMarco, T., "Modula-2: Why It Matters," *The Yourdon Report*, vol. 6, no. 2, March-April 1981, pp. 1-2.

PCnet and the IBM-XT

Your Total Solution for IBM PC Local Area Networks.



Share Your IBM-XT Hard Disk or other Hard Disk (*)

PCnet Major Features

- **Local Area Network and Shared Resource Management**
  - Broadcast Coaxial Bus Network
  - Up to 16 PC's per shared PC Server
  - Up to 8 PC Servers
  - Network errors handled similar to DOS
  - PC to PC communications
- **Remote PC Execution**
  - Background program execution at Shared PC
  - Multi-tasking use of Printers, Modems, etc . . .
- **Performance**
  - Serial coaxial bus at 1 megabit up to 7000 feet
  - No significant User PC degradation
- **Computer Vendor Independence**
  - IBM PC, IBM PC-XT
  - Compaq
  - Colby
  - Columbia
  - Corona
- **IBM MS-DOS Transparency**
  - MS-DOS 1.1,2.0
  - Off the Shelf program execution over network
  - File Transfers use MS-DOS commands

Future Features

- Networking
  - SNA, ETHERNET,X.25
- Other Computer
  - TI, Victor, Eagles
- Value Added Applications
  - DBMS

- ***Hard Disk Vendor Independence**
  - IBM
  - Santa Clara Systems
  - Tallgrass
  - Tecmar
  - Microcode
  - QCS
  - Datamac
  - Davong
  - Corvus
- **Disk and File Sharing**
  - Public and Private Files/Volumes and Disk
  - File/Record Locking and Unlocking
  - No Dedicated File Server; PC can act as File Server
  - Multiple File Servers
- **Ease Of Use**
  - Single PC slot for PCnet adapter card
  - Standard coax and BNC connectors
  - Automatic Load using AUTOEXEC.BAT

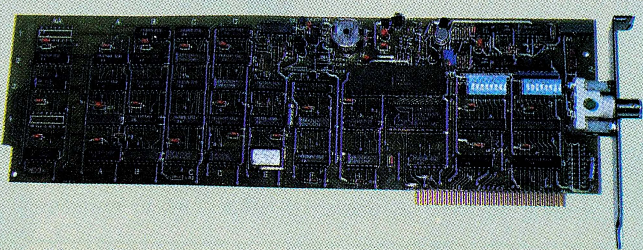
ORCHID
TECHNOLOGY

487 Sinclair Frontage Road,
Milpitas, California 95035 • (408) 942-8660
Telex-171596

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
MS DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
PCnet is a trademark of Orchid Technology.

Copyright 1982 Orchid Technology

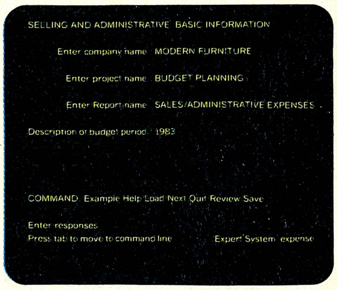
Specifications subject to change without prior notice.



When ordering, please specify both the computer/operating system and the hard disk/version. Orchid supports many different combinations and is adding new configuarations each day.

ZERO TO MULTIPLAN™ IN 5.2 MINUTES.

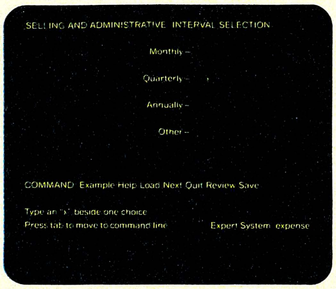
FINANCE OR ACCOUNTING WORKSHEETS FAST.



```
SELLING AND ADMINISTRATIVE  BASIC INFORMATION

        Enter company name  MODERN FURNITURE

          Enter project name  BUDGET PLANNING

          Enter Report name  SALES/ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES

Description of budget period  1983



COMMAND  Example Help Load Next Quit Review Save

Enter responses
Press tab to move to command line          Expert System  expense
```

Gentlemen, start your computers.

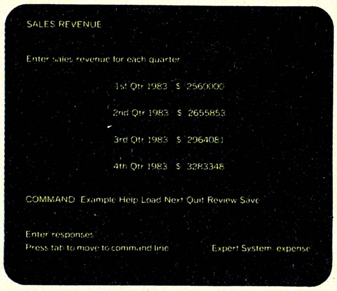
Time: 0



```
SELLING AND ADMINISTRATIVE  INTERVAL SELECTION

                         Monthly –

                        Quarterly –

                         Annually –

                           Other –



COMMAND  Example Help Load Next Quit Review Save

Type an "x" beside one choice
Press tab to move to command line          Expert System  expense
```

Select budget intervals.

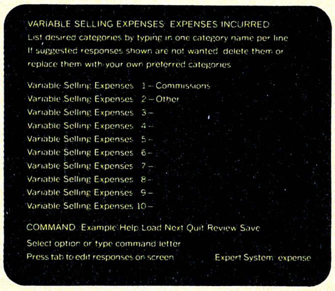
Time: 0.5



```
SALES REVENUE


Enter sales revenue for each quarter

                1st Qtr 1983   $  2560000

               2nd Qtr 1983   $  2655853

               3rd Qtr 1983   $  2964081

               4th Qtr 1983   $  3283348

COMMAND  Example Help Load Next Quit Review Save


Enter responses
Press tab to move to command line          Expert System  expense
```

Enter sales revenue.

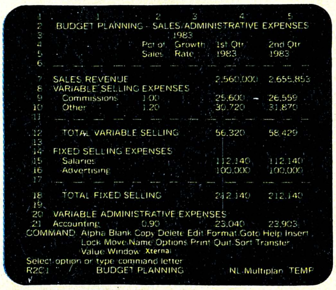
Time: 1.0



```
VARIABLE SELLING EXPENSES  EXPENSES INCURRED
List desired categories by typing in one category name per line
If suggested responses shown are not wanted  delete them or
replace them with your own preferred categories

Variable Selling Expenses   1 – Commissions
Variable Selling Expenses   2 – Other
Variable Selling Expenses   3 –
Variable Selling Expenses   4 –
Variable Selling Expenses   5 –
Variable Selling Expenses   6 –
Variable Selling Expenses   7 –
Variable Selling Expenses   8 –
Variable Selling Expenses   9 –
Variable Selling Expenses  10 –

COMMAND  Example Help Load Next Quit Review Save
Select option or type command letter
Press tab to edit responses on screen          Expert System  expense
```

Enter selling expenses.

Time: 1.5



```
 1           1              2        3          4           5
 2   BUDGET PLANNING - SALES/ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES
 3                           1983
 4                        Pct of   Growth   1st Qtr      2nd Qtr
 5                        Sales    Rate     1983         1983
 6  ___________________________________________________________
 7  SALES REVENUE                            2,560,000   2,655,853
 8  VARIABLE SELLING EXPENSES
 9    Commissions         1.00               25,600  -   26,559
10    Other               1.20               30,720      31,870
11  ___________________________________________________________
12    TOTAL VARIABLE SELLING                 56,320      58,429
13
14  FIXED SELLING EXPENSES
15    Salaries                               112,140     112,140
16    Advertising                            100,000     100,000
17  ___________________________________________________________
18    TOTAL FIXED SELLING                    212,140     212,140
19
20  VARIABLE ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES
21  Accounting            0.90               23,040      23,903
COMMAND  Alpha Blank Copy Delete Edit Format Goto Help Insert
         Lock Move Name Options Print Quit Sort Transfer
         Value Window  Xternal
Select option or type command letter
R2C1              BUDGET PLANNING              NL Multiplan  TEMP
```

Your sales budget on the Multiplan electronic worksheet-in record time.

Time: 5.2

First, Microsoft created the Multiplan interactive electronic worksheet, to help you analyze your business problems and explore possible solutions. Without asking you to become a computer expert.

Now we've added the Multi-Tool™ budget and financial expert systems. They can help design and build financial or accounting worksheets tailored to your specific needs. In minutes.

You won't have to worry about developing formulas or formatting screens to build your Multiplan worksheets. Because the expert systems literally do it for you.

For example, the Multi-Tool Budget expert system creates seven interrelated Multiplan worksheets for a total budget planning and control environment.

What's more, each system is developed by experts: business professionals and leading authorities in finance and accounting.

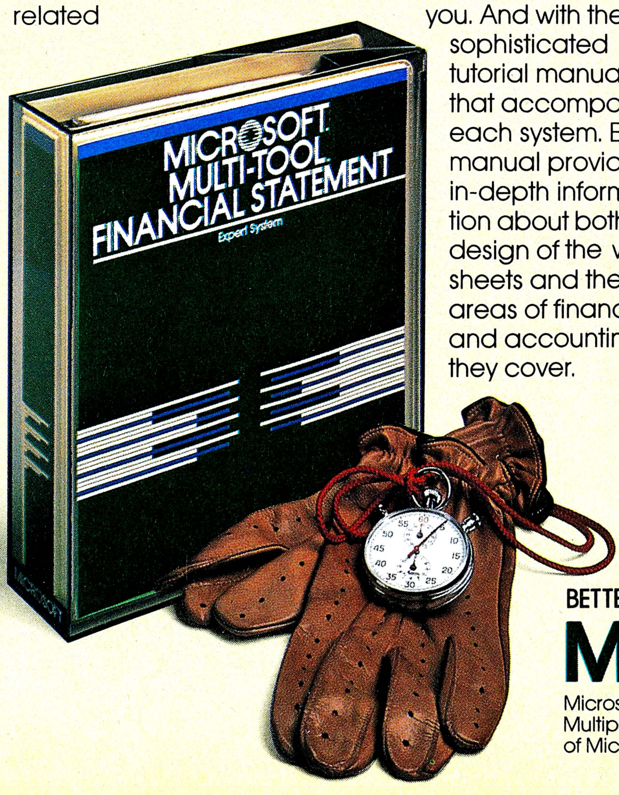
You'll benefit from their knowledge immediately, through the powerful worksheets each Multi-Tool expert system builds for you. And with the sophisticated tutorial manuals that accompany each system. Each manual provides in-depth information about both the design of the worksheets and the areas of finance and accounting they cover.

The result: a tailored electronic worksheet that helps you make high quality decisions.

That's just what you'd expect from Microsoft. The people who let you concentrate on your business rather than on your computer.

Ask your computer dealer to let you test drive the new Multi-Tool expert systems. Better tools that help you put your business in first place.

THE MULTI-TOOL EXPERT SYSTEMS. A POWERFUL ADDITION TO THE MULTIPLAN ELECTRONIC WORKSHEET.
Available now:
The Multi-Tool Budget expert system.
The Multi-Tool Financial Statement expert system.



BETTER TOOLS FOR MICROCOMPUTERS

MICROSOFT™

Microsoft is a registered trademark, and Multi-Tool, Multiplan and the Microsoft logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

```
MODULE HiHo;
    FROM SYSTEM IMPORT
        WORD, ADR, SIZE, PROCESS, NEWPROCESS, TRANSFER, IOTRANSFER;
    FROM Terminal IMPORT WriteString, WriteLn;
    CONST maxHiHo = 17;
    VAR i: CARDINAL;
          Hi, Ho, Main: PROCESS;
          A, B: ARRAY [1..200] OF WORD;
    PROCEDURE WriteHi;
    BEGIN
        LOOP IOTRANSFER(Hi,Ho, 1); (*wait on interrupt vector 1 *)
            WriteString('hi');
        END;
    END WriteHi;
    PROCEDURE WriteHo;
    BEGIN
        LOOP WriteString('ho');
            INC(i);
            IF i > maxHiHo THEN
                WriteLn; i := 0;
            END;
        END;
    END WriteHo;
BEGIN i := 0;
    NEWPROCESS (WriteHi, ADR(A), SIZE(A), Hi);
    NEWPROCESS(WriteHo, ADR(B), SIZE(B), Ho);
    TRANSFER(Main, Hi);
END HiHo.
```

Listing 1. © 1983 Volition Systems; used by permission. This listing and forty-seven others are provided as tutorial material on a separate disk included in the Modula-2 distribution.

Hi, Ho, and Main are declared as Coroutines—PROCESSes in the terminology of Modula-2. Coroutines are procedures that execute independently. The two calls of NEWPROCESS in the main body of the above module create two Coroutines, one to execute WriteHi in memory area A and the other to do the procedure WriteHo in area B. An interrupt through interrupt vector 1 causes an implicit transfer from Process Ho to Process Hi.

terest group was formed at the recent USUS (UCSD p-System User's Society) convention in San Diego. ASE is a screen-oriented editor that can edit files as large as the available disk space, thereby avoiding the limitation of available memory that constrains the standard p-System editor. It offers many powerful features, including user-defined editing macros.

A Unix-like command shell, called p-Nix, and its utilities allow the use of Unix commands, such as *ls>discdirec*, which writes the directory of the prefixed disk to the file Discdirec. Shell commands can be linked together so that the output of one serves as the input to another. This is the Unix piping facility.

In addition to a library of standard system and utility modules, there is a librarian manager program for maintaining the Modula library. A serial communications program is provided to permit the downloading of files from other machines to the pc. It may be worth noting that, since Apple Pascal is a dialect of version II, many p-code files from the Apple can be expected to work on the IBM pc running the Volition Systems version of UCSD Pascal.

The Volition Systems release disk includes a limited Pascal compiler as well as the Modula-2 compiler. Finally, there are several short Modula-2 example programs. Winddemo, for example, shows how a Modula-2 program can set up and write to four different windows on the screen "at the same time."

The Volition Systems Modula-2 compiler provides two additions to the standard Modula-2 language. These are *forward* declarations, which permit a procedure to be referenced before it's defined in a source file, and *packed* data representations, for more economical use of storage space. Both of these features are familiar to UCSD p-System developers. Other features, including many based on the UCSD Pascal operating system, are available not as language extensions but rather as Modules.

Modula-2 over Ada. The staff of Volition first became interested in Modula-2 in the course of a project to develop an Ada system for an industrial client. The original plan of the Volition Systems staff was to write an Ada kernel (the operating system support level) in Ada. They were shocked to find that it could not be done. An investigation into Modula-2 quickly convinced them that Wirth's new language provided adequate power for the implementation of an Ada kernel.

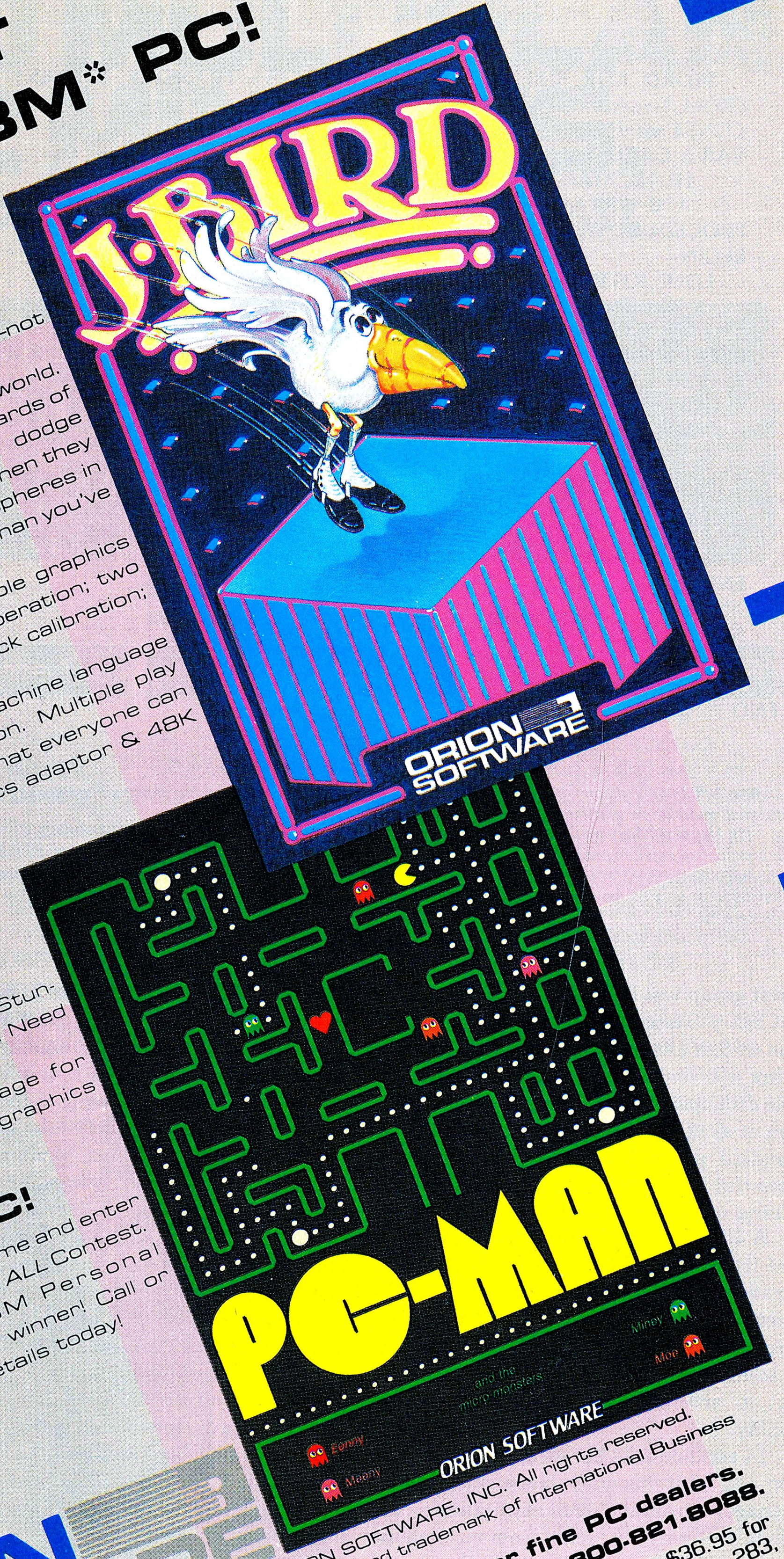
The Modula-2 language is actually smaller—that is, it has fewer reserved words—than UCSD Pascal. Many essential capabilities are not included directly in the language but are instead provided in the standard library and utility modules found in the file Modula.Library. These library modules provide random-access file routines, standard read-and-write routines, storage allocation (with new and dispose procedures), a math library, console handling, subprogram calling, and a process scheduler. These are the standard utility modules called for by Wirth's specification of Modula-2. In addition, Volition Systems provides utility modules that give the programmer access to features such as string functions and procedures and decimal arithmetic. Pascal programs can be called from Modula-2, and facilities are provided for interrupt-driven processes, permitting real-time control in Modula-2 programs.

The major advantage of Modula-2 over UCSD Pascal is the enforcement of a structured development discipline. During the development of a major software product, programmers working on different interacting modules need only agree on their interfaces, not on the internal structure of the modules. Once a definition is established and compiled, any changes in the internal structure of the implementation part of the module or in the internal structure of the client can be assured of not interfering with each other. On the other hand, whenever the definition portion of a module is changed and recompiled, Modula-2 requires the recompilation of those clients that use the module as well as the recompilation of the module's implementation. The interface policing ensures proper communication among modules.

Every module is given a "module key" at the time of compilation. The system checks at run time for a module key mismatch between an interface and an implementation or client. Programs cannot run until all necessary parts are recompiled. This enforcement policy permits the improved software methodology characteristic of structured programming by protecting users from abusing the modular approach.

Because the language core is small, defining a standard version is a straightforward matter. Enhancements are provided in the module framework. The techniques used for I/O, process scheduling, and storage allocation for a particular Modula-2 implementation are not part of the language but rather are provided in the standard library modules. This means that the user has the option of replacing the utilities provided with others of his or her invention. Furthermore, these features, because they're provided by modules, need be present in sys-

NEW EXCITEMENT FOR YOUR IBM* PC!



J-BIRD

It's new! A battle of quick reflexes and wits—not firepower.

Your goal is to change the color of your world. But first, you must maneuver around hoards of hazards: outjump King-Bo the snake, dodge mind-globes, outsmart Hob and Nob when they try to slow you, and pursue the time spheres in your world. It all makes for more fun than you've had in a long time!

Special features include: incredible graphics and sound; joystick or keyboard operation; two player option; on/off sound; joystick calibration; high scores saved on disk.

J-BIRD is written totally in machine language for beautiful, smooth animation. Multiple play levels make J-BIRD a game that everyone can enjoy. Requires color graphics adaptor & 48K RAM.

PC-MAN AND THE MICRO MONSTERS

Beautiful colors! Arcade quality graphics! Stunning resolution! Exciting music and sound! Need we say more!

Written entirely in machine language for smooth animation. Requires color graphics adaptor and 48K RAM.

WIN AN IBM* PC!

That's right! Send us your best game and enter the ORION SOFTWARE FUN FOR ALL Contest. We'll be giving away an IBM Personal Computer—and you could be a winner! Call or write to ORION for contest details today!

ORION SOFTWARE

© 1983 ORION SOFTWARE, INC. All rights reserved.
* IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Available at ComputerLand and other fine PC dealers.
For your nearest dealer, or to order direct call: 1-800-821-8088.

To order by mail send $34.95 for PC-MAN, or $36.95 for J-BIRD to: ORION SOFTWARE, P.O. BOX 2488, Dept. 283, Auburn, Alabama 36831.

MasterCard VISA

tem memory only when they are required by an applications program; this approach conserves system resources.

Modula-2 permits low-level machine access by providing pointer arithmetic and fixed-address variables, thus obviating the need for the tricky variant records required to access machine addresses in Pascal. Furthermore, Modula-2 provides for explicit type conversion, thereby giving the programmer better access to the machine than does Pascal, while making the programmer's intent clearer than do most Pascal methods for type conversion.

Dynamic array parameters are possible in Modula-2. Pascal programmers will rejoice at the freedom of not having to set array bounds for formal parameters at the time a subprogram is written.

Fewer *begin-end* pairs are required in Modula-2 than in Pascal, because Modula-2's *while, with, for,* and *if* constructs are all terminated with *end.*

There are other minor but welcome improvements to Pascal in Modula-2. Constant expressions are permitted so that the programmer can make constant declarations—such as

CONST HALFMAX = MAX DIV 2

Declaration order restrictions are relaxed, which makes it possible to group constant, type, variable, and procedure declarations in a natural way. Identifiers are significant to any length and thus don't have to differ from each other in the first eight characters as they do in Pascal. Flow of control is improved through the inclusion of features such as *loop-exit.* The *case* statement has been improved, first by permitting subranges as well as constants as case selectors, and second by providing an explicit *else* condition as an option. Logical expressions are evaluated from left to right, and the evaluation is short-circuited, thus sparing the programmer the need for many nested *if* clauses to prevent evaluation of terms that produce value range errors.

Pros and Cons. The many benefits of Modula-2 are partially offset by some disadvantages. The simplicity of Modula-2's syntax imposes some extra burdens on the programmer. One example is the lack of generic I/O procedures. In Pascal, the program can use the single procedure *write* to output integers, real numbers, characters, and (in UCSD Pascal) strings. In Modula-2, variables of each type must be output with a procedure that takes parameters of that type. This means more lines of source code for the programmer to write, but the compiled code is no less compact or efficient than that produced by a Pascal compiler. The Modula-2 programmer must do some of the work that is handled by the compiler in Pascal.

Many programmers may find that Modula-2's case-sensitivity is an annoyance. Upper and lower case are significant in Modula-2; the variable MyVar has a different referent from the variable MYVAR, and both are different from Myvar. It's easy to forget what you've capitalized. Fortunately for users plagued with poor memories, the Volition Systems implementation provides a compiler option to turn off case-sensitivity.

Real number operations in the IBM pc implementation of Modula-2 are either ideal or impossible, depending on the resources and requirements of the user. Volition has chosen to support floating-point operations on the Intel 8087 math coprocessor chip. This is wonderful for those who already have the chip. Volition supplies one of the few software development packages that automatically support it. On the other hand, if you don't have the chip, you can't use reals. There is no software support for real number operations on the pc's 8088. This is a disadvantage for users who require only a few non-time-critical real number computations and who don't want to shell out the extra two hundred dollars-plus for the 8087.

More detailed information on programming in Modula-2 can be found in a new book by Wirth, *Programming in Modula-2*[3]. IBM pc owners who believe in hands-on learning can try out the Volition Systems implementation of Modula-2. The computer system must include at least 64K of RAM and be equipped with two floppy disk drives.

The Modula-2 package includes, in addition to the operating system and software tool kit described above, a copy of Wirth's book, a well-written Modula-2 users' manual, and a guide to the Volition Systems implementation of the UCSD Pascal operating system. The price for the complete package is $595.

Modula-2 is an advanced programming language. Its enforcement of structured program development makes it an appropriate vehicle for attacking major software projects. The process scheduling and direct machine access features suit it to system work. It also offers a number of small but significant syntax improvements over Standard and UCSD Pascal. Because the language is small and closely related to Pascal, it can be learned quickly by Pascal programmers. The combination of advantages to Modula-2 have been accomplished at the cost of some inconvenience to the programmer when write operations are required. However, it is a tribute to the compactness and elegance of this programming language that it can be used on a 64K personal computer. ▲

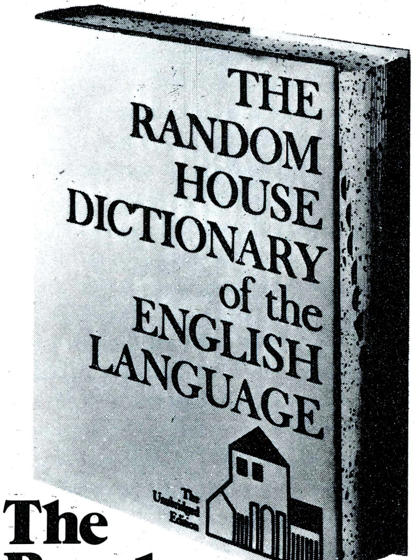
Modula-2. Volition Systems (Box 1236, Del Mar, CA 92014; 619-481-2286), $595.

---

3. Wirth, N., *Programming in Modula-2* (New York: Springer-Verlag, 1982). 176 pp.

Less for Your Money

If you do word processing on your personal computer, you probably know that there are many programs for sale to help you with your spelling. But the biggest spelling error you'll ever make is paying too much for your spelling correction software. The Random House ProofReader gives you less for your money – less trouble, that is, and fewer spelling errors. The Random House ProofReader is based on the world famous Random House Dictionary. It contains up to 80,000 words, depending on your disk capacity. You can add new words with the touch of a key. It shows you the error and the sentence it's in. It instantly suggests corrections. It even rechecks your corrections. And it costs half as much as other programs with far less power. The Random House ProofReader is compatible with all CP/M 2.2®, MS-DOS® and IBM Personal Computer® systems.

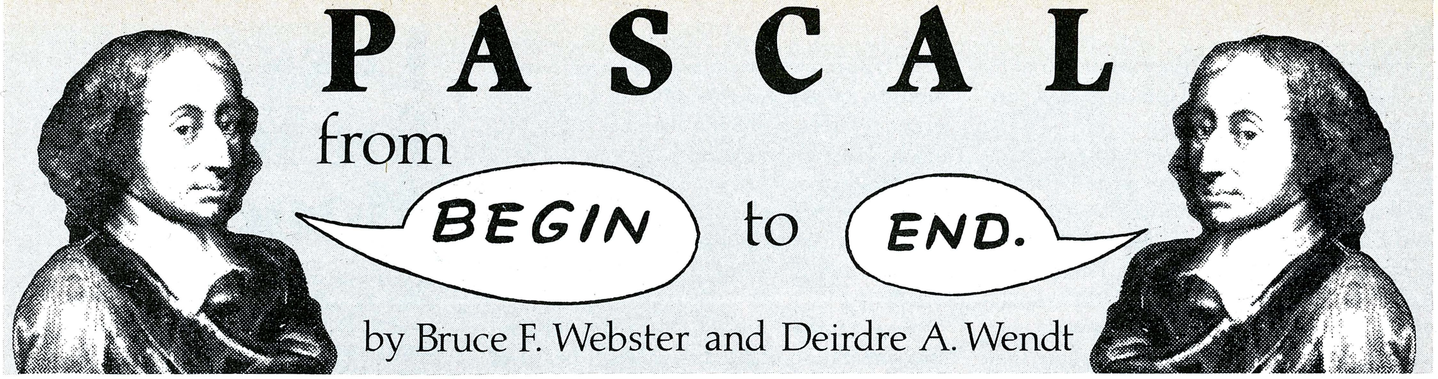


The Random House ProofReader

$50

For orders or information, see your local dealer or call 505-281-3371. Master card and VISA accepted. Or write Random House ProofReader, Box 339-J, Tijeras, NM 87059. Please enclose $50 and specify your computer model, disk size and memory.

Random House and the House design are registered trademarks of Random House, Inc. CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc. IBM and IBM Personal Computer are registered trademarks of International Business Machines, Inc. MS-DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft, Inc.



PASCAL from BEGIN to END.

by Bruce F. Webster and Deirdre A. Wendt

This column is a shorty—a carry-over from last month. Last month's installment was to have included a program showing usage of records, sets, and arrays, but we ran out of space and had to postpone the program. So here it is, with a short discussion of some of its features.

The listing shows the skeleton for a game of the *Star Trek* genre, similar to games found on almost all microcomputers. The game programmed here is incomplete; we leave its completion to you, as an exercise.

The skeleton provided here includes the global data definitions, a utility routine (*get _char*), a simple initialization routine (*initialize*), the basic program structure, and the main driving loop of the program. Most of the major procedures have been left as "dummies"; you can fill these in yourselves. This program, as written, will compile and run; it just won't do much.

Data Structures. Certain key values in the game are represented as global constants. These named constants are then used throughout the program in place of the actual values. By using constant names instead of values, we can make changes to the values in one place only, instead of having to go all through the program.

The program includes a number of user-defined data types and structures. *Charset* is defined primarily for use in the procedure *getchar*, while the enumerated data type *sides* is used in the data structure *ships*. The subranges *sectrange* and *quadrange* represent the sector and quadrant coordinate ranges, while *shiprange* gives the range of ID numbers for enemy ships.

The data structure *ships* is used to represent both enemy ships and the player's own vessel. The values *sx*, *sy*, *qx*, and *gy* represent the ship's current location. The ship's current energy and shield levels are saved in *energy* and *shields*. If the ship belongs to the player, then it has *beams* and *mines*. Enemy ships have only *missiles*, but they also have a cloaking device (*cloaked*) (which may be on or off).

The data structure *quadrant* defines each quadrant in the sector. It tells whether or not there is a starbase present (*starbase*) and, if one is present, where it is (*sbx* and *sby*). It also keeps track of the number of enemy ships in the quadrant (*numofships*) and which ones they are (*enemy*).

Only five global variables have been defined for the game: *sector* (the map), *theirships* (enemy ships), *ourship* (the player's ship), *cmd* (player's command), and *lowerset* (a set of lower-case letters). These variables are described in the listing itself.

The Program. As we said, the bulk of the program hasn't been written. We did write some of the initialization so that you could see how to access the various data structures. We also wrote the main body of the program, which simply prompts the user for a command and then calls the appropriate procedure. The rest of the program is up to you.

Contest. Now that you've got this much, we'd like to announce a contest. The challenge is this: Write a *Trek*-style game for the IBM pc in Pascal (UCSD or IBM) using the language features this column has discussed so far (control structures, subprograms, scalar data types, records, sets, and arrays). You may, if you wish, build on the program skeleton presented in this article. Entries will be judged on clarity of code, logical organization, and performance. Submit source and compiled code on floppy disk to:

Softalk Trek
Box 60
11160 McCormick Street
North Hollywood, CA 91603

Entries must be postmarked no later than September 30, 1983. The winner will receive his choice of $100 in merchandise from his local dealer.

To avoid legal problems, *all entries will become the property of Softalk Publishing*. This doesn't mean we're out to rip you off and make money publishing your game; it just means that if you have any thoughts of selling your program, do not enter it in this contest.

Next month we'll be looking at pointers and dynamic variable allocation. See you then.

```
PROGRAM  sampletrek;
(*
          sampletrek          a sample program demonstrating advanced
                              data structures—NOT A COMPLETE PROGRAM
          last update         06 May 1983
          language            UCSD Pascal version IV.0
          notes               uses "string" data type
*)
CONST
  sectlim                       =    8;  (* sector map is 8X8 quadrants         *)
  quadlim                       =    8;  (* each quadrant is also 8X8           *)
  shipmax                       =   40;  (* total # of enemy ships              *)
  enemax                        =    8;  (* max # of ships/quadrant             *)
  maxenergy                     = 1023;
  maxshields                    =  255;
  beammax                       =  255;
  minemax                       =   15;
  mislmax                       =   31;

TYPE

  charset                       = SET OF char;
  sides                         = (us,them);
  sectrange                     = 1..sectlim;
  quadrange                     = 1..quadlim;
  shiprange                     = 0..shipmax;

  ships =
    RECORD
      sx,sy                      : sectrange;      (* which quadrant?          *)
      qx,qy                      : quadrange;      (* where in quadrant?       *)
      energy                     : 0..maxenergy;   (* current fuel avail.      *)
      shields                    : 0..maxshields;  (* current shield level     *)
      CASE side : sides OF
        us    : (beams           : 0..beammax;     (* current beam strength    *)
                 mines           : 0..minemax);    (* # of mines left          *)
        them : (missiles         : 0..mislmax;     (* # of missiles left       *)
                 cloaked         : boolean)        (* cloaking device on?      *)
    END;

  quadrant =
    RECORD
      starbase                   : boolean;        (* is there a starbase?     *)
      sbx,sby                    : quadrange;      (* if so, where?            *)
      numofships                 : 0..enemax;      (* how many enemy ships?
      enemy                      : ARRAY[1..enemax] OF shiprange;
                                                   (* which ones are they?     *)
    END;
(*                               global variables                              *)
(*                                                                             *)
(*          sector          map of playing area—contains 64 quadrants          *)
(*                            each quadrant is also divided into 8X8 area      *)
(*          theirships      status of enemy ships (up to 40 of them)           *)
(*          ourship         status of our ship                                 *)
(*          cmd             user command for main loop                         *)
(*          lowerset        set of lower-case letters—used in getchar          *)
(*                                                                             *)
VAR
  sector                        : ARRAY[sectrange,sectrange] OF quadrant;
  theirships                    : ARRAY[shiprange] OF ships;
  ourship                       : ships;
  cmd                           : char;
  lowerset                      : charset;
```

CAMEO

HARD DISK SYSTEMS ARE THE SOLUTION TO:

- **Reliable Back-Up Requirements**
- **Large Data Storage Needs**

FUNCTION
SEEK
READ
WRITE
FAULT
DRIVE
1
2
3
4
CAMEO
Cameo Electronics, Inc.
READY
START
STOP
LOAD
CAMEO
Cameo Electronics, Inc.
READY
WRITE
PROTECT
POWER

CAMEO large capacity high performance hard disk systems are the ideal mass storage system for use in those business environments where a company's data bank itself is understood to be one of the most valuable parts of the whole micro-computerized office system. The data bank was costly to acquire and could be more costly to replace. Regular access to it is needed every day without fail.

CAMEO'S subsystem 1050, consists of 40 formatted megabytes of on-line winchester data storage and 10 formatted megabytes of removable winchester cartridge back-up capability. In the unlikely event of a problem with the fixed winchester drive the removable cartridge drive can perform as a fully operable full function high performance on line random access winchester hard disk system. It provides highly reliable (full CRC error checking on full spec winchester media) permanent off-line data storage capability for permanent data archiving.

CAMEO'S configuration options allow multiple computers to access all areas of the disk as well as virtual RAM disk configuration from add-on memory boards. Higher capacity systems and nationwide third party maintenance are available. Immediate availability through CAMEO'S regional distributor network.

IBM **VICTOR**
ZENITH **NEC**
COMPAQ **EAGLE**

A CAMEO interface is available for the above as well as almost any brand of high performance micro computer you are considering for your office use.

Contact your local CAMEO dealer or:

- **CAMEO ELECTRONICS, INC.**
  1626 Clementine
  Anaheim, Ca. 92802
  (714) 535-1682

- **CAMEO EUROPE**
  Postfach 227
  8120 Weilheim
  West Germany
  TEL 08802-691
  TLX 59903 CAMEO D

The Trade Marks and Logos of the computer companies referred to above are owned by them respectively and are not the property of CAMEO ELECTRONICS, INC.

```
(*                        utility routines                                  *)

PROCEDURE get_char (VAR ch : char; msg : string; okset : charset);
(*
          purpose          writes msg and accepts command
          last update      03 May 83
*)
CONST
  ascoffset                   =    32;
BEGIN
  REPEAT
    write(msg); read(ch);
    IF ch IN lowerset
      THEN ch := chr(ord(ch) = ascoffset)
  UNTIL ch IN okset
END; (* of PROC get_char *)

FUNCTION rand(low,high : integer) : integer;
(*
          purpose          return random value from low to high (inclusive)
          last update      06 May 83
*)
BEGIN
  (* dummy function *)
END; (* of FUNC rand *)

(*                        MAIN PROCEDURES                                   *)

PROCEDURE initialize;
(*
          purpose          set everything up
          last update      06 May 83
*)
VAR
  x,y,indx,jndx,kndx,ecount       : integer;
  collided                        : boolean;

BEGIN
  lowerset := ['a'..'z'];

(*      initialize sector map—place starbases in 25% of them               *)
  FOR x := 1 TO sectlim DO
    FOR y := 1 TO sectlim DO
      WITH sector[x,y] DO BEGIN
        IF rand(1,4) = 1 THEN BEGIN
          starbase := true;       (* set starbase flag                      *)
          sbx := rand(1,quadlim); (* and place w/in quadrant                *)
          sby := rand(1,quadlim)
        END
        ELSE starbase := false;
        FOR indx := 1 TO enemax DO    (* zero out all enemy info           *)
          enemy[indx] := 0;
        numofships := 0
      END;

(*      initialize enemy ships—place in sector and quadrant                *)
  FOR indx := 1 TO shipmax DO
    WITH theirships[indx] DO BEGIN
      (* place no more than 8 (enemax) per quadrant *)
        REPEAT
          sx := rand(1,sectlim);
          sy := rand(1,sectlim);
        UNTIL sector[sx,sy].numofships < enemax;
        sector[sx,sy].numofships := sector[sx,sy].numofships + 1;
        ecount := sector[sx,sy].numofships;
        sector[sx,sy].enemy[ecount] := indx;

(*        make sure all ships in same quadrant have different locations      *)
      REPEAT
        qx := rand(1,quadlim);
        qy := rand(1,quadlim);
        collided := false;
        jndx := 1;
        WHILE NOT collided AND (jndx < ecount) DO BEGIN
          kndx := sector[sx,sy].enemy[jndx];
          IF (qx = theirships[kndx].qx) AND (qy = theirships[kndx].qy)
            THEN collided := true
            ELSE jndx := jndx + 1
        END
      UNTIL NOT collided;

      (* set all levels to maximum and mark ship as enemy                  *)
      energy := maxenergy;
      shields := 0;           (* shields turned off *)
    side := them;
    missiles := mislmax;
    cloaked := false;         (* cloaking turned off *)

  END;
  (*        initialize our lone ship                                        *)
  WITH ourship DO BEGIN
    sx := rand(1,sectlim);  sy := rand(1,sectlim);
    qx := rand(1,quadlim); sy := rand(1,quadlim);
    energy := maxenergy;
    shields := 0;             (* shields turned off *)
    side   := us;
    beams  := 0;              (* beams turned off *)
    mines  := minemax
  END;

END; (* of PROC initialize *)

(*              *** DUMMY VERSIONS OF MAIN PROCEDURES ***                    *)

PROCEDURE dowarp;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC dowarp *)

PROCEDURE doimpulse;
BEGIN
END; ( of PROC doimpulse *)

PROCEDURE doshields;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC doshields *)

PROCEDURE dobeams;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC dobeams *)

PROCEDURE domines;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC domines *)

PROCEDURE dodock;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC dodock *)

PROCEDURE updatestatus;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC updatestatus *)

PROCEDURE cleanup;
BEGIN
END; (* of PROC cleanup *)

(*                main body of PROGRAM sampletrek                            *)
BEGIN
  initialize;
  REPEAT
    update_status;
    getchar (cmd,'CMD > W)arp,I)mpulse,S)hields,B)eams,M)ines,D)ock,Q)uit:   ',
              ['W','I','S','B','M','Q']);
    CASE cmd OF
      'W'       : dowarp;
      'I'       : doimpulse;
      'S'       : doshields;
      'B'       : dobeams;
      'M'       : domines;
      'D'       : dodock
    END
  UNTIL (cmd = 'Q') OR (ourship.energy = 0);
  cleanup
END. (* of PROG sampletrek *)
```

here's a neat idea!

A DESK-TOP PRINTER STAND FOR YOUR MICRO-COMPUTER SYSTEM

Great Lakes Industries, Inc. offers a well-designed and constructed desk-top printer stand that allows you to store your paper beneath your micro-computer printer. These quality stands allow the paper to feed neatly and evenly, and fit a variety of printers as shown below. Our stands are made from attractive bronze-tone acrylic with smooth, polished edges and corners.

MODEL	IDEAL FOR THESE PRINTERS	DIMENSIONS	UNIT PRICE 1-3	UNIT PRICE 4-+
E5700A	IBM and EPSON MX-80, OKIDATA, etc.	15"w. x 12"d. x 4"h.	$29.95	$25.50
E5700B	EPSON MX-100, CENTRONICS, etc.	23"w. x 12"d. x 4"h.	$39.95	$33.95
E5700C	ZENITH Z-125, H-25, etc.	24"w. x 16"d. x 4"h.	$59.95	$49.95

Prices quoted in U.S. funds. Add $3.00 each for shipping and handling. Shipping for non-U.S.A. customers will be determined at time of filling order.

Great Lakes Industries, Inc. P.O. Box 450, Mt. Clemens, MI 48046

☐ Check enclosed
☐ Visa
☐ MasterCard

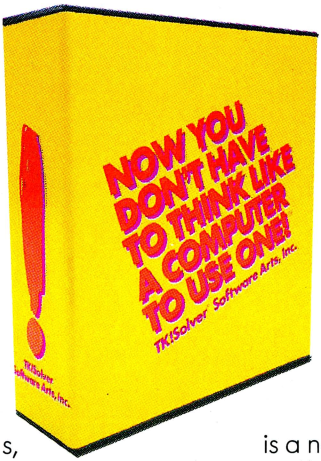
MODEL	QUANTITY	PRICE	TOTAL

Account No. ______ Interbank No. ______ Exp. Date ______
Signature ______ Phone ______
Company Name ______
Address ______
City, State, Zip ______

Charge Orders —
Call (800) 742-3673
In Michigan
Call, (313) 468-1438

CRUNCH!

The inventor of VisiCalc,® the world's leading software product, introduces TK!Solver™—the revolutionary way to crunch problems on a personal computer.


NOW YOU DON'T HAVE TO THINK LIKE A COMPUTER TO USE ONE!
TK!Solver Software Arts, Inc.
TK!Solver Software Arts, Inc.

With VisiCalc, Software Arts™ created an entirely new application for personal computers—the electronic spreadsheet.

Now Software Arts has developed TK!Solver, another entirely new and different application for personal computers—the problem solver. Business and financial problems. Scientific and engineering problems. Architectural and building design problems. Any kind of problem you can dream up, in any area.

What's so revolutionary about that? Simply this: the power of the TK!Solver program comes from the ease with which you can set up problems, vary assumptions, find solutions, and display results. All the facilities needed to solve the problems—simple or complex—are built-in, and need not be developed. Once you have stated your problem, simply enter the known values, then solve the problem with a single keystroke.

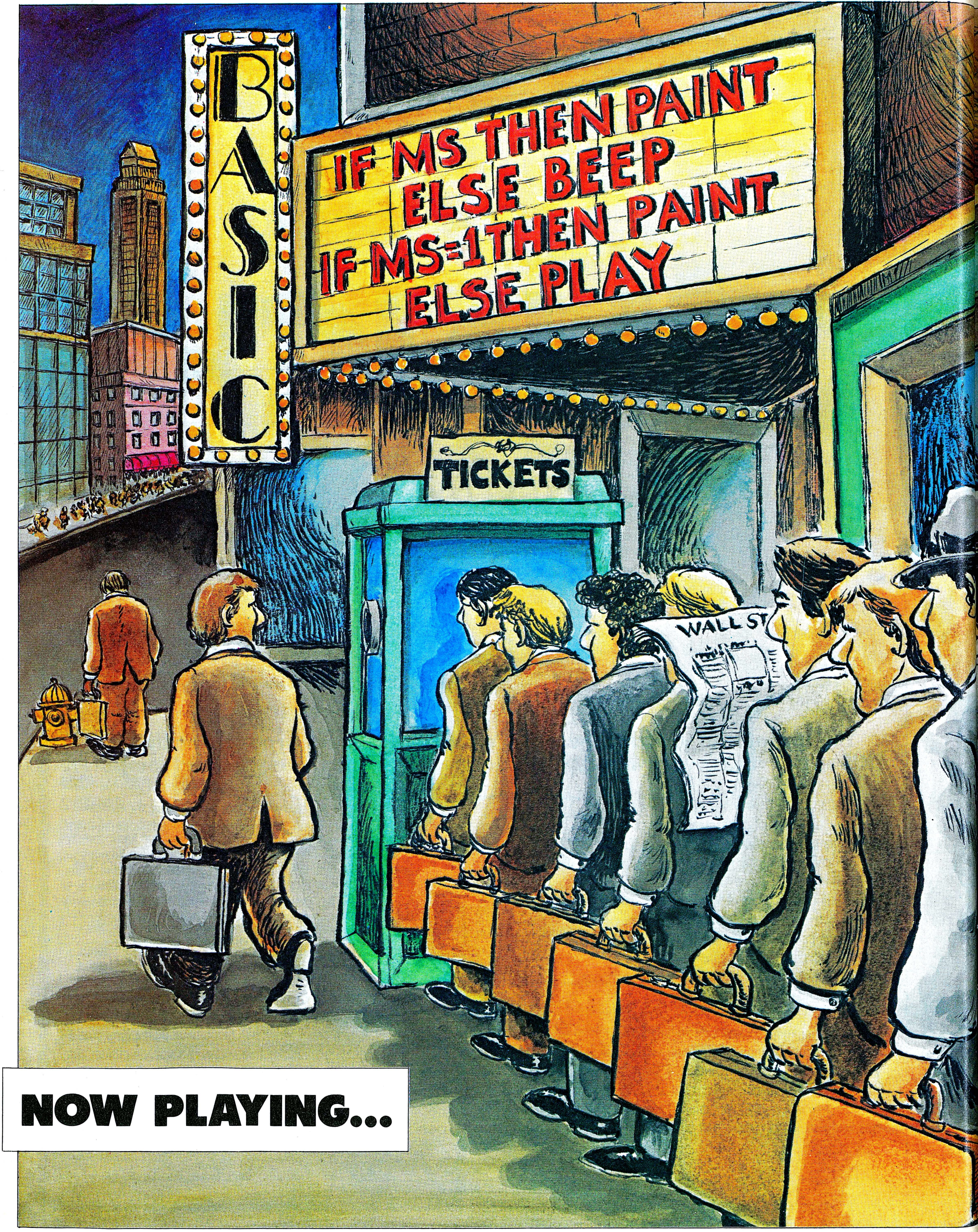
For even easier problem solving use a TK!SolverPack™ in which models for solving common problems in such areas as finance, engineering and education have already been formulated by professionals in these fields.

There is no software product in existence that solves problems as quickly, flexibly, and easily as TK!Solver—The Problem Cruncher™. In fact, no other software product even works the way TK!Solver does. It is a necessity for personal computer owners. See for yourself. Visit your nearest computer store for a demonstration and find out how much you can do with a personal computer when it thinks as flexibly as you do.

Software Arts™

27 Mica Lane, Wellesley, MA 02181

TK!Solver, TK!SolverPack and TK!Solver—The Problem Cruncher are trademarks of Software Arts, Inc. Software Arts is a trademark of Software Arts, Inc. and Software Arts Products Corp. VisiCalc is a trademark of VisiCorp. Copyright © 1983. Software Arts, Inc. All rights reserved.


BASIC
IF MS THEN PAINT
ELSE BEEP
IF MS=1THEN PAINT
ELSE PLAY
TICKETS
WALL ST

NOW PLAYING...

Illustration by Bob McMahon

MS-BUSINESS BASIC

(and Six More from Microsoft)

The world is almost always a bigger place than we think it is. Our own interests and expertise tend to put blinders on us and give us a narrow view, when there is really much more to be seen and explored.

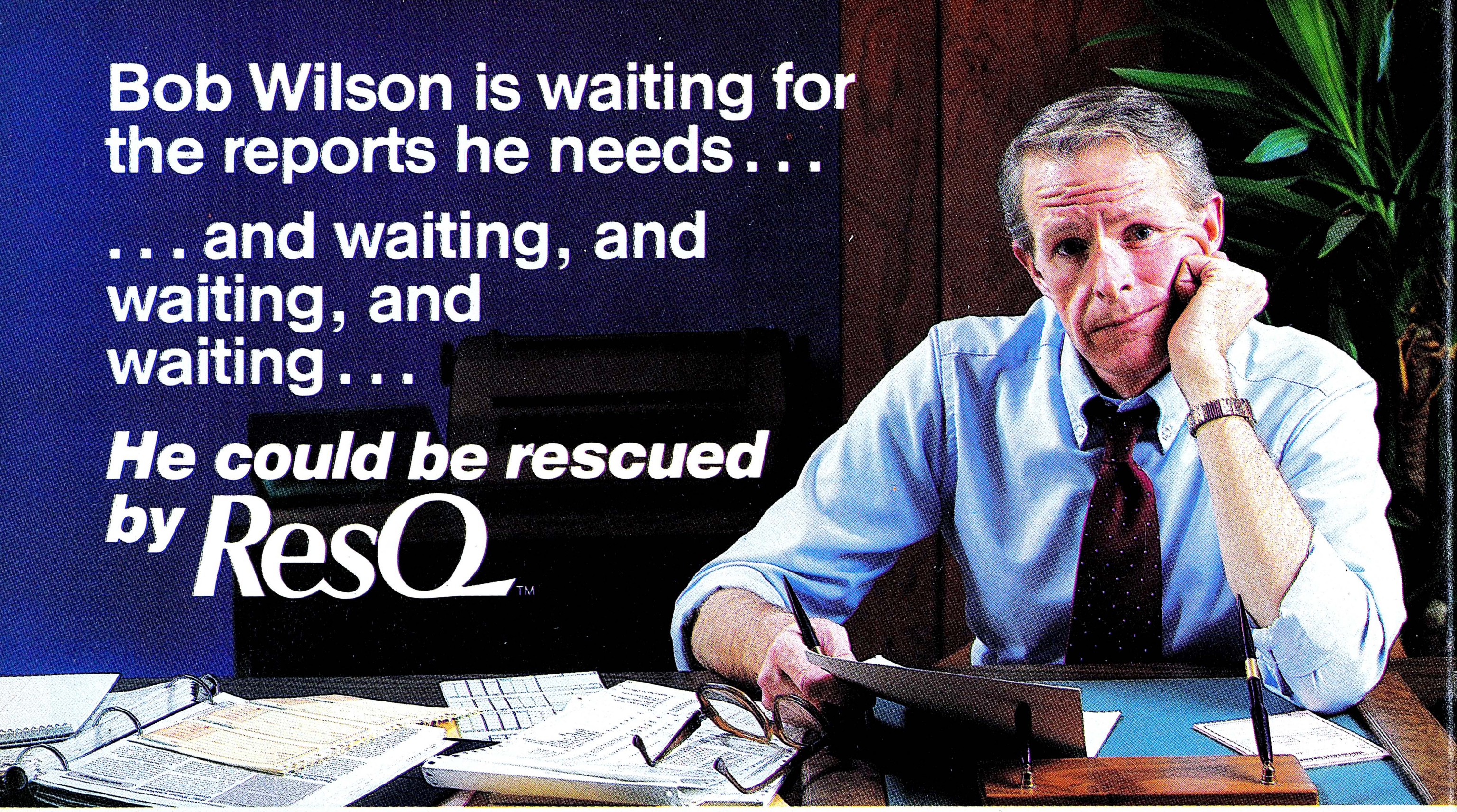
For many of us with IBM pcs, the pc is our first and only contact with the world of personal microcomputing. Even for those of us who have used other small computers—Apples, Radio Shacks, or whatever—the IBM Personal Computer is such a superior machine and has created such a large microenvironment of IBM-oriented hardware and software that many of us haven't yet realized how large a world is growing up around our pc.

There are three circles that have spread around our pc, three circles that define an ever-widening world that centers on the original version of the pc. The innermost is made up of the different versions of the pc that IBM makes. This inner circle embraces the pc and the XT; it also includes whatever new machines IBM might release, such as the long-rumored "Peanut," "Popcorn," and "Crackerjack" models—when and if they appear. The next larger circle is the circle of IBM-compatibles, the computers that are 100 percent able to use pc software and hardware, or at least try to be 100 percent compatible. This circle includes the Compaq and the other pc clones. And naturally, everything in the inner circle, the computers that IBM makes, is completely pc-compatible—so all the IBM pcs fit into the pc-compatible circle.

The last and largest of the three circles is the circle of the pc-like machines that use the DOS operating system. DOS, as we know it, was created by Microsoft specifically for the pc as the pc's main operating system. But since DOS was introduced, it has spread to quite a few other computers. After the pc was introduced, it quickly set a de facto industry standard for what a personal computer should be like. Since the pc appeared, quite a few of the new computers from other makers have been closely modeled on the most successful features of the pc. These "pc-like" computers all use the same microprocessor (the Intel 8088 or 8086) and have display screens and disk formats and other features that are generally similar to what the pc has.

The one thing that the pc-like computers have most in common, though, is the DOS operating system. Over sixty different computer makers have signed up with Microsoft to license and use DOS for their computers. This has created a large circle of computers that are pc-like and DOS-using—in short, there are coming to be very many computers that are close to the pc that we know and love. Each of these computers is different in its own peculiar way, but they all have some important things in common. They are all generally equivalent to our pc in capability, features, and the way they are used, because they are used with our familiar DOS.

by Peter Norton



Bob Wilson is waiting for the reports he needs . . .

. . . and waiting, and waiting, and waiting . . .

He could be rescued by ResQ™

ResQ is quite simply the easiest-to-use, fastest and most comprehensive information management system ever developed for the IBM Personal Computer. It was designed from the ground up to provide you with the exact information you need . . . *only* the information you need . . . in the exact form you need it . . . now!

Best of all, you don't have to know a thing about computers to take full advantage of ResQ almost immediately!

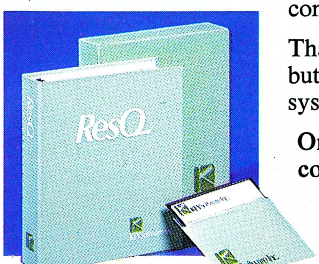
Like many other Data Base Managers, ResQ organizes, files, locates, controls and interrelates just about any kind of information. It prepares reports and mailing labels, is a general filing and reference system, handles customer records and inventories, tracks sales leads and follow-ups, and does the required calculating for any of these functions automatically. But that's where the similarity to other systems stops!

ResQ is the *only* system that allows you or a secretary to design *your own* forms and reports, create them right on the screen, then have them continuously available at the touch of a key! ResQ offers password protection to keep confidential information confidential, and does it on a number of different levels. ResQ reads, searches and sorts data faster than the fastest competitor we've tested.

ResQ's larger fields hold more information, and field sizes can be easily changed to increase your number of salesmen, products, files or reports. It allows for calculations on up to 8 levels of totals at report time, and interfaces with most popular word processing programs.

The ResQ "How-To" Manual is written in plain, simple English—not like a scientific textbook in a foreign language! It was created for immediate use by clerical help who had never touched a computer before. It's been tested . . . and it works! As an added feature, "help screens" are always immediately available to answer questions for the user, without having to turn to the Manual.

We believe you'll be absolutely thrilled with ResQ and the way it prepares reports, manages information and solves your business problems. We're so certain that we offer ResQ with a 30-day money-back guarantee of satisfaction. You can try ResQ in your own business environment and prove its value for yourself . . . completely without risk!



That's a very remarkable offer . . . but ResQ is a very remarkable system!

Order ResQ through your local computer store, mail the coupon below or call . . .

(312) 298-3610

KEYSoftware Inc.

2350 E. Devon Ave., Suite 138
Des Plaines, Illinois 60018 • (312) 298-3610

KeySoftware Inc. 2350 E. Devon Ave., Suite 138, Des Plaines, Illinois 60018

Please send______ ResQ Software System(s) including diskettes and comprehensive, plain English Manuals at $395.00 each including postage and handling. I understand I may return these materials within 30 days of receipt for a full refund if not completely satisfied.

☐ Check or Money Order enclosed ☐ Corporate Purchase Order enclosed.

☐ Charge to my

☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard account. ☐☐☐☐-☐☐☐☐-☐☐☐☐-☐☐☐☐

Exp. Date__________ Bank No.______________________

(MasterCard only)

Name______________________________

Firm______________________________

Address______________________________

City______________________ State__________ Zip__________

Signature ✓______________________________

Requires IBM PC, with 128 K RAM or IBM XT, 2 disk drives, DOS 1.1 or 2.0. Update policy: Return your diskette at any time and Key Software, Inc. will replace it with the latest version for a $20.00 fee.

To go back to the center of these three circles, we return to our pcs; but if we see beyond our pcs, we see much broader horizons than many pc users imagine. If we are shortsighted, we have fun using our pcs, we write programs for them, we buy programs and equipment for them, and we don't think much about the future. But if we widen our vision, then we start to think about some bigger issues—like what happens when our pcs become obsolete? Will we be able to transfer some of our equipment, our programs, and our skills? Or will we have to start from scratch? What if we use a pc in our work? Will we be able to share our files or our programs with people using other computers? With the rapid spread of personal computers, these aren't just minor issues—they start becoming very important, very fast.

This makes DOS a pivotal issue in our use of our computers, perhaps *the* pivotal issue. We get computers in order to run programs on them, and programs need a supporting environment, which is what an operating system, like DOS, provides. So DOS becomes the thing that a large number of computers and computer programs have in common.

We all use many programs on our pcs. If the programs that we write and buy for use on our pcs make use of the special strengths and features of the pc, then we become wedded to the peculiarities of the pc. On the other hand, if our programs forego using the special features of the pc and stay within the bounds of features that are common to all DOS computers, then we gain an enormous amount of flexibility in where we can go with these programs and what we can do with them. If we are buying a program, we are likely to be better off buying one that will work successfully on any DOS computer; that just increases the number of ways that we will be able to use these programs. And if we are creating programs, it is greatly to our advantage to write programs that are DOS-generic, and not tied to any one computer, so that we can sell to a wider market. Sixty computer makers, after all, will be creating an awful lot of DOS computers.

If we are to have programs that are DOS-generic, that will run on any DOS computer, then we need to have DOS-generic programming languages. Microsoft, the creator of DOS, has taken care of this need for us by producing seven different programming language translators; each of these seven will produce programs that will operate on our pcs and on the other DOS computers as well. If we produce programs using any of these seven translators, then our programs should have a much brighter future than if we write them solely for our pcs.

What are these seven DOS programming languages? They are Cobol, Fortran, Pascal, C, and no fewer than three different versions of Basic: a Basic interpreter, an ordinary Basic compiler, and a Business Basic compiler with special enhancements. Most of this list should look familiar to us, because five of the seven are nearly the same as the versions that IBM has been selling to us as pc programming languages. The two new items are C and the Business Basic. We'll save the Microsoft C compiler for a separate review on its own, for it is a very interesting and juicy topic. The Business Basic compiler we'll discuss here, but first we ought to take a deeper look at what these seven languages offer in general, and how they relate to what IBM has already given us.

The programming languages that IBM offers to us—interpretive Basic, the Basic compiler, Pascal, Fortran, and Cobol—are all produced by Microsoft, but with some custom work done to IBM's specifications. IBM had this done for two reasons: partly so that the languages would make use of the pc's particular features (this was done especially with the Basics), and partly so that IBM could put its own label and copyright on them. For the most part, though, the programming languages that IBM gave us were simply Microsoft's own languages, with minor adaptations for IBM. Now that the broader world of DOS computers is opening up, Microsoft has found the time ripe to release a set of generic DOS languages that will work with any DOS computer.

These generic Microsoft DOS languages are both more and less than what we are used to having from IBM. They are more because they have been developed further than they were for IBM. For one example, these languages support the 8087 arithmetic coprocessor; for another, Fortran and Pascal have been adapted so that they can talk to each other and share subroutines.

But also these Microsoft DOS languages are less than what we have from IBM because they can't include features that are unique to the pc. The only great disadvantage in creating programs and programming languages for the general DOS market is that such programs and languages have to work with the lowest common denominator. Only the features that will be on every DOS computer can be used in common DOS programs. This means that some of the nicest things about the pc are gone, like many of the graphics and sound commands in Basic. Similarly, each computer model has its own particular function keys, which means that generic-DOS programs can't rely on having ten function keys laid out in the pattern that we are used to for the pc; a program can count on having some sort of special function keys, but not exactly our pc's function keys.

All this raises some tricky issues for anyone developing programs for the pc. If we tailor our programs to the pc, then we get to use the wonderful special features of the pc—but our programs probably won't work well on other DOS computers; and we don't even know for sure how they will work with IBM's future machines. If we make our programs DOS-generic, then we must give up the nice capabilities of any one computer and work with the lowest common features. This isn't an easy decision. A lot of time, effort, and money can ride on the choice made.

SimSoft™

"Simplified Software" for IBM PC's

Type & Learn™

Type & Learn was designed to teach executives, businessmen, students and individuals to type with speed & accuracy while also learning about the IBM-PC.

Features

- Includes beginning, intermediate and advanced typing. Saves & compares words per minute and accuracy scores. A keyboard image on the screen guides finger usage.
- Type & Learn can be used in the office or home at your own pace. No formal classes are necessary.
- When you match words, sentences and paragraphs in the typing drills you'll learn about the IBM-PC, its related components and computer terminology.

Includes 1 diskette & documentation manual. $60.00

Program requires DOS, BASICA, 64K (or more) of memory, 1 diskette drive, & printer. Add $2.50 shipping for each Type & Learn. Send for our software brochure.

Order your Type & Learn today!

MasterCard **Dealer Inquiries Invited** VISA

SimSoft, Inc.

P.O. Box 7095 • Port Huron, MI 48301 • (313) 984-1570

I would strongly argue, though, that we all tend to be shortsighted. The future of DOS-running computers is going to be very big. There are going to be lots of different computers, and likely even lots of different IBM computers. The more DOS-generic our programs are, both the programs we write and the programs we buy, the more comfortably we will move into the future of computing. This issue is like brushing your teeth; it's a nuisance now—but if we neglect it, the painful rot will set in later.

With the stage now set, let's look at the specifics of the Microsoft Business Basic compiler. The price is high, by the way. While the IBM Basic compiler sells for $300, the ordinary Microsoft Basic compiler lists for $400, and the Business Basic compiler has a list price of $600. At that price, Business Basic isn't for the casual user; it is intended for serious software developers.

Microsoft Business Basic comes to us in a form similar to that of the IBM Basic compiler. The compiler itself is a single program, and it compiles our Basic programs in a single pass. Just as it is with the IBM Basic compiler, Business Basic comes with two libraries and a runtime module. If our programs use some language features, such as *chaining* with *common*, then the runtime module is required to use the programs; otherwise, we can compile our programs either to use or not to use the runtime module. With the runtime module, our compiled programs take up much less space on disk; but we can't distribute the programs without the runtime module, and a licensing fee must be paid to Microsoft to distribute copies of the runtime module. If we want to avoid the runtime module, we give up some language features and our programs become bulkier, but they do not require any fee or permission from Microsoft to distribute and sell. (Incidentally, tests indicate that use of the runtime module slows programs down by about 30 percent; when speed matters, this can be an important difference.)

Also included with the compiler is the DOS Link program, which functions just like the Link that's included in IBM's PC-DOS, and a conversion program, called CBtoMB. CBtoMB translates programs from the peculiarities of CBasic into the peculiarities of Microsoft Basic. For users who have CBasic programs that they would like to convert for Microsoft DOS use, CBtoMB will do most of the work, and give warnings where there may be conversion problems.

The minimum machine requirements to use the Business Basic compiler are 64K and one disk drive, but, like most other languages, Business Basic works best with 128K and two disk drives.

The most interesting part about Business Basic is what extra features it adds to the Basic language and what it leaves out. Here is a summary of the extra features that make Business Basic special:

Business Basic provides a decimal single-precision floating point format; this solves one of the biggest problems in using Basic for accounting programs, which need more range than integers provide and which can't tolerate the rounding that is done in ordinary single-precision numbers. Decimal floating point for Business Basic provides fourteen decimal digits—which handles numbers up to one trillion dollars while not losing track of the exact pennies. That capacity should be big enough, but if it isn't and any rounding occurs, rounding will be done in decimal, not in binary. This long decimal format is the real heart of Business Basic, its main justification. All of the other features are just icing on the cake.

Arrays may have dynamic bounds. Dynamic arrays are a standard feature of interpretive Basic, but not of compiled Basic. Both the IBM and the standard Microsoft Basic compilers do not allow dynamic changes to the size of arrays; Business Basic does.

Functions can be more than one line so that they can include logic statements, looping, input, and so forth. In ordinary Basic, functions are little more than shorthand for algebraic formulas, even though most programming languages allow for functions that use the full power of programming logic. Business Basic gives functions the full use of the Basic language.

Input and output are enriched. This includes character input/output similar to what is provided in other—non-Microsoft—Basics and device-independent input and output.

Eight new string functions have been added. These features are what is new and extra in Business Basic. What is missing—from our point of view—is nothing peculiar to Business Basic. Business Basic includes all the features of the general Microsoft Basic but none of the special features of IBM Basic. All three Microsoft Basics—interpretive, ordinary compiled, and compiled Business Basic—are missing these IBM-specific features. So this is nothing peculiar to Business Basic. But from our point of view, as IBM users, all this is missing:

Graphics features, such as *draw*, *paint*, and *color*.

Sound features, such as *beep* and *play*.

All special use of the keyboard function keys and other IBM hardware features—such as the cassette, the light pen, and most screen-specific operations.

If you want to work within the very wonderful confines of the IBM pc, all the languages that IBM provides should suit your programming needs just fine. But if you want to address your programs to the larger and rapidly emerging world of DOS computers, now and in the future, then the Microsoft DOS-generic languages are for you. And for Basic programming, Microsoft Business Basic provides all the features of fast compiled Basic, with extensions that are very important for business programming. If you need the special capabilities of Business Basic, then it should be well worth its $600 list price.

Peter Norton is the author of the Norton Utilities *programs for the IBM pc, and the book* Inside the IBM/PC, *published by Robert J. Brady Co.* ▲

ISAM ROUTINES **$69.95**

GET and PUT records to disk files by "KEY". Under 2 seconds.
Browse forward or backward in key sequence.
Update any part of the record including the key.
Automatic recovery of disk space occupied by deleted records.
Keys do not have to be unique and can be any length.
Routines accessed from any Basic application. 6K overhead.
FAST!! Sorts 5000 records in 12 seconds.
Supports Multiple Keys. Compilable.
"A Top Notch Subroutine Package" - Vol. 2.4 Personal Computer Age.

MULTI-JOB **$69.95**
Concurrent Processing for DOS 1.1
Special 'til 1 Sept. 83, Regular Price $159.00

ELECTRONIC DISK & SPOOLER **$49.95**
HP7470 10 Plotter Programs **$24.95**
FUN 10 Games Package **$29.95**
". . . without a doubt, the best game value on the market"
- Vol. 2.1 Personal Computer Age
FUZZY WORM "Like Centipede" **$29.95**
CHOMPS "Pacman Like Game" **$29.95**
CHURCH MEMBERSHIP **$69.95**
BOWLING LEAGUE SECRETARY **$99.95**

WRITE FOR FREE CATALOG *DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED*

ENSIGN SOFTWARE
7337 NORTHVIEW
BOISE, IDAHO 83704 U.S.A.

Telephone Order Line
For Bank Card Sales
(208) 378-8086

VISA MasterCard

COMING SOON...

MS-DOS 3.0

by Kevin Goldstein

Judging from Microsoft's plans for the next version of MS-DOS, the most popular

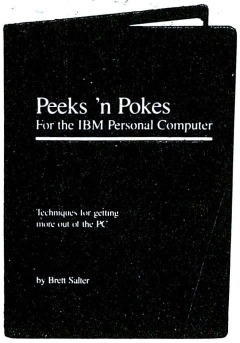
If you had a multitasking system, all

ou'd need to do is suspend the *Wordstar* rogram, load your spreadsheet (which von't wipe out *Wordstar* or your still-open etter file), do the calculations, then switch ack to *Wordstar* and insert them. You could witch back and forth between *Wordstar* and he spreadsheet as often as necessary. And if ou wanted to make a phone call to verify ome information in your letter, you could ust as easily move to a phone directory program without shutting down either *Wordtar* or the spreadsheet. That's what you can o with multitasking.

And that's only half the story. The other half is increased efficiency: A multitasking system appears to be doing more than one thing at a time. Of course, even with a multitasking system, your pc still has just one processor (actually two if you count the single-chipper in the keyboard), and that processor can work on only one program at a time. But a multitasking system is smart enough to realize that in many cases a large part of the time spent in any program is actually waiting time. Frequently, those idle moments are spent waiting for the disk to finish with a read or write operation. So rather than wait while the disk completes its activity, a multitasking system will just get the process started, then look for something else to do.

Let's take an example. Suppose you wrote a Basic program that sorted a long list of names found in a disk file. That program is likely to be what is known as very I/O-intensive, or I/O-bound—that is, most of the time the program is waiting while information is being read from or written to the disk. With DOS 1.1 or 2.0, that waiting time is simply lost. But if you had a multitasking system, while your sort program was cranking away you could simultaneously receive a file coming in from the phone line via your modem, print that letter you wrote earlier, and still be able to use your word processor to write another letter. The amazing thing is, except for the clatter of the disks, the rat-

Peeks 'n Pokes For the IBM PC puts you in control of your PC!


Peeks 'n Pokes
For the IBM Personal Computer
Techniques for getting more out of the PC
by Brett Salter

Are you writing programs in BASIC or Pascal? This unique product has a disk with 58 programs and a 38-page manual that helps you get 'underneath the covers' of the PC. Learn how to use PEEK, POKE, INP, OUT, and DOS/BIOS function calls to do what you want, fast! Do you want to perform functions not available from BASIC or Pascal? It's all explained in the manual and demonstrated in the sample programs. You can increase the capabilities of your programs while making them even easier to use.

The easy to learn techniques save you time and increase your productivity.

Peeks 'n Pokes shows you how to:
- Access the system's configuration
- Unprotect BASIC programs
- Scroll part or all of the screen
- Access the file directory
- Logically swap printers
- Read and change the keyboard
- Find more Peeks 'n Pokes
- And much more...

All this for only $30.00 plus $2.50 shipping. MasterCard and VISA accepted.

Data Base Decisions • 14 Bonnie Lane • Atlanta, GA 30328 • 404/256-3860

I would strongly argue, though, that we all tend to be shortsighted. The future of DOS-running computers is going to be very big. There are going to be lots of different computers, and likely even lots of different IBM computers. The more DOS-generic our programs are, both the programs we write and the programs we buy, the more comfortably we will move into the future of computing. This issue is like brushing your teeth; it's a nuisance now—but if we neglect it, the painful rot will set in later.

With the stage now set, let's look at the specifics of the Microsoft Business Basic compiler. The price is high, by the way. While the IBM Basic compiler sells for $300, the ordinary Microsoft Basic compiler lists for $400, and the Business Basic compiler has a list price of $600. At that price, Business Basic isn't for the casual user; it is intended for serious software developers.

Microsoft Business Basic comes to us in a form similar to that of the IBM Basic compiler. The compiler itself is a single program, and it compiles our Basic programs in a single pass. Just as it is with the IBM Basic compiler, Business Basic comes with two libraries and a runtime module. If our programs use some language features, such as *chaining* with *common*, then the runtime module is required to use the programs; otherwise, we can compile our programs either to use or not to use the runtime module. With the runtime module, our compiled programs take up much less space on disk; but we can't distribute the programs without the runtime module, and a licensing fee must be paid to Microsoft to distribute copies of the runtime module. If we want to avoid the runtime module, we give up some language features and our programs become bulkier, but they do not require any fee or permission from Microsoft to distribute and sell. (Incidentally, tests indicate that use of the runtime module slows programs down by about 30 percent; when speed matters, this can be an important difference.)

ISAM ROUTINES **$69.95**
GET and PUT records to disk files by "KEY". Under 2 seconds.
Browse forward or backward in key sequence.
Update any part of the record including the key.
Automatic recovery of disk space occupied by deleted records.
Keys do not have to be unique and can be any length.
Routines accessed from any Basic application. 6K overhead.
FAST!! Sorts 5000 records in 12 seconds.
Supports Multiple Keys. Compilable.
"A Top Notch Subroutine Package" - Vol. 2.4 Personal Computer Age.

MULTI-JOB **$69.95**
Concurrent Processing for DOS 1.1
Special 'til 1 Sept. 83, Regular Price $159.00

ELECTRONIC DISK & SPOOLER **$49.95**
HP7470 10 Plotter Programs **$24.95**
FUN 10 Games Package **$29.95**
". . . without a doubt, the best game value on the market"
- Vol. 2.1 Personal Computer Age

FUZZY WORM "Like Centipede" **$29.95**
CHOMPS "Pacman Like Game" **$29.95**
CHURCH MEMBERSHIP **$69.95**
BOWLING LEAGUE SECRETARY **$99.95**

WRITE FOR FREE CATALOG *DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED*

ENSIGN SOFTWARE
7337 NORTHVIEW
BOISE, IDAHO 83704 U.S.A.

Telephone Order Line
For Bank Card Sales
(208) 378-8086

VISA MasterCard

Also included with the compiler is the DOS Link program, which functions just like the Link that's included in IBM's PC-DOS, and a conversion program, called CBtoMB. CBtoMB translates programs from the peculiarities of CBasic into the peculiarities of Microsoft Basic. For users who have CBasic programs that they would like to convert for Microsoft DOS use, CBtoMB will do most of the work, and give warnings where there may be conversion problems.

The minimum machine requirements to use the Business Basic compiler are 64K and one disk drive, but, like most other languages, Business Basic works best with 128K and two disk drives.

The most interesting part about Business Basic is what extra
features it adds to th
a summary of the ex

Business Basic pr
format; this solves o
counting programs,
and which can't tol
single-precision num
provides fourteen de
trillion dollars while
pacity should be big
rounding will be do
format is the real he
of the other feature

Arrays may hav
dard feature of inter
the IBM and the sta
dynamic changes to

Functions can b
logic statements, lo
functions are little
even though most p
use the full power of
tions the full use of

Input and out
input/output similar
Basics and device-in

Eight new string
what is new and extr
point of view—is not
includes all the features of the general Microsoft Basic but none of the special features of IBM Basic. All three Microsoft Basics—interpretive, ordinary compiled, and compiled Business Basic—are missing these IBM-specific features. So this is nothing peculiar to Business Basic. But from our point of view, as IBM users, all this is missing:

Graphics features, such as *draw*, *paint*, and *color*.

Sound features, such as *beep* and *play*.

All special use of the keyboard function keys and other IBM hardware features—such as the cassette, the light pen, and most screen-specific operations.

If you want to work within the very wonderful confines of the IBM pc, all the languages that IBM provides should suit your programming needs just fine. But if you want to address your programs to the larger and rapidly emerging world of DOS computers, now and in the future, then the Microsoft DOS-generic languages are for you. And for Basic programming, Microsoft Business Basic provides all the features of fast compiled Basic, with extensions that are very important for business programming. If you need the special capabilities of Business Basic, then it should be well worth its $600 list price.

Peter Norton is the author of the Norton Utilities *programs for the IBM pc, and the book* Inside the IBM/PC, *published by Robert J. Brady Co.* ▲

COMING SOON...

MS-DOS 3.0

by Kevin Goldstein

Judging from Microsoft's plans for the next version of MS-DOS, the most popular of the pc operating systems should have no trouble holding on to its commanding lead.

The pc operating system is written for IBM by Microsoft Corporation. As sold by Microsoft, the DOS is called MS-DOS; IBM made some relatively minor changes to MS-DOS and released it as PC-DOS. So while IBM is absolutely mum on what future versions of its DOS will look like, a pretty good idea of what's in store from Big Blue can be garnered by keeping a sharp eye on Microsoft's plans.

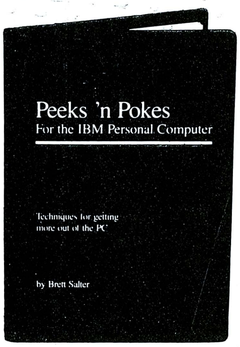
And exciting plans they are: The next versions of DOS will bring multitasking capabilities to the pc. That means, first of all, the ability to run more than one program at a time. As an example, suppose you were typing a letter in *Wordstar* and realized you needed to calculate some information in a spreadsheet program to include in your letter. With DOS 2.0, you would have to close the *Wordstar* document you were editing, exit to DOS, then load the spreadsheet and do your calculations. That done, you would return to DOS, reload *Wordstar*, open your letter file, find the place in the file where you left off, and go from there. Each time you needed to use the spreadsheet, you would have to go through this tedious process.

If you had a multitasking system, all you'd need to do is suspend the *Wordstar* program, load your spreadsheet (which won't wipe out *Wordstar* or your still-open letter file), do the calculations, then switch back to *Wordstar* and insert them. You could switch back and forth between *Wordstar* and the spreadsheet as often as necessary. And if you wanted to make a phone call to verify some information in your letter, you could just as easily move to a phone directory program without shutting down either *Wordstar* or the spreadsheet. That's what you can do with multitasking.

And that's only half the story. The other half is increased efficiency: A multitasking system appears to be doing more than one thing at a time. Of course, even with a multitasking system, your pc still has just one processor (actually two if you count the single-chipper in the keyboard), and that processor can work on only one program at a time. But a multitasking system is smart enough to realize that in many cases a large part of the time spent in any program is actually waiting time. Frequently, those idle moments are spent waiting for the disk to finish with a read or write operation. So rather than wait while the disk completes its activity, a multitasking system will just get the process started, then look for something else to do.

Let's take an example. Suppose you wrote a Basic program that sorted a long list of names found in a disk file. That program is likely to be what is known as very I/O-intensive, or I/O-bound—that is, most of the time the program is waiting while information is being read from or written to the disk. With DOS 1.1 or 2.0, that waiting time is simply lost. But if you had a multitasking system, while your sort program was cranking away you could simultaneously receive a file coming in from the phone line via your modem, print that letter you wrote earlier, and still be able to use your word processor to write another letter. The amazing thing is, except for the clatter of the disks, the rat-

Peeks 'n Pokes For the IBM PC puts you in control of your PC!


Peeks 'n Pokes
For the IBM Personal Computer
Techniques for getting more out of the PC
by Brett Salter

Are you writing programs in BASIC or Pascal? This unique product has a disk with 58 programs and a 38-page manual that helps you get 'underneath the covers' of the PC. Learn how to use PEEK, POKE, INP, OUT, and DOS/BIOS function calls to do what you want, fast! Do you want to perform functions not available from BASIC or Pascal? It's all explained in the manual and demonstrated in the sample programs. You can increase the capabilities of your programs while making them even easier to use.

The easy to learn techniques save you time and increase your productivity.

Peeks 'n Pokes shows you how to:
- Access the system's configuration
- Unprotect BASIC programs
- Scroll part or all of the screen
- Access the file directory
- Logically swap printers
- Read and change the keyboard
- Find more Peeks 'n Pokes
- And much more...

All this for only $30.00 plus $2.50 shipping.
MasterCard and VISA accepted.

Data Base Decisions • 14 Bonnie Lane • Atlanta, GA 30328 • 404/256-3860

tling of the printer, and the blinking of the modem lights, you wouldn't even know that your pc was doing anything other than running your word processor. The number of different processes you could have going simultaneously before performance became visibly affected depends on how compute-bound each process is—that is, how much microprocessor time each program requires; compute-bound is more or less the opposite of I/O-bound. All of the processes in the preceding scenario are very I/O-bound, so you could have a goodly number of them active at once.

Multitasking is a feature that has been available for some time in the mainframe and minicomputer world, as well as the high-end microcomputer arena. As a matter of fact, one of the leading suppliers of multitasking operating systems for the higher-performance machines is (look surprised) Microsoft. Microsoft sells an operating system known as Xenix, which is a version of yet another operating system known as Unix. Unix is exceedingly popular in the minicomputer market, where it is highly valued for both its power and versatility, especially when it's used for program development. Some time ago, Microsoft committed itself to the goal of evolving MS-DOS toward Unix (and thus Xenix) compatibility. Multitasking is one of the hallmarks of Unix, so the company's plans to add this powerful feature to MS-DOS should come as no surprise.

What might come as a surprise, however, are some of the additional advantages of Xenix compatibility. According to Mark Ursino, Microsoft's marketing manager for Xenix, it should be fairly easy to move high-level language programs from Xenix machines to DOS 3.0 machines; with more than fifty thousand Xenix users and untold numbers of Unix users, that opens up a new and absolutely immense software library to the pc.

PC-DOS actually started to look a lot like Unix in its recent incarnation as version 2.0. As a matter of fact, almost all if not all of the new features that showed up in DOS 2.0 are borrowed directly from Unix, including I/O redirection, piping (a special form of I/O redirection), hierarchical file structures, installable device drivers, the configuration file (config.sys), background printing, and the filters *more*, *sort*, and *find*. Full Unix includes a slew of additional filters and utilities, as well as other features like a powerful program editor; programs can be compiled and run while you're still in Unix. It will be interesting to see how many of these other utilities and additional features appear in DOS 3.0. In any case, the two will apparently be similar enough, in terms of both user interface and what's under the skin, that moving programs and programmers between the two will be a relatively easy job.

PC-DOS will be different from both Unix and Xenix in one respect, however: Unlike its two bigger brothers, which are written in the C programming language, PC-DOS is coded in assembler. That's particularly interesting, considering that Microsoft will also be offering MS-DOS for computers based on microprocessors other than the 8086 family and those other versions will be written in C. One likely explanation for that state of affairs is that far more copies of MS-DOS will be sold for 8086 machines than for any other type. When a program is sold in such volume, it's probably worth the extra time and effort required to write it in the somewhat more efficient assembly language.

So when can you wrap your disk drive around this wonderful new operating system? The best estimates now available place Microsoft's introduction of MS-DOS 3.0 at some time in mid or late summer. Microsoft released MS-DOS 2.0 some six months or so before IBM released it as PC-DOS 2.0, so you may not find PC-DOS 3.0, complete with IBM's imprimatur on it, in your ComputerLand stores before early next year. It should be well worth the wait. ▲

MORGAN
COMPUTING CO., INC.

Increase Productivity!

IBM PC™ Utilities

Mainframe Power For Your IBM PC™

TRACE86™—This unusual utility program executes compiled programs at a slow speed while dynamically displaying an Assembler version of the code, the machine registers, and the memory contents. **TRACE86** is a fascinating tool for learning and debugging . . . Only $75.00

COPY PROTECTOR™—A software utility that prevents the unauthorized duplication of programs. The normal use of COPY & DISKCOPY commands to duplicate program diskettes is rendered ineffective . . . Only $95.00

TED™—A programmer's text editor. **TED** is similar to editors found on main frame computers (e.g., SPF). Features include: automatic line numbering, moving and copying program lines one at a time or in blocks, inserting code at any location, tabbing, merging designated lines of code from one program into another, printing program listing with or without line numbers, stamping time and date and version number into the code and more. (128K RAM) . . . Only $95.00

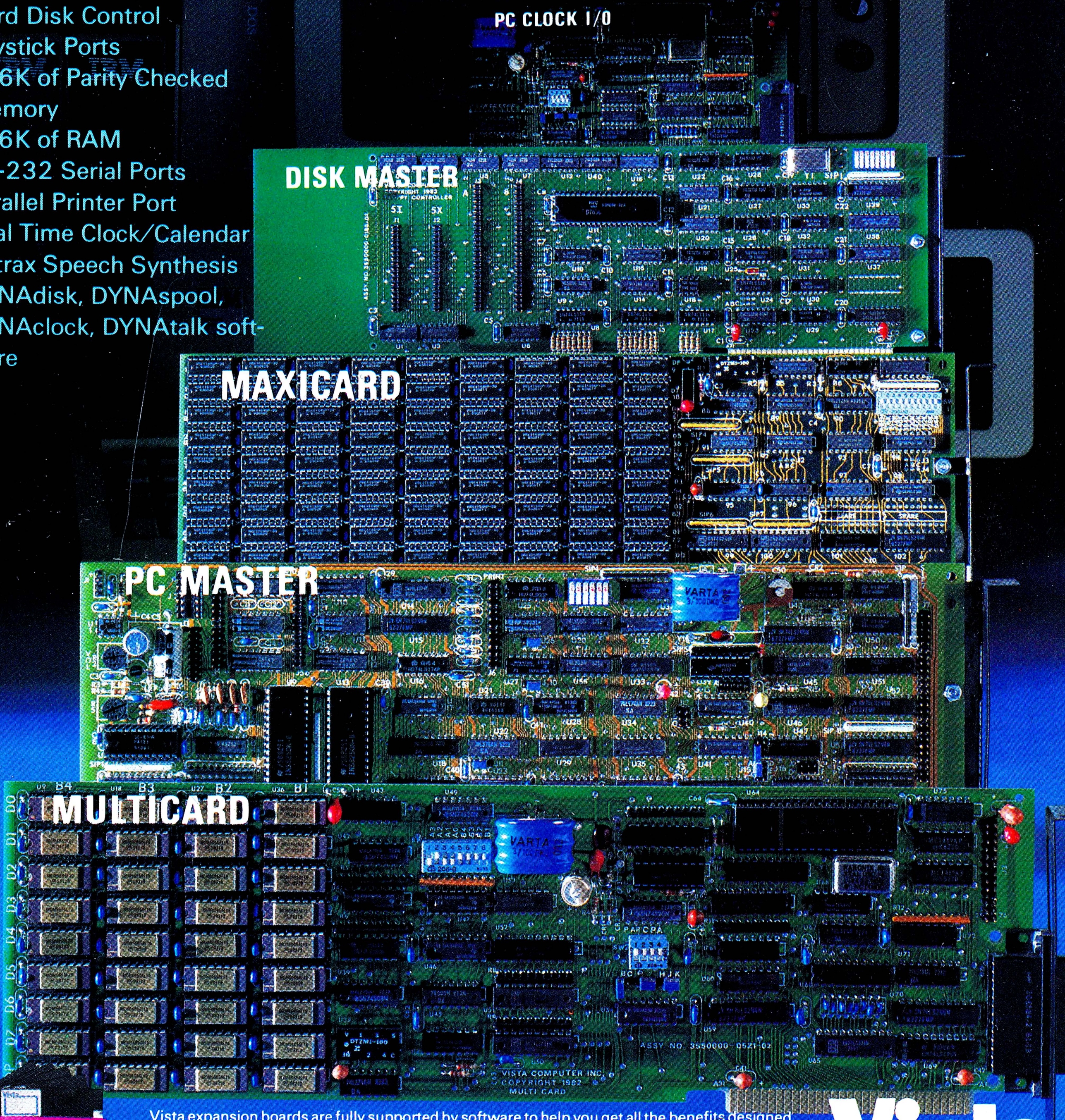
MORGAN
COMPUTING CO., INC.
10400 N. Central Expwy., Suite 210 • Dallas, TX 75231
(214) 739-5895
We accept VISA and MASTER CARD.

Expanding Your PC™ or XT™?

ASK for Vista

CHECK THESE FEATURES

- Multiple Floppy Disk Control - interface 5 1/4″ and 8″ media
- Hard Disk Control
- Joystick Ports
- 256K of Parity Checked Memory
- 576K of RAM
- RS-232 Serial Ports
- Parallel Printer Port
- Real Time Clock/Calendar
- Votrax Speech Synthesis
- DYNAdisk, DYNAspool, DYNAclock, DYNAtalk software



Vista expansion boards are fully supported by software to help you get all the benefits designed into the boards. Our DYNAdisk, DYNAspool, DYNAdos, DYNAclock, DYNAtalk, and Hard Disk interface software are supplied on 5-1/4″ floppy diskettes. Appropriate diskettes are supplied with each board having the compatible feature. The software gives you the operational routines to achieve full serviceability from your expansion investment.

Your Vista Dealer has more details on our fine family of expansion boards and floppy disk drive systems. See him for a full listing of Vista's economical, high quality products.
For the Vista Dealer or Distributor nearest you - call our Vista Sales lines.

Vista
COMPUTER COMPANY, INC.
1317 East Edinger Avenue
Santa Ana, California 92705
(714) 953-0523 (800) 854-8017
Telex 910-595-1565

IBM, PC, XT are trademarks of International Business Machines Corp.

Every Executive Needs an Organizer Like T.I.M.®

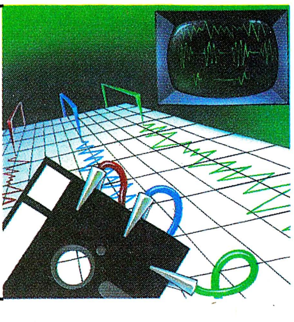
Your valuable business information needs to be organized. T.I.M. can do it easily and quickly on your IBM-PC. As the executive's data base management system, T.I.M. makes it easy for you to assemble all your information so it can be ordered, changed or retrieved and then printed to suit a variety of circumstances. From phone lists through complex sales reports, T.I.M. helps you put it all together using plain English commands — no programmerese to confuse you. Plus T.I.M. interfaces with all of the most popular word processing systems as well as powerful tools like Visicalc® ... T.I.M. is the executive's solution that's simple to use, easy to learn and pays off in bottom line efficiency for you and your organization. For more information see your local IBM-PC dealer or contact Innovative Software for the name of the T.I.M. dealer nearest you.

Innovative Software® developers of practical businessware for the executive.

T.I.M. III is sold at Computerland®, Sears Business Centers, The Xerox Stores, Computer Marts, Entre' Computer Centers^{SM}, CompuShops® and other independent dealers.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380 • Overland Park, KS 66210 USA • 913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542

marketalk reviews



Unless otherwise indicated, software listed runs in DOS 1.1 or 2.0 with either display adapter and requires 64K and at least one disk drive.

Palantir. By Mike Griffin. The trend today is for word processors to offer a wealth of features—so many that it takes weeks for an intrepid typist to give each feature a thorough workout. *Palantir* is a perfect example. The difficult task is finding what it can't do. In *Palantir*'s case, the answer is ''not much.''

Palantir compares with *WordStar*, *FinalWord*, *Perfect Writer*, and *PowerText*—all programs that offer an almost bewildering array of editing and formatting options. *Palantir*'s are easy to learn, easy to use, and hard to use incorrectly.

The program's command syntax is built around two fundamental conceptions. The first involves the escape and enter keys. When *Palantir*'s main menu first appears, the word *edit* is highlighted. Press enter and you get the editing screen; from there, press escape and you're back to the main menu. Hit enter again and you're back in edit again, with the cursor located exactly where you had left it.

At any point in the program, escape takes you back—one level higher in the program structure—and enter takes you forward. Enter also works as a carriage return, of course (and puts a paragraph mark on the screen).

The *set* and *clear* commands constitute *Palantir*'s second fundamental syntax concept. *Set* is F1 and *clear* is F2 (*Palantir* doesn't use control-character commands).

To underline, press *set* and type a hyphen. Then type the words you want to underline, and then type *clear* followed by a hyphen. The screen promptly displays your text, now underlined. If you set an attribute (such as underlining) but do not clear it, the attribute is automatically cleared at the end of the paragraph.

A print ruler keeps you informed about what attribute you're setting or clearing; it also informs you about current page width, tab settings, justification type, insert status, and cursor location.

The cursor can be moved in a variety of ways. As in Griffin's previous opus, *Magic Wand*, a press of the home key puts you at the beginning of the current line. A second hit takes you to the upper left corner of the screen. Hitting home once more takes you to column 1 of the last line of the screen. Right cursor arrow followed by home takes you to the end of a line. You can get a new home for your cursor by hitting *set (F1) home* anywhere in the text.

Tab moves the cursor to the next word. The arrow keys move it as you would expect. The only significant omission on the cursor-movement front is back-tab; there's no command to move you back one word.

Text can be scrolled by line, screen, page, or document, and these modalities are set by means of function keys. F3 controls a direction arrow on the status line; point the arrow forward and you scroll ahead, either by line, screen, page, or document. Press F3 again to reverse the arrow and change the scroll direction.

F7 is the format key. Press it anywhere in a paragraph and the remainder of that paragraph is reformatted. Press it on the document's first line and the entire document is reformatted.

You may also *set* format. Press F1 followed by F7 for access to format parameters: left and right margins, tab stops, lines per inch, characters per inch, type of sub- and superscripting, choice of overstrike character, and type of justification. Unlike some word processors, this one lets you set a variety of formats with a single document. To simplify the handling of standard document types (memos, letters, articles, or whatever), you may save parameters in their own files and recall them as needed.

Text may be flushed right, centered, indented, underlined, double-underlined (if your printer complies), boldfaced, overstruck, split, deleted, moved or copied within a document, saved, merged with another file, subscripted, or superscripted. Pages may be numbered in any fashion that pleases, including with alternating positions for odd and even page numbers. Headers and footers are easily accomplished, and decimal tab is available to assist in number alignment.

At any point in your use of the program, help is a mere two keystrokes away. After you select help, you're shown a table of contents that offers ten topics—everything from cursor movement to ''tips and miscellany.'' Each topic contains one or more screens of information; there are twenty-five screens in all.

Although the format options and text attributes result in the insertion of special characters into your text, these code characters are

NOW 1-2-3™
IS COMPATIBLE
WITH
THE HERCULES
GRAPHICS CARD™

Call or write us for information
about the Hercules Graphics Card.

Hercules Computer Technology
2550 Ninth Street Suite 210
Berkeley, CA 94710

Telephone: 415 654-2476

HERCULES

Hercules Graphics Card is a trademark of
Hercules Computer Technology. 1-2-3 is a
trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.

not normally visible on-screen. You can make them visible by typing *set D* (for display). You may also print the codes along with your text, if you wish.

Another handy feature is the provision for lexicon files. Lexicon, which occupies F9, allows you to store and recall often-used phrases. Each lexicon file can contain a maximum of thirty-six phrases, each of which can be up to 250 characters long; that's enough for entire sentences or short paragraphs. Entries may include blank lines and carriage returns. Any number of specialized lexicons may be created; your boilerplate copy is, essentially, unlimited.

Function-five is for *find*. It allows you to search—either backward or forward—for characters, words, or phrases of up to sixty-four characters. Wild cards and other special characters, such as formatting codes, are permitted in search fields.

Along with *find*, you may delete or replace. Both may be done once, a specified number of times, or automatically throughout the document. You can choose "noisy" mode and watch the program make the changes or "quiet" (undisplayed) mode for zippier replacement. After the operation, *Palantir* will inform you of the number of times it found the search field.

Yet another welcome feature is *intensity*, which allows you to print each line as many as nine times. That's a godsend if your ribbons are worn; kick the intensity up to, say, three or four, and you'll print dense, black text. Or set intensity to zero (for nonprinting) and create "fill-in-the-blank" screen forms, in which only selected information is printed.

Palantir is not a single program but a collection of subprograms that shuttle in and out of memory—much like *WordStar*. Unlike some other word processors, it won't hog your RAM and leave you without room for your text. *Palantir* also uses a virtual filing technique to send portions of your work to disk as document size increases. In theory, single documents can fill an entire disk.

A file menu gives access to directory, *inspect*, *copy*, *rename*, *erase*, and *new disk*—operations that can be carried out without your leaving *Palantir*. *Inspect* allows you to call up a file and scroll by page—without losing your place in the document you're editing.

A backup option copies your file to disk, then reads it back into memory again. Backup isn't automatic, but *Palantir* won't let you accidentally destroy or delete your text; nor can you exit the program without either saving or deliberately discarding your work. The virtual filing in any case assures that most of your text will be on disk, should the cat pull your plug.

At last count, Designer Software had *Palantir* printer drivers for over forty popular and not-so-popular printers. Among those supported are the Diablo 620, 630, and 650; the Qume 5 and Qume Spring 11; all the NEC Spinwriters (including those with twin and single-sheet feeders), the NEC 8023A, the Brother, the IDS Prism, the F-10 Starwriter, the Radio Shack Daisy Wheel II, and the C. Itoh Prowriter.

Your printer is selected when you run the Install program, the first time you use *Palantir*. Install lets you choose a default printer, but you can also choose a different printer from the print menu. Install also allows you to select monochrome or color display; the mono option uses screen underlining, dual intensity, and reverse video to distinguish blocks of text and highlight commands.

Last, but certainly not least, *Palantir* comes with a *Mailout* feature—a mini-programming language that allows you to create custom mass mailings (much like *WordStar*'s extra-cost *MailMerge*).

Mailout uses nesting, variables, and conditionals. Nesting allows files to be combined during printing. Variables allow fill-in-the-blank documents with variable input at print time; and conditionals allow you to send a variety of custom documents based on variable information contained in data files.

BLUE

The Word Processor

PRICE, $150.
MANUAL ALONE, $35.

SYMMETRIC SOFTWARE

2005 BALBOA BLVD. SUITE 256
NEWPORT BEACH,
CALIFORNIA 92263
(714) 887-8595
California residence add 6% sales tax.

master charge THE INTERBANK CARD
VISA

DEALER
INQUIRIES
INVITED

Here are some examples of conditionals:

IF CITY = "Smallville" . . . [do other commands]

IF SEX = "M" SET TITLE = "Mr."

IF NOT GREETING SET GREETING = "Sirs"

If conditionals and nesting sound intimidating, fear not. The manual clearly explains *Mailout* (as it does everything else in *Palantir*), and the disks come with sample files to set you on your way.

At this time, *Palantir* is available in English, Danish, and Spanish versions. An Arabic version is coming.

The program is distributed on a double-sided disk and is not copy-protected; it can be transferred to hard disk or RAM disk for enhanced speed. dc

Palantir, by Mike Griffin, Designer Software (3400 Montrose Boulevard, Suite 718, Houston, TX 77006; 713-520-8221). $450.

Shoebox. By Atlantic Software. *Shoebox* is an agenda management program designed either for individual users or groups of users. For group use it allows individual password protection as well as a coördinator feature; the coordinator feature permits one person access to the records of all system users while screening the other users from one another.

The program is suited best for the storage and retrieval of time-related information—reminders of things to be done, phone messages, appointments, recurring but easily forgotten chores, and so on. Whatever you now have stuck on the wall with a pushpin or lying about your desk on the back of a business card is a candidate for *Shoebox* storage. You can also use the program to track expenses associated with particular activities, persons, or whatever.

Shoebox records your information in two separate databases—reminders and appointments. The first of these is for items associated with a particular date but no specific time of day. The appointment database presents you with an hour-by-hour summary of your day's obligations—or a summary by whatever other time interval is appropriate for your work. This separation of time-specific and general reminders has the virtue of allowing your appointment agenda to look like a physical appointment calendar; the price of such separation is that you have to remember to check in two different places to see what's going on on a given day.

In addition to keeping dated and timed reminders, *Shoebox* provides a rudimentary accounting capability. You can switch from the schedule display of either database to an expense display. Here six fields are available: account, category, amount, comment, and two fields marked description; all are alphanumeric. The account field and the date on which an expense item is recorded may be used subsequently for selective retrieval and printout. Expense items may be keyed to schedule entries so that when you summon a printout or an on-screen expense summary you get in effect an additional 125-character comment field.

The reminder database ordinarily lists items in the same order in which they're entered, but with a little effort you can devise your own priority scheme. To do that, put any alphanumeric characters between curly brackets anywhere within a schedule item. *Shoebox* will interpret the characters within the brackets as a priority code and arrange items so marked in ascending ASCII order.

Data entry and editing are straightforward. From the schedule display—of either database—hit I for *insert* or C for *change* and you're presented with a two-line field for your item. Hitting enter steps you through various other fields: the date on which the item is to begin, the date on which it's to end, any appropriate repeat pattern, and any desired advance warning. Start and end dates default to the current system date. Advance warning may be anything up to 120 days. Dates may be specified either with numbers and slashes or by day of the week; one or two characters is sufficient to name a day of the week, and the system will pick the next date falling on a specified day.

The repeat pattern options are generous and flexible. Items may be designated as occurring once only (the default), daily, every so many days (any number from 2 to 999), once or more weekly (you specify which days of the week), once or more per month, once or more per year, or once in a while (you say exactly when). Items that recur one or more times monthly may be specified in a variety of ways: on precise dates each month (for example, the first and fifteenth), on the same day each week, or on patterns such as the third Tuesday or the last Friday or the last day of the month. The program is smart enough to accommodate virtually any pattern you require.

When you boot *Shoebox* you're presented first with the reminder database. Items whose date matches the system date are listed first; following these are any reminders from earlier dates that you haven't marked as done. These appear oldest items first, with their entry dates displayed to the left. If you get tired of being nagged by old items that you know you'll never finish, you can either lie to the system and check them off or exercise a purge option; the purge will be carried out on all live items up to a specified date and will include or exclude expense items, as you wish.

There's a search feature that will locate specific items in either database singly, as well as a history feature that will display all items matching a given criterion. The history feature allows you to use *Shoebox* as a phone log; when you return someone's phone call you can know more or less immediately what's already transpired between you and the caller. Unfortunately there's no print history option; but for that, of course, there's always printscreen.

Shoebox-supplied printed reports are available for expenses of selected dates and accounts and for agenda material from either database.

The manual is clear and includes a business-hours technical-support number. A trial call elicited articulate, friendly assistance.

The chief limitations of *Shoebox* are that it's a little slow and rather disk-intensive. You can get around the latter problem with a

Time Accountant

MANAGEMENT TOOL FOR PROFESSIONALS

Where does the time go? And who's paying for it? Time Accountant[1] and your IBM Personal Computer[2] answer these questions with hard facts.

Complete system. Each professional uses a handy pocket calendar/time sheet to record time and expense information. Then it's easy to enter data on a specially formatted computer screen.

Reports. Time Accountant provides the reports you need to analyze your firm's performance by professional, client or project.

Invoice. Time Accountant generates a draft invoice and you enter any necessary adjustments.

Flexibility. Whether you bill for two professionals or two dozen, Time Accountant adapts to your business.

Time Accountant
1230 University Drive
Menlo Park, CA 94025
(415) 328-7877

[1] ® Software Quality Associates.

[2] ® IBM Corporation.

RAM drive or a program like *Cache-Q*, but you may still find *Shoebox* a trifle sluggish in operation.

It's also copy-protected. The scheme is a little unusual. You're encouraged to copy the files from the distribution disk to your own back-ups, but you have to work with the distribution disk in drive A. If anything goes awry, you're supposed to back down onto the distribution disk and try again. And if that's of no avail, you can return the distribution disk for replacement. cs

Shoebox, by Atlantic Software, Techland Systems (39 Carwall Avenue, Mount Vernon, NY 10552; 914-699-8467). $195.

Everyman's Database Primer, Featuring dBase II. By Robert A. Byers. *Everyman's Database Primer* is a book published by Ashton-Tate, the publishers of *dBase II*.

dBase II is a well-known database program with strong and continuing sales. It's a relational database that includes a powerful programming language tailored to produce very sophisticated applications. It's entirely possible to create full-blown accounting packages programmed exclusively in *dBase II*.

For people with modest data-handling needs, *dBase II* may be like going after a gopher with a submachine gun. For those who need the power, however, it's invaluable.

As you may have guessed by now, you're not going to learn *dBase II* in ten minutes.

Now a word about Ashton-Tate. These folks know how to market their wares. Dealer support for *dBase II* is thorough, friendly, and professional. Ashton-Tate pioneered the concept of demo disks that could be used for thirty days. If you like the demo, tear open the real disk and you've just bought the program. (Actually, they had your money all along, but you could get a refund by returning the unopened program disk. A variation on the "You-drop-it, you-buy-it" school of merchandising.) By the way, want an Ashton-Tate jacket? Give 'em a call; they've got your size.

Everyman's Database Primer is Ashton-Tate's newest merchandising tool. Don't be fooled by the title; this book is not really a database primer, except for the first ten pages. It doesn't merely "feature" *dBase II*; the book is about *dBase II* almost from the word go. Don't expect any evenhanded comparisons of available databases; no other commercial products are even mentioned.

(The best example of this is found in the glossary, where Pascal is defined as "a computer language having some of the features of *dBase II*." That's certainly an unusual definition of Pascal!)

Minor subterfuge aside, this is an excellent book for beginning *dBase II* users. It begins by explaining the concepts of fields and records—and even the use of the return key.

The text is clear and readable. There are lots of cartoons, illustrations, examples, and large reproductions of screen displays.

You may not be able to write a general ledger after you turn the last page, but you will have a thorough grounding in planning, building, modifying, using, and procedure and report writing with your database—oops, with *dBase II*.

While the book assumes you're using CP/M rather than PC-DOS (MS-DOS), the operating system isn't really a consideration in learning to use *dBase II*.

A glossary, a good index, and a detachable reference card for *dBase II* are included. dc

Everyman's Database Primer, Featuring dBase II, by Robert A. Byers, Ashton-Tate (10150 West Jefferson Boulevard, Culver City, CA 90230; 213-204-5570). $15.

Medman. This medical office management/database system tracks referring physicians, diagnoses, procedures, Medicare codes, insurance forms, charges, payments, responsible third parties; it ages accounts, prints reports and statements, does monthly billing, and allows integrated use of such other software as word processors and accounting packages. While the program can be accommodated on a lesser configuration, its storage capacity is more suitable to a hard disk system. Since the average medical office would require substantial storage for a worthwhile management system, a hard disk is easily justified in terms of both time and money.

Medman, menu-driven, is fairly easy to learn; running through two examples should be sufficient preparation for entering patient data. Menus guide the user comfortably through a logical sequence of data input, such as new-patient information, service provided, charges, insurance/third-party information, and print statement.

Those familiar with other systems of this kind will especially notice how certain information is "learned" as it is entered. For example, if you want to enter a new procedure and procedure code number for a patient, most programs require that you exit from patient data entry, input the code to the database, and then return to patient data entry. With *Medman*, such is not the case; names and numbers are "learned" as they are entered, a considerable timesaver.

Another timesaver is the program's ability to call up names, diagnoses, and procedures from its database with the input of initial letters sufficient to avoid ambiguity. With such partial entry, the first matching item is brought to the screen; if incorrect, the user selects the next item forward or back (in alphabetical or numerical order) or retypes enough characters to call up the proper selection directly. When a procedure is called, its corresponding code number and usual charge is also displayed, and the charge can, if you wish, be changed at this point.

If you don't wish to enter the proper procedure or diagnosis code at the time of new entry, the program assigns a temporary number. When time permits correction, the program automatically changes all corresponding temporary code numbers in all database files.

The program encourages the use of procedure code numbers, including them in statements and consequently decreasing response time from insurance companies. The program is designed to generate a patient's bill at the time that service is rendered, with the intent of speeding insurance company payments.

Statements can be addressed directly to the insurer or any re-

Tired of staring at that second Joystick?

Use 'em both with **Y-CABLES** from Tesserax, Inc.

Allows simultaneous use of **BOTH** T.G. Products or similar Joysticks!

Dual-Joystick Entertainment Software Available Soon!

Price: ***$34 95***

plus $5.00 Shipping & Handling
Fla. Residents add 5% sales tax
Send check or money order (no stamps or C.O.D.'s) to:

**TESSERAX, INC.
Dept. PCS
P.O. Box 1996
Homosassa Springs,
FL 32647**

sponsible third party, and can be printed directly on an insurance company's claim form.

For clinics or offices with several terminals, the program's comprehensive calendar/appointment book permits scheduling by modem. Further, *Medman* allows for thousands of doctors to use the same system, an obvious advantage for multiple-doctor clinics, and keeps track of each doctor, patient, transaction, and payment without complicating the system for the single user.

Another nice feature is built-in security. Multiple passwords are used to edit various levels of data. Other features include minimal typing; single-key entries, such as M or F for sex, require no enter keystroke.

Physicians considering software for their offices should certainly look at *Medman*. Its authors have designed an exceptionally efficient and useful program. bo

Medman, Galleria Micro Systems (5085 Westheimer, Suite 4700, Houston, TX 77056). $5,000.

The Dow Jones Reporter. The Dow Jones News/Retrieval service is primarily a financially oriented on-line information service that was started in 1974 and now has more than fifty-five thousand subscribers. Currently the service offers nineteen databases falling into four categories: Dow Jones business and economic news, Dow Jones quotes, financial and investment services, and general news and information services.

The IBM Dow Jones Reporter, Version 1.0, is a special-purpose communications package designed for use with the Dow Jones News/Retrieval service. Menu-driven, the program's basic structure consists of the Dow Jones Services, the Manual Entry Mode, and the Maintenance Mode, each of which can be accessed from the program's main menu.

Selecting the Dow Jones Services from the main menu allows the user to connect to the News/Retrieval service. Dial the appropriate Tymnet telephone number and the program automatically logs on to the service. Once on-line, you can access four of the service's databases: News, Current Quotes, Historical Quotes, and Disclosure II. Alternatively, you can access any of the nineteen databases manually through the News/Retrieval service command language and menu system.

The Manual Entry Mode permits two methods of connecting to the News/Retrieval service—a manual log-on procedure in which you dial the appropriate telephone number and enter from the keyboard the requested terminal identifier and password, or the automatic procedure identical to the one followed in the Dow Jones Services selection. Once on-line, users can access all nineteen databases manually or four of them under menu control.

The Maintenance Mode selection permits you to perform three different sets of tasks. You can enter or change user profile information, such as your password, which is used during automatic log-on. You can create lists of stocks or bonds used for automatically accessing the Current Quotes database (up to fifty lists, each with a maximum of eighty stock or bond symbols). And you can print or delete files saved to disk during an on-line session.

Those wanting to monitor their investment portfolios and evaluate securities will find especially useful the program's automatic log-on, stock list capability, and ability to save data to disk.

The program has a number of shortcomings, however. Its structure, for example, seems unnecessarily complicated and confusing. Functions are needlessly repeated and different menus have identical names. The required disk handling is cumbersome and excessive. Even with a two-drive system, a typical session will require inserting and removing data and program disks about ten times. Since the program is copy-protected and permits only one backup disk, such excessive handling creates considerable risk. Further, the program disk is written to during use, and you are instructed not to put a write-protect tab on it.

While the automatic log-on procedure is convenient, it will not

MULTIPLE USERS UNDER PC-DOS!

MultiLink. *A unique software system which turns PC-DOS into a multi-user multi-tasking operating system for the IBM Personal Computer.*

- Inexpensive terminals attach to serial ports on your PC
- Up to 9 concurrent users
- Terminals can run most existing non-graphics software designed for PC-DOS
- Full-screen support for appropriate CRTs
- Minimal overhead, no dedicated disk
- Shared access and update of disks and files
- Supports Basic, Pascal, COBOL, and other development languages
- Compatible with hard or floppy disks
- Free host communications software supports public dial-in
- Available NOW at $225! Ask about our **demo version!**

VISA, MC Accepted. Dealer inquiries invited.

THE SOFTWARE LINK, INCORPORATED • 6700 23-B ROSWELL ROAD • ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30328 • 404/255-1254

work with smart, direct-connect modems that have command modes, such as the Hayes Smartmodem. Also, it works only with Tymnet, not Telenet or other telecommunications networks.

Encryption of the program, which is written in Basic, prevents knowledgeable users from patching for specific requirements, such as configuring the automatic log-on procedure for smart modems.

Data files are saved in a nonstandard ASCII format and cannot be displayed on-screen, only printed, which means that users cannot select from saved data but must print all information in the file.

The user's manual instructions on how to use the Dow Jones Services and Maintenance Mode selections are adequate, but instructions on how to log on through the Manual Entry Mode are not. A diagram of the program's structure included in the user's manual is not an accurate representation. Further, restrictions on the use of nonalphabetic characters in naming data files are inadequately explained, and the user may not be prevented from using restricted characters by means of appropriate error messages and procedures. For example, using a colon as part of a data file name causes the spurious error message "Diskette Full" to be displayed.

In addition to the software and its documentation, the Dow Jones Reporter's cost of $100 includes the initial subscription fee of $50, a password, and one hour of free introductory time on the News/Retrieval service. dh

The Dow Jones Reporter, IBM (Box 1328, Boca Raton, FL, 33432; 305-998-6007). $100.

Bulk Mailer. By Joe Marinello. Satori Software ventures into the IBM Personal Computer market with a product that flies in the face of conventional wisdom. Most publishers out there are busily creating the grandest, most versatile, most detailed database program ever. Or ignoring the whole problem. Satori has gone a different direction, isolating a problem area and addressing it with code intended for no other purpose.

In this instance, the problem addressed is one that's been a bugaboo for microcomputer owners since the dawn of Altair: How to establish and maintain a reliable mailing list. It makes no difference whether that list consists of friends, business associates, customers, or club members; getting software that easily and efficiently manages the task has been nettlesome.

Bulk Mailer handles the job with an aplomb based on the fact that that's the only job the code has to perform. You can't get out invoices, or wedding invitations, or statements, or purchase orders with it. All you can do is maintain a mailing list. It's that single-mindedness that makes *Bulk Mailer* so efficient.

In fact, the record size is so limited that it almost scares a user off. You get four address lines of twenty-eight characters and one code line of five characters. Clearly, there's not enough space there to do much besides entering mailing information.

The configuration is surprisingly versatile. Thoughtful application of the code line can enable a user to filter records of a common type with ease. In addition, the second address line of the record can be used in three ways: It can be an additional address line, printing in sequence between lines 1 and 3 as you might expect; preceded by a no-print code, it can be used to store a short comment that will not appear on the mailing label; or, preceded by a priority code, it will print before the first address line. That permits a mailer to enter a message such as "Buy now for Autumn" on the second line and have it print ahead of the mailing information on the mailing label.

Bulk Mailer has maintenance features that any regular mailer will appreciate. There's an automatic purge function that will, on request, delete exact duplicate entries. The same function will report *apparent* duplicates for the user to accept or delete. The requirement for consistency of data entry is eased when a feature recognizing apparent duplicates is implemented.

The program keeps a zip-code inventory that gives the user quick U. S. Postal Service reporting data or information on the geographical distribution of the list. In addition, the program will print last the labels from zip codes in which there are fifty or more entries, a feature that facilitates the readying of mail for delivery to the Postal Service.

Using the account number, you can find any record in the database in about two seconds. That kind of performance can be achieved because of the limited aspirations of the program. It'll only handle the number of records you can put on two disks, if you have a two-disk system, or one disk for single-disk systems. All records are on-line at all times.

In terms of record capacity, that means you can have between twelve hundred and forty-eight hundred names on-line, depending on whether your system is single-drive or dual-drive and on whether it is single-sided or double-sided.

In the works is a hard-disk version that will store thirty-two thousand names on a ten-megabyte hard disk. A utility to convert the floppy version to the hard-disk version already exists.

Think of your software library as analogous to a baseball team. Every team needs more than nine strong players to succeed. Required as well are good pinch hitters and excellent relief pitchers. Similarly with software. The library that only holds a spreadsheet, a word processor, and one of the all-purpose databases may be strong on paper, but lacks the specialization to do well in any number of critical areas.

In the past, mailing-list applications have been a primary source of user discontent. Now Satori offers *Bulk Mailer* as a relief pitcher. Users shouldn't decline the offer, any more than George Steinbrenner should refuse the chance to get Bruce Sutter. at

Bulk Mailer, by Joe Marinello. Satori Software (5507 Woodlawn N., Seattle, WA 98103; 206-633-1469). Floppy disk version, $125. Hard-disk version, when ready, $350. ▲

SCREEN MACHINE

Screen Management
FOR
IBM-PC Pascal, FORTRAN, COBOL & Assembler

Creates a 160 column by 25 line display buffer.
The screen, acting as a window, can
view any section of the buffer.

Set color, character attributes and cursor position.

Allows vertical & horizontal scrolling, erasing and more.

Manipulate one character, one line,
or whole blocks of text.

Includes: Tutorial, Example Programs, Complete User's
Manual & Quick Reference Card

$49.95

OMRIC
Corporation

258 Tower Hill Road
P.O. Box 309
Chaplin, CT 06235
(203) 455-0492

newspeak

Enthusiastic heavy-metal rock fans press against the stage on Sunday, May 29, at the 1983 US Festival.

Δ **The Return of the US Festival.** Before noon on Monday, May 30, Steve Wozniak spoke to a tentful of US '83 attendees and the usual media. Toward the end of Woz's question-and-answer session, one young fellow turned to his companion and asked rhetorically, "Doesn't look like a millionaire, does he?"

Let no one accuse Wozniak of cowardice. All four days of the 1983 US Festival, he put himself on the line—fighting hard to remain optimistic while parrying a thousand thrusts from the media. Wozniak did all he could to make this year's festival work; he believed in it, he bankrolled it, he put his heart and soul into it.

Was it worth it? That depends on whom you ask. More than likely, the average concertgoers would say yes—despite the heat, the cold, the huge amounts of walking, the dust, and the so-so food.

US '83 got off to a good start, Saturday morning, May 28, with a Soviet—U.S. television link-up. With the help of a two-way satellite transmission and human translators, the famous and unfamous of both nations were allowed to exchange views and pose questions to each other. Eventually children of both countries posed questions to their counterparts. The event was refreshingly innocent—free of the usual political jockeying associated with previous U.S.—Soviet face-to-face meetings. One Soviet official, when asked what kind of music Russians like best, said, "Rock and roll."

That night, the festival crowd was treated to twenty minutes of jazzy rock music by the Soviet group Arsenal. Then the Soviets were treated to a hefty chunk of Men at Work's energetic set. Seeing the hopping and bopping Soviet rock-music fans on the big Diamond Vision and Eidaphor screens, as well as hearing their music, was a once-in-a-lifetime experience that most festival concertgoers appreciated, even though some booed the initial public-address announcement of the link-up.

Though thousands of festivalgoers crowded into the one main exhibit tent, the technology fair was a major disappointment. Only a handful of computer-industry companies showed. The majority of exhibits concerned music—everything from cars with stereos to synthesizers and drum machines.

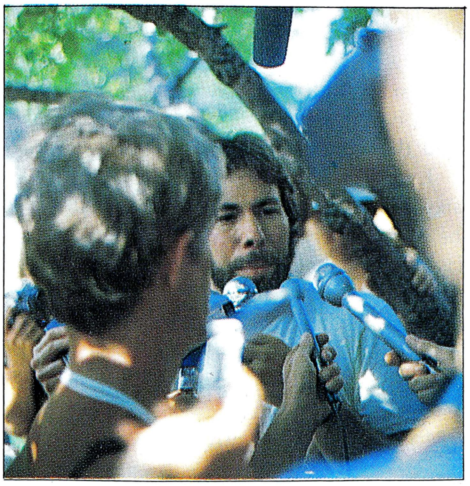
When speaking Monday morning, Wozniak said the technology fair was rushed and potential exhibitors weren't given enough advance warning. Even Apple stayed away from this year's festival, though it was present at last year's.

The crowd Saturday, May 28, was peaceful and orderly. The big headlining act that night, The Clash, was a big headache for Unuson and Wozniak. Everything about The Clash's appearance at the festival rang false. The Clash is not a good mass-crowd act. Its gritty, working-class, Marxist-tinged music comes off best in a small auditorium.

Added to this basic miscalculation on Unuson's part was a series of well-publicized incidents between The Clash and festival officials, wherein The Clash band members played the spoilers—claiming that the festival was too commercial, that they were a more suitable band for the U.S.—Soviet link-up, and that they did not have a contract with Unuson and just might not play.

In any event, before The Clash finally played there was a "really big show." Combining lasers, dozens of floodlights, a wonderfully effective make-believe alien spacecraft, film, computer graphics, and the massive four-hundred-thousand-watt sound system, Unuson took everybody on a little trip—to the Univus Festival in the rings of Saturn. Amusing, interesting, silly, spectacular, mind-blowing, ridiculous, and ideological all describe this Spielberg-like, de Mille-like extravaganza that also preceded Van Halen's performance the following night.

In a nutshell, a fictional alien having trouble finding his way home after the Univus Festival (where all the peoples of the universe get together and party), stops by our pathetic little US Festival and injects the crowd with a heavy dose of one-world, one-people, no-nations ideology. Eventually the show got bizarrely mystical, though few people seemed to mind.



Left, people traveled from all over the world to attend this year's US Festival, even from south of the Mason-Dixon line; right, Woz under fire at a press conference the afternoon before The Clash played.

Sunday, May 29, heavy-metal-music day, was alternately a disaster and a success. Both concertgoers and festival officials were tense because of the increased crowd (over two hundred thousand, though estimates vary wildly) and reports of sporadic violence.

The final day of the Memorial Day-weekend rock fest got off to a slow start and kept falling farther behind schedule as the day wore on.

By the time Stevie Nicks ended her set around 9:00 p.m., there were hundreds of small fires burning in the three-quarters-full amphitheater. To keep warm, concertgoers (many of whom had been there for ten hours or more in bathing suits) burned garbage by the armload. The local fire department was present and not pleased, but did not interfere except in the most extreme cases. Overall it was a wonderfully communal scene.

When David Bowie finally finished his set, it was close to 1:00 a.m. Tuesday. This was not good planning. In fact, many aspects of the festival seemed to be grossly miscalculated by Unuson. The organization initially projected an attendance of 1.2 million for the entire four days. Forget it. They could barely handle the four hundred thousand that did show.

Unuson's marathon concert philosophy (six or more groups on one day) tired even the hardiest festivalgoers. Even the Saturday, June 4, country-music day didn't finish till after 1:00 a.m. Had the weather been warmer, the late nights wouldn't have been so bad.

Was it worth it? Woz says yes and that he's thinking about doing another festival in 1984, if he can get other backers besides himself. How they'll make it commercially successful remains to be seen, but Unuson learned some hard lessons this time around.

Δ **Everything Under the Sun.** Who would have thought it could happen? The pride of the world computer industry rolled into Anaheim, California, for the annual NCC (National Computer Conference) and four days later rolled out downright angry at (or, at the very least, disappointed with) the management of the show.

Now you've heard the bad news, reasons for which we'll come to in a moment. The good news at the 1983 NCC, held May 16–19 at the Anaheim Convention Center and the Disneyland Hotel Convention Center, was that its size and scope indicated a generally healthy American computer industry, notwithstanding the impressive showings by Japanese, Australian, French, and other overseas computer firms.

IBM, Xerox, Intel, Apple, Vector Graphic, VisiCorp, Sperry, Perkin-Elmer, Motorola, Fortune Systems, Bell & Howell, and hundreds of other American computer companies brought out their snazziest booths and their most attractive sales personnel. The circus had arrived and the southern California masses poured in, ready to be seduced, amazed, and flabbergasted by all the wonderful gadgetry.

What they found was a lot of networking and telecommunication products and services. They also found what you'd expect—business, business, business. IBM broke up the monotony with its 7565 manufacturing robot, housed in a rectangular metal frame. And to many exhibitors, business meant splash and finesse, showgirls and magicians, giveaways and more giveaways, movies, and demos aplenty.

As several exhibitors noted, a large number of attendees this year were average local citizens with little or no computer experience. One can only wonder what they made of this four-day computer orgy and its openly acknowledged confusion. Does anyone know how long it takes to evaluate a hundred brands of microcomputers?

The answer, of course, is don't go to NCC to choose; go to a computer store. But where can you find a computer store that stocks that many brands?

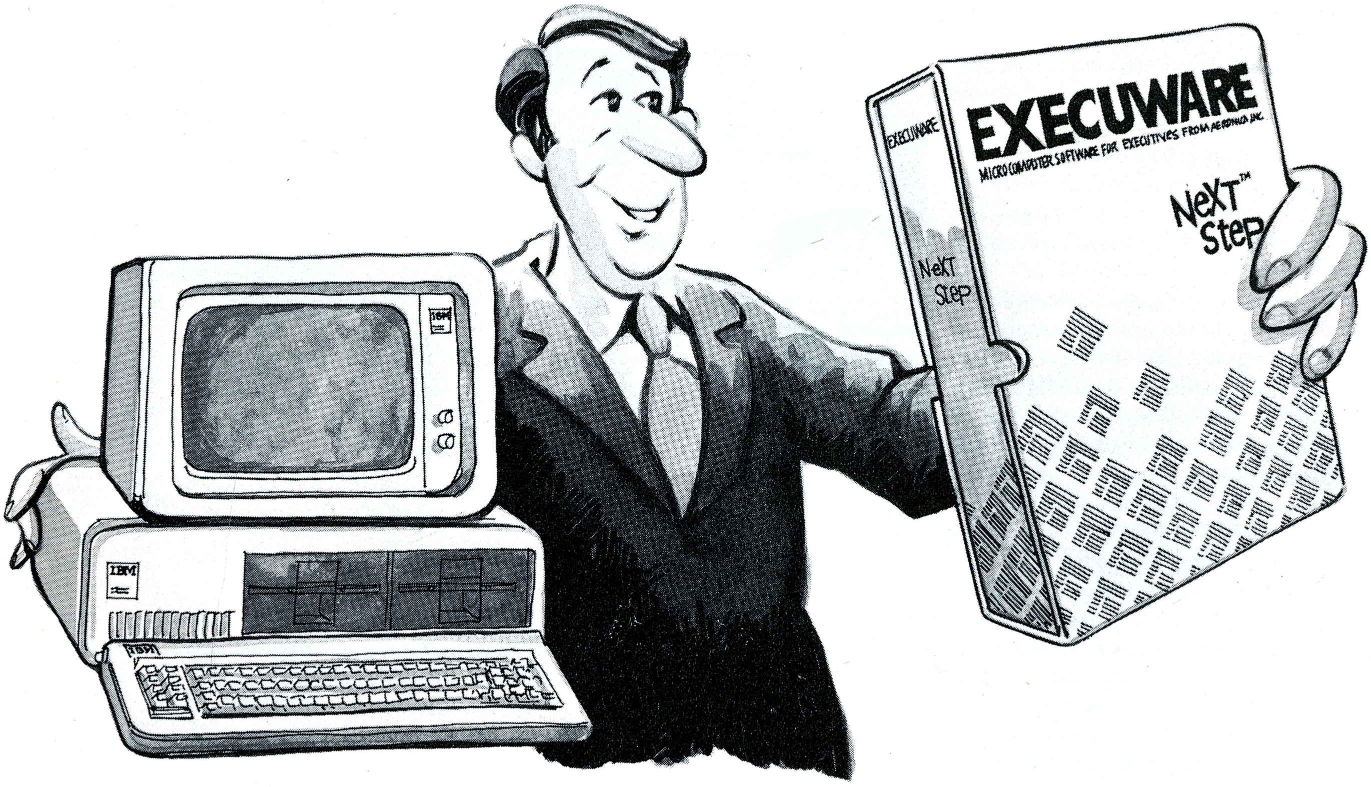
It's probably good that only some eighty thousand people a year attend a show like NCC. If there were twelve NCCs per year in twelve different cities, there would be that many times as many confused consumers, most of whom would probably give up trying to make an informed decision and settle on the micro with the slickest TV ad.

Some companies make no bones about it and simply ignore the potential end user. NCC is, after all, a place to do business with other businessmen, a place to make contacts and make tentative deals (and check out the competition). Who needs all those novices?

But to other exhibitors, the steady stream of attendees is the main reason for being at NCC. Many of the smaller companies—the

hip in Products and Technology
IBM
Leadership in Products and Technology
Multiprocessing Systems

TAKE THE NEXT STEP


IBM
EXECUWARE
EXECUWARE
MICROCOMPUTER SOFTWARE FOR EXECUTIVES FROM AERONCA INC.
NeXT™ Step
NeXT Step
IBM
IBM

The IBM* P.C. was your first step.

Now. . . it's time to take the NEXT STEP

Breakthroughs follow each other. The IBM P.C. and now the NEXT STEP from Execuware. IBM gave you the Personal Computer to meet your business needs. NEXT STEP gives you the power to make it happen. NEXT STEP allows you to solve your problems without the limitations of pre-packaged software. Create your **own** solutions. State the problem—Execuware's NEXT STEP will solve it!

NEXT STEP stores and retrieves information in the format **you** devise, then electronically programs itself! Once programs and reports are developed by NEXT STEP, its editing capabilities and help screens assure that others use them consistently. . . productively.

Automate to fit **your** needs. Use NEXT STEP to improve your business. Improve cash flow. Strengthen sales efforts. Improve production efficiency. Give management the information it needs to run your business more profitably. . . **Your** way.

Until now, no software product for the IBM P.C. could tackle the multitude of business problems that affect your bottom line.

. . .Take the NEXT STEP.

EXECUWARE®

MICROCOMPUTER SOFTWARE FOR EXECUTIVES FROM AERONCA, INC.

7415 Pineville Matthews Road, Intercontinental Plaza, Suite 300, Box 10,
Charlotte, North Carolina 28211 (704) 541-1199

*IBM P.C. is the trademark of International Business Machines.

ones with the unroofed booths—are trying to create an image at an affair like NCC. They prepare like crazy for a show that's probably too expensive anyway and then wait for the crowds to come bopping in.

This year some of the companies that could least afford it got badly burned—literally as well as figuratively. The show was too big for the Anaheim Convention Center, so six interlocked, giant, hot-dog-shaped tents were set up in the parking lot. Inside the tents were more than three hundred exhibit spaces, most of which were small—one tenth the size of Apple Computer's plywood temple. Around two hundred additional booths were located in the Disneyland Hotel's convention center. On day two of the show, the temperature outside broke a hundred degrees and the air conditioning in the tents didn't hold up.

Jim Spillars, vice president of retail operations at Microsoft, was in charge of a booth out in the tents. His story typifies the misery of that day.

"Our big-screen projection system failed at 102 degrees. The computer flickered at 105, and we turned it off. A couple of people fainted in the booth. It was a freak thing. Better planning would have solved some of it. Everything possible that could go wrong went wrong."

You may have heard the story of the salesman who made shorts of his suit pants by cutting off the legs. Tuesday, May 17, was that kind of day. Weary attendees poked their heads into the tents after trekking under the hot sun and turned right around. On Wednesday, a meeting took place between exhibitors and the American Federation of Information Processing Societies (AFIPS), management for the show. No alternative plan was adopted. AFIPS apologized and promised to make some kind of amends. A good many exhibitors thought that this response from management was inadequate and began talking of class-action suits.

Microsoft's Spillars, who says he was constantly missing appointments at the booth because of the heat, said he was "obviously disappointed," but, like most of the other exhibitors at this year's NCC, he plans to be back for next year's show (in Las Vegas next July).

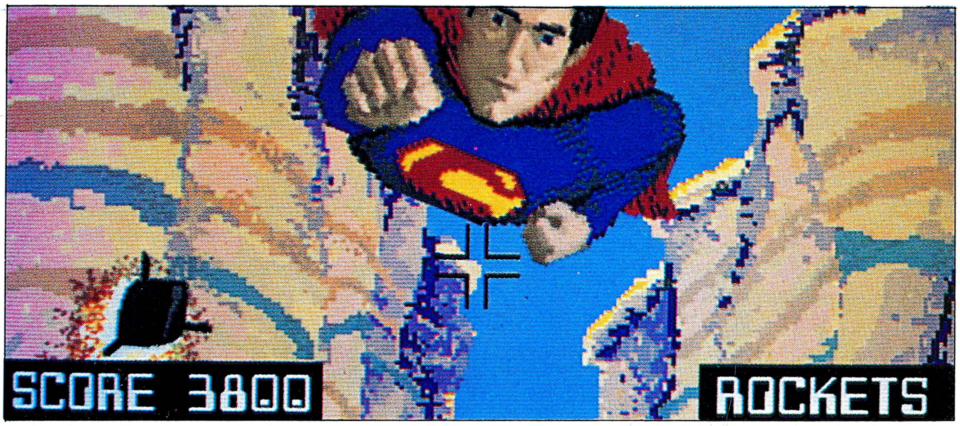
Δ **Computerized Man of Steel.** The folks at Atari are doing more than designing home and arcade video games. The Special Programs Division, headed by Steve Wright, recently worked fourteen weeks to create a sequence for one of the summer's special-effects blockbusters—*Superman III*. Wright calls their division's work "computer visualizations" (a fancy name for stop-frame computer animation).

The sequence involves that portion of the film where the Man of Steel does battle with the Ultimate Computer, described in the film by computer wiz Gus Gorman (Richard Pryor) as "the world's first stone-killer-diller get-down, get-it-on and twice-on-Sunday supercomputer." Atari's footage, which shows up on a computer monitor in the film, has images of Superman flying through a canyon as rockets explode all around. Everything on the monitor, including the Caped Wonder himself, was generated on a sophisticated computer system made by Atari.

"Warner Bros. [like Atari, a division of Warner Communications] wanted the sequence to convey the spirit of a super mega-videogame of the future," explains Wright. "They asked us to provide graphics that would resemble closely how a coin-op arcade game might look several years from now."

Software manager of Special Programs Pat Cole (one of several designers of the spectacular computerized Genesis sequence in *Star Trek II: The Wrath of Khan*) says, "I suspect they [Warner Bros.] thought we'd be able to produce it on the same kind of machines we use for games. They really lucked out, because our Special Programs Division has been developing a number of tools using more sophisticated computers. We were able to use those tools with some additional software to produce the sequence."

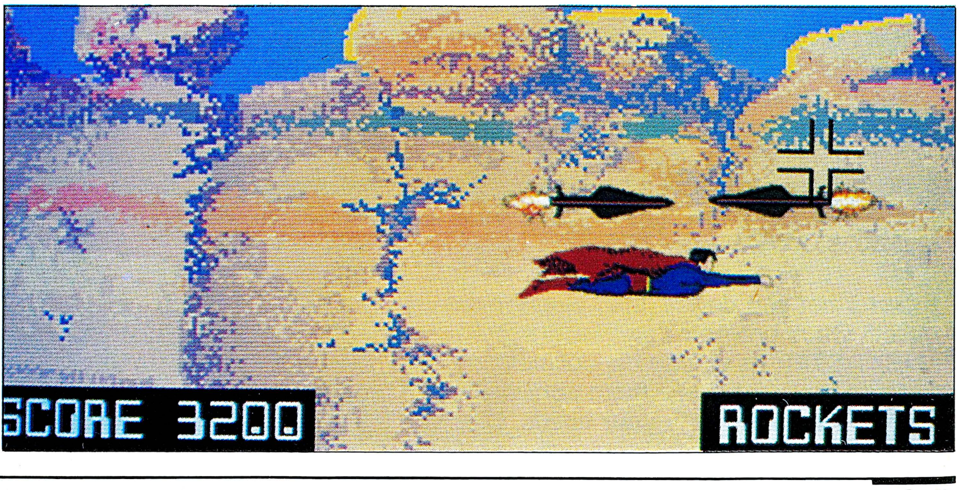
The Disney films *Tron* and *Something Wicked This Way Comes* used three-dimensional computer animation images—images that had volume and shadow characteristics—in an attempt to simulate real life. Atari's *Superman III* computer footage, in contrast, intentionally carries the look of low-resolution graphics; it achieves what is now called 2-1/2-D—flat images enhanced by a few visual tricks to provide a suggestion of depth.



The climax of Superman III *finds the Man of Steel racing to confront an evil, malicious Robert Vaughn, who is protected by the Ultimate Computer. Buzzing through the Grand Canyon, Superman is attacked by missiles that Vaughn controls with a video game-like setup. The images above and below were created by Atari and show what Vaughn is seeing when he is attacking Superman.*

"The extra depth is where the 1/2 comes in," says Cole. "We had a different set of challenges than the work on *Star Trek II* presented. If it looked too real, we'd have failed. Our effort was to firmly establish a look of video games, but not any game you'd see on Earth today."

The concept of 2-1/2-D is similar to the multiplane animation pioneered by Disney Studios in the late thirties. That approach called for an artist to paint a scene on several sheets of glass. On the back sheet would be mountains; the second from the back would show trees, the third might have a car,



and the sheet closest to the observer would display a human or animal character. An illusion of depth was created, because the car could pass behind the person and objects further from the camera appeared slightly out of focus—as they would in reality.

The added "computer visualizations" in *Superman III* cost Warner Bros. roughly ninety-five thousand dollars in equipment and nearly four months of production time. It took ten weeks to prepare the program and another four to shoot the twenty-six seconds of film. But what a sequence!

Atari's Special Programs used an Ikonas Frame Buffer computer to create the sequence and did it at much lower resolution than the system is capable of. The first step was to create a piece of software that would allow the Atari designers to see how their animation would look. This software came in two parts: a paint and animation program to create the visual images and a script and sequence controller that enabled the designers to write a script outlining what the objects were to do.

For example, a shot was scripted and then recorded with an elaborate stop-frame video unit called a Lyon-Lamb Animation Controller. This hardware device allowed them to record the sequence, one frame at a time, onto two Sony 3/4-inch broadcast-quality tape decks. It took the Ikonas an hour or two to calculate and process all the low-resolution graphics in the scene onto video tape so they could be viewed one frame at a time.

Once the look of the sequence was settled, a medium-resolution "take" was shot onto 35mm film by means of a Dunn Instrument Camera. The camera, called a Dunn box, contained a high-resolution black-and-white monitor with a custom-modified 35mm Mitchell camera precision-mounted for recording the images onto film. Production of the box to meet Atari's custom specifications cost $35,000; and it took the computer four to five hours to process a single frame.

Under automated computer control, each frame was displayed on the Dunn monitor in black-and-white separations, analogous to the method used for the rear projection compositing of matte paintings or to the storing of negatives to prevent their fading. Each black-and-white separation was photographed by the Mitchell through the appropriate red-green-blue Kodak gelatin filter to combine the elements into a full-color image.

The computer sent the image to the hi-res black-and-white monitor, and the camera photographed the single picture in three passes. First, the Dunn box sent the image of red information to the monitor's screen and then the camera photographed it with a red filter over its lens. With the film stationary, the filter rotated to green as the green line was imaged on the monitor and the second picture was taken.

After photographing the blue line in like manner, the camera advanced to the next frame and the entire process was automatically repeated. By keeping the frame of film stationary for the three takes, perfect registration was achieved.

When everything checked out on the medium-resolution film, a final run of the scene was made in high resolution (that is, as high as the scene's semirealistic requirements would allow). This process consumed an additional twelve to fifteen hours per scene.

A few interesting side effects emerged from this rigorous process. Because the film was shot in Panavision format, the proper 2.35-to-1 aspect ratio was achieved via software programming rather than through anamorphic lenses on the camera. In other words, Atari "squeezed" the image to Panavision through by means of an anamorphic software package, without worrying about the distortion that might arise from shooting through an extra piece of glass. This method could find its way into the arcade world; game manufacturers might actually market their games in Cinemascope for future projection television sets modified for anamorphic wide-screen images.

As of this writing, the Atari consumer-electronics division has no plans to market the special programs division's work on *Super III*. There are, however, plans to produce a 400/800/1200 Superman game to run on the Atari home computers. The *Superman III* game, of course, won't look anywhere near as good as the special-effects footage in the movie.

Δ **Do You Speak the Language?** There is a tendency in this country to expect everyone and everything foreign—from imported products to visiting journalists—to cater to our linguistic needs. Americans, however, often fail to extend the same courtesy abroad, says Hani Khouri, president of Language Management Corporation of Monmouth Beach, New Jersey. On this issue, Khouri feels we have a lot to learn from the Japanese.

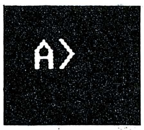
"They know about the marketplace, and they translate everything. When's the last time you bought a Sony television with an owner's manual written in Japanese?"

Khouri, who speaks English, Arabic, Spanish, French, and Portuguese, decided to do something about the need for better ways of translating English into other languages. When his company opened its doors two years ago, work was begun on a computer-

the 1dir

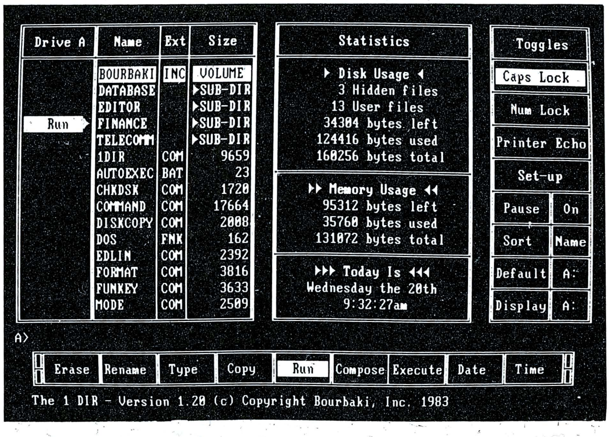
DIRECTORY COMMAND SYSTEM for the IBM PC & XT

Which would you prefer?



```
A>
```

THIS ←— or THIS —→



```
 Drive A    Name     Ext  Size        Statistics           Toggles

          BOURBAKI  INC  VOLUME     ▶ Disk Usage ◀        Caps Lock
          DATABASE       ▶SUB-DIR    3 Hidden files
          EDITOR         ▶SUB-DIR   13 User files          Num Lock
   Run ▶  FINANCE        ▶SUB-DIR   34304 bytes left
          TELECOMM       ▶SUB-DIR   124416 bytes used    Printer Echo
          1DIR      COM     9659    160256 bytes total
          AUTOEXEC  BAT       23                            Set-up
          CHKDSK    COM     1720    ▶▶ Memory Usage ◀◀
          COMMAND   COM    17664     95312 bytes left     Pause   On
          DISKCOPY  COM     2008     35760 bytes used
          DOS       FNK      162    131072 bytes total    Sort    Name
          EDLIN     COM     2392
          FORMAT    COM     3816    ▶▶▶ Today Is ◀◀◀      Default A:
          FUNKEY    COM     3633    Wednesday the 20th
          MODE      COM     2509       9:32:27am          Display A:
A>
  Erase  Rename  Type  Copy  Run  Compose  Execute  Date  Time
 The 1 DIR - Version 1.20 (c) Copyright Bourbaki, Inc. 1983
```

- Designed with the "New User" in mind
- A must for Hard Disk systems
- Compatible w/DOS 1.10 and 2.00

1dir replaces the DOS prompt with an interactive command system that eliminates the need to type commands and/or filenames to the command line. Files are accessed and programs are executed by positioning ***1dir***'s scrolling FILE and COMMAND CURSORS, and pressing <ENTER>. Controlled by the arrow keys, the CURSORS are easy to use "pointers."

Suggested Retail
$95.00

by Bourbaki Inc.™

P.O. Box 2867, Boise, ID 83701, (208) 342-5849

systemics

Simple and Economical
Small Business and
Personal Software

DesKit! $149.95
NEW — MAY 1983

- Five-in-One office productivity software in compiled BASIC
- Name & Address, File cards with search & sort, Simple word processing, Appointment & date book, Desk Calculator
- Speed your work flow at home or office with all these functions at your fingertips
- Sales people, small business & professionals — ORDER DesKit!

EZEntry $99.95

- Fast compiled BASIC
- On screen order entry for phone or mail order sales
- Stores 500 orders per disk
- Prints custom invoices
- Up to 200 product codes
- Automatic extension, taxes
- Wholesale & retail pricing
- Source code available

EZLabel + $49.95

- Create sorted Mail Merge files
- Fast compiled BASIC
- Single-key auto-entry
- Fast search & sort
- Prints 1 or 2 up labels
- 1000 addresses per diskette, 2000 on double-sided.
- Sort by zip code or last name
- Sort by user defined codes

EZMemo + $49.95

- Fast compiled BASIC
- Custom form letters using addresses from EZLabel files
- Very easy-to-use word processing
- Create, save & recall memos
- Centering, justification
- Print in any IBM PC type style
- Line by line editing
- Designed for novice users

systemics
3050 Spring Street
West Bloomfield, Michigan 48033

At your dealer, by mail or call:
313 - 851-2504

ized system for translating English into Arabic.

Khouri says Arabic was the logical starting place. Even though there are more than one hundred thirty million Arabic-speaking people in the world, they constitute a much-overlooked market, he says. Also, many large American corporations already transact a lot of business in the Arab world, and these interactions demand speedy translation of significant amounts of paperwork.

Besides having potential benefits for the Arab speakers of the world, Khouri's system could find much use in the States.

As of January 1, Arabic became an official language at the United Nations, which means that everything in the archives of that organization must now be translated into Arabic. Currently, a crack U.N. translator can cover a little more than two thousand words a day. LMC's "Arabization," running on a Digital Equipment Corporation minicomputer, can do about eight thousand words every twenty-four hours.

At LMC, English text is entered into the computer via magnetic tape or optical scanner, or it's keyed in from written documents. Once text has been entered, a vocabulary search begins. If a word or idiom is not included in the four-hundred-thousand-word Arabic dictionary/database, its equivalent is manually checked in published sources.

Next an Arabic linguist and an editor familiar with the subject matter decide on the correct Arabic meaning before the word or phrase is added to the system's dictionary.

The program is so well designed, says Khouri, that it can choose words based on a concept. Dialect, degree of formality, cultural appropriateness, and educational level are also taken into account. LMC relies on a team of subject matter consultants and language researchers fluent in both tongues.

Khouri feels that his company is definitely helping to bridge the language gap, at least in the Arab world. Before moving on to other languages, LMC hopes to perfect a voice synthesizer for inputting and outputting Arabic. Khouri admits this won't be easy. "Arabic is a tough language to handle, even for human beings," he says.

Δ **Take the Money and. . . .** Not all computer crimes are performed by agents in the employ of foreign companies or star programmers seduced by the call of Mammon. A recent incident in the state of Washington showed that ordinary individuals are also capable of casual computer crimes and that these crimes can cause a great deal of harm.

On March 11, 1983, while working as a programmer/analyst with Washington's Division of Vocational Rehabilitation, Stanley V. Slyngstad of Olympia was arrested on the job. For ten months prior to his arrest, Slyngstad had diverted funds set aside to train the handicapped for new careers. Between April 1982 and last February, Slyngstad used a special program to issue twenty-five unauthorized checks; the checks amounted to $16,923, and most of this amount went directly, if temporarily, into Slyngstad's own pocket.

Slyngstad's crimes were discovered by accident. An accountant routinely examining one of the DVR's "remittance advices," which provide a record of all the agency's check authorizations, noticed that the address on the document was that of Stanley Slyngstad. Twenty-two checks in all had been made out to Slyngstad and mailed to his home address. The other three checks had been given to a drinking buddy, who used the money to make a down payment on a pickup truck.

A number of publications picked up the story and played it as a sort of Robin Hood fable—a colorful crook ripping off the establishment to aid the downtrodden. Leslie F. James, director of the Division of Vocational Rehabilitation, has a different view.

It's James's opinion that Slyngstad spent most of the money himself. Slyngstad spent a good deal of his spare time at Charlie's, a local tavern, where he sometimes left hundred-dollar tips. There, in James's mind at least, lies the origin of the problem. He insists, "I don't think any of this would have happened if Stan hadn't started drinking."

Slyngstad himself was quoted as having said, "I used my own money until it ran out. Then I used the state's—an unlimited supply. I was blatant as hell."

The question now is not so much why it happened as how—and how to keep it from happening again. James is trying to keep an open mind, saying that it's important not to become suspicious of computer programmers as a group because of this case. But he remains pessimistic. "I don't think it is combatable. Anyone who knows your system well enough to make it work for you knows it well enough to steal from you."

State Patrol Lieutenant Fred L. Filon, however, has a more positive attitude. He says he's confident that everything taken was also discovered.

Slyngstad, who had worked at DVR since 1978 and who was highly regarded there, has been ordered to keep away from his state computer terminals pending sentencing. As a result of his $17,000 heist (he pleaded guilty to first-degree theft last April in Thurston County Superior Court), Slyngstad has lost his $30,000-a-year job and faces up to ten years in the slammer.

Δ **Not a Real Conference, but an Incredible Simulation.** The 1983 Summer Computer Simulation Conference (SCSC) will be held July 11–13 at the Hyatt Regency in Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada. Sponsored by the Society for Computer Simulation, SCSC will feature more than forty sessions, with original papers covering the field of computer simulation. Five special presentations—including Robotics and Simulation, Discrete Simulation, and Design of Direct Execution language for Interactive Simulation—and several state-of-the-art presentations by experts on such subjects as supercomputers and simulation languages are the main courses on tap. The Society for Computer Simulation, based in La Jolla, California, is a technical group dedicated to the advancement of simulation and allied computer arts in science, engineering, mathematics, education, government, and medicine.

Δ **Chips in Heat.** Physicists at the National Aeronautics and Space Administration's Lewis Research Center in Cleveland, Ohio, have come one step closer to realizing the dream of "hot chips." The reason that until now it's been impossible to implant electronic chips in high-temperature environments, such as jet engines, is that the microscopic electronic webs of which they're made are destroyed at temperatures above 600 degress Fahrenheit. Most chips found in computers are made of silicon that's been doped with traces of other elements, such as boron. Back in the fifties, researchers decided that a silicon-carbide-based chip would be able to endure temperatures as high as 1,600 degrees Fahrenheit. Because silicon and silicon carbide have different crystalline structures, the work of building a crystalline layer of silicon carbide onto a silicon base has dragged on for more than two decades. Two years ago, physicists at Lewis proposed to lay a third layer made of irregular silicon carbide crystals—to act as a bridge between the silicon and normal silicon carbide. These same researchers have used silicon carbide produced in this fashion to build diodes and other devices. NASA wants to use hot chips inside experimental turbine engines for monitoring and control purposes. Other applications are, as they say, in the wings.

Δ **Universal Games.** MCA Video Games, the video game licensing arm of MCA Inc., has joined forces with Atari to form Studio Games. Last year, MCA Video Games worked with Atari on the home video game of the film *E.T.*, and the new joint venture should facilitate further projects of this nature. Under terms of the agreement, Studio Games will create coin-operated video games, home video games, and software based upon motion pictures, television, and other properties developed and proposed by MCA. Studio Games will be headquartered in Sunnyvale, California, and will operate an office in southern California's Universal City. Executives from Atari and MCA Video Games will manage the joint venture.

Δ **The Radio Strikes Back.** Nobody was more skeptical than radio talk-show host A. J. Austin of WAVI radio in Dayton, Ohio, when the station started an experimental half-hour talk show on computers. Even though he had owned an Apple for over a year, Austin wasn't sure that people would take a radio show on the subject. Since then his eyes have been opened. On June 4, *Computer Talk*, which has expanded from a half hour to two hours every Saturday morning, celebrated its first birthday. Members of local user groups were featured on the air that day, and prizes and software were given out by Austin. Each week, *Computer Talk* offers a computer news report, in-studio and telephone interviews with important industry figures, a segment devoted to new products, news of user group meetings, software and hardware reviews, and an open phone forum.

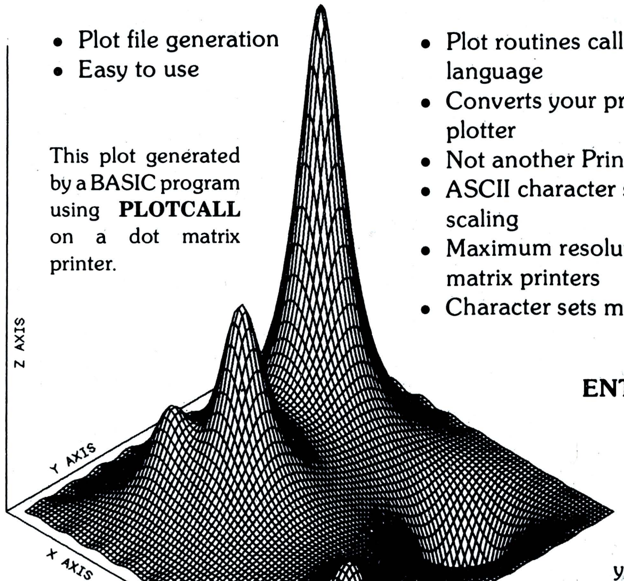
Δ **Looking for Future Rookie Sensations.** The fortunes of the San Francisco Giants ought to be a little brighter this year. No, they didn't make any big trades or pay megabucks for some aging superstar. The Giants are expecting big things from their new microcomputer-based scouting system. Using a Fortune 32:16, 68000-based, Unix-equipped, general-purpose business computer and a scouting program designed by United Data Corporation, the Giants' management can now retrieve every scouting report and analysis ever made on a given player. Each player record includes the usual "objective" numbers as well as subjective evaluations supplied by scouts. Information is fed into the system continually from several different terminals and, at present, the system can maintain five thousand records, a capacity that eventually will be tripled.

Δ **Penney for Your Videotex Thoughts.** J.C. Penney may be getting into the videotex business. You may never have to go stumbling through the shoe department again. The surprise announcement that Penney plans to acquire First Bank System's home videotex system, called FirstHand, coincided with the temporary shutdown of FirstHand, which was being used on an experimental basis by more than two hundred fifty farms in North Dakota. First Bank System, based in Minneapolis, Minnesota, commissioned the development of FirstHand. French Teletel videotex technology (France is the world leader in advancing videotex technology) was imported for the project. When FirstHand comes back on-line it will depend heavily on banking and will be tied into banking institutions. So far, it seems, an emphasis on practical applications is the only route to a commercially successful videotex system. ▲

PLOTCALL GRAPHIC SOFTWARE FOR THE IBM PC

- Plot file generation
- Easy to use

This plot generated by a BASIC program using **PLOTCALL** on a dot matrix printer.

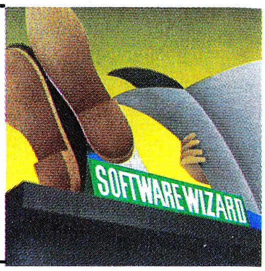


- Plot routines called from any language
- Converts your printer to a digital plotter
- Not another Print Screen program
- ASCII character set rotation & scaling
- Maximum resolution on most dot matrix printers
- Character sets may be altered

ENTIRE PACKAGE ONLY $149.00

For further information, ask your dealer or contact
GOLDEN SOFTWARE
P.O. Box 281, Golden, CO 80402
303-279-1021

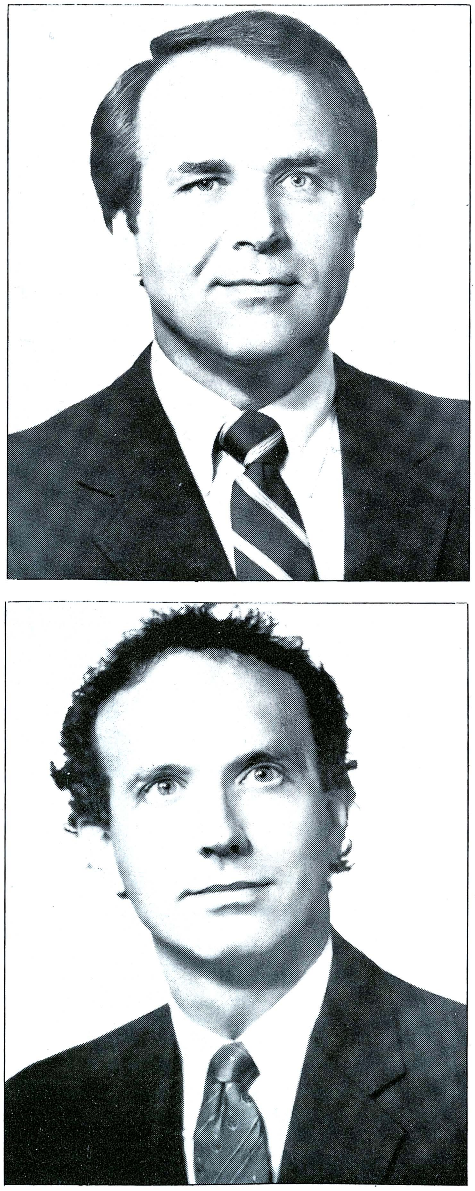
tradetalk



Δ **Corona Data Systems** (Westlake Village, CA) has appointed **Richard J. Tata** vice president of operations. He will report directly to company president Daniel R. Carter. Prior to joining the company, Tata held the same position at Powertec. Altogether, he's spent twenty-seven years in the business. "Dick's twenty-seven years of related operations experience in the computer industry, plus his drive and desire, are necessary to help us meet the challenges our company faces," says Carter.

Δ The electronic and technical publishing division of **Harper & Row** (New York, NY) has announced it has agreed on terms for publishing a series of books with **InfoWorld** (Palo Alto, CA). The first six books planned will contain reviews of software and hardware, each for a specific machine, including the pc. Writers will be the staff of the micro newsweekly and its copublication *InfoWorld Report Card*. Maggie Canon, *InfoWorld* editor-in-chief, says she "looks forward to publishing some bestselling computer books." Δ Also at Harper & Row, **Jane Isay** has been named vice president and director of electronic and technical publishing. Formerly copublisher of Basic Books, Isay created Harper & Row's electronic division last September. Home, professional, and educational software for a variety of markets will be produced, both for standalone purposes and for accompanying Harper books. The division will publish six microcomputer books in spring 1984 along with the *InfoWorld* series.

Δ **Carlton "Corky" Hall** has been appointed distribution sales manager at the **MNC International** (Minneapolis, MN) software sales division. Hall had been an independent consultant for business on micros, minis, administration, and personnel. Δ **Rachel Lanners** has been chosen supervisor of software distribution for the company. She had held the same post for R2E of America, and previously worked for Electro-Craft and Carlson Companies. Δ The company itself was picked as regional distributor for **Digital Research**. They will distribute the DRI's licensed software in a five-state area—Minnesota, Iowa, Wisconsin, and the Dakotas—in addition to providing the telephone technical support.


Henderson and Matte share Easitech vision.

Δ Two key executives of **Quadram** (Atlanta, GA) have resigned to head newly formed **Easitech**. **Gary Matte**, a top sales executive, and **Charles Henderson**, Quadram's director of marketing communications, are now, respectively, president and vice president of the new company. Easitech will market pc enhancements exclusively through authorized IBM dealers. Matte is credited with having cemented most of Quadram's prestige retailers, including Photo & Sound and Macy's. A former retail computer store manager, Matte has a twelve-year computer background, with stints at NCR and Honeywell. Before joining Quadram, Henderson headed consumer marketing campaigns for the motion picture industry; the Tim Conway-Don Knotts movies were among his successes. Easitech is funded by an initial sale of capital stock and a large line of bank credit.

Δ A national probability survey and analysis of personal computer usage in business and the home will be undertaken by **Arthur D. Little** (Cambridge, MA), the international research and management consulting firm. Researchers will survey approximately thirty-five thousand respondents quarterly on a continuing basis. The company says the survey is the first of its kind in the world and is designed to help companies make product and market planning decisions based on statistically reliable primary research data. Subscribers will share the cost of the survey service at annual fee levels ranging from $30,000 to $90,000, enabling them to enjoy the benefits of a major research program at "a reasonable price," according to a company spokesman.

Δ With more than eight years of sales management experience, **Cliff Hall** has been appointed national sales manager at **Eagle Software Publishing** (Wayne, PA). Hall will coordinate the firm's growing network of distributors, OEMs, and manufacturing representatives.

Δ Graphics software for micros in the German-speaking market will be published by **Decision Resources** (Westport, CT). In an exclusive agreement with **Telecomputer Micro-Shop GmbH** (Essen, West Germany), the company will produce a German-language version of *Chart-Master* with a full German character set for the program's instruction menu. Telecomputer will translate the program's manual.

Δ In an agreement signed with **Boeing Computer Services** (Vienna, VA), **MicroRIM** (Bellevue, WA) will be marketing its relational information management database to *Fortune 500* companies. "We are pleased to be working with Boeing," says company president **Wayne Erickson**. "We anticipate this arrangement will significantly increase our market penetration, and we feel confident MicroRIM will enhance Boeing's product line." Δ MicroRIM has also entered the local area network market, announcing the signing of an agreement with **Nestar Systems** (Palo Alto, CA) to provide the company's database in multiuser environments for Nestar's Plan 4000 system.

Δ Los Angeles Mayor Tom Bradley cut the ribbon at the ceremony celebrating the new corporate offices of **Innovative Computer Products** (Chatsworth, CA). The company is one of many high-tech firms who have chosen to relocate in the west end of California's San Fernando Valley, rival computer territory of the San Francisco Bay Area's Silicon Valley. New address: 9174 Deering Avenue, Chatsworth, CA 91311.

Δ The first in a family of operating systems written in C from **Digital Research** (Pacific Grove, CA) has been licensed to **Hitachi America Limited** for its HD68000 microprocessor. The operating system, dubbed CP/M68K, is designed to broaden the base of computers capable of using CP/M, and to provide a bridge for transporting applications written in C between Unix and CP/M systems. According to a Hitachi spokesperson: "CP/M68K will serve a wide range of commercial, industrial, and scientific applications. It fills the gap between larger, more expensive, hardware-intensive operating systems and small, nonfile-oriented ones." Δ Digital Research has also signed a licensing agreement with **Eagle Computer** (Los Gatos, CA) to supply the firm with the entire operating system product line, to be installed in Eagle's 1600 micro series.

Δ **John Viega**, formerly operations manager, has been promoted to director of operations at **Advanced Logic Systems** (Sunnyvale, CA). He will direct production, purchasing, quality control, shipping, and receiving. Viega's experience in the electronics industry spans more than a decade. It began at Cal Computer and has since included National Semiconductor, Apple Computer, and Imagic. He is also a former bimonthly contributor to *Electronic News* magazine.

Δ Entering the field of electronic publishing for the first time, trade book publishers **E.P. Dutton** (New York, NY) will publish a line of books with software or videotapes and disks on the side. A combination of technical and entertainment subjects like solving mysteries, creating riddles, understanding and forecasting weather, and organizing the home computer system have been announced. **Jack Sibrizzi**, former director of operations, has been named director of electronic publishing. "Some of the material," Sibrizzi says, "will be adapted from titles under contract. The software will be produced by groups working in the same capacity as authors. Hi-res graphics will be an integral part of the packages."

Δ **Control Data** (Minneapolis, MN) has invested in **Source Telecomputing** (Pleasantville, NY). Under the terms of the investment, two of the company's senior officials have joined the five-member Source board of directors. The two are **Walter H. Bruning**, vice president of data services, and **Thomas W. Miller**, vice president of business development. According to Bruning, "The Source offers real potential for us in expanding the channels for computer-based information services to individuals and business enterprises." Control Data operates the world's largest data services network, providing scientific, engineering, and business time-sharing services.

Δ Approval to sell printers to all agencies of the federal government has been granted to **Micro Peripherals** (Salt Lake City, UT) by the **General Services Administration** (Washington, D.C.). Under the agreement, the company will make its products available to all civilian agencies, the Department of Defense, Congress, and the federal courts. Sales are expected to be substantial because of a buy-American fever currently raging in the nation's capital.

Δ A founder of **Dataquest** (Mountain View, CA) has created his own research and consulting organization. **Dr. William L. Coggshall** will helm **Software Access International**, a company that will collect data, measure, analyze, and report on the microcomputer software industry. The company plans to create databases of the industry's products and participants in this highly fragmented market. Coggshall says of the industry: "With its diverse distribution channels, its gaggle of tiny companies, and its fast-paced growth and change, the industry looks chaotic even to the most seasoned industry executives."

Δ Two additions to the general publishing division computer group staff have been announced by **Prentice-Hall Publishers** (Englewood Cliffs, NJ). **John Hunger** has been appointed senior editor, coordinating the development and marketing of software. Since 1977 Hunger has served as business and technical editor for the Spectrum Books division. Δ **John Kilcullen** has joined the marketing department, where he will concentrate on the development and implementation of computer book and software marketing programs.

Δ A new executive structure affecting most areas of **ComputerLand** (Hayward, CA) now divides all domestic operations into line (income-generating) or staff (general support) functions. Line departments will report to

MY LETTERS NUMBERS AND WORDS™

By *ELMER LARSEN*

"My Letters, Numbers, and Words" is a pre-primary educational software package for children from one to five. Children are taught the alphabet, the numbers from one to ten and the concept of words through animated flash-card routines and graphic displays.

"The program's attractive graphic and sound features will help keep your child's attention. We are amazed at the amount of time and effort which went into the creation of this program. We wish it were one of ours!"

Keith Oswald and Joseph Juhasz
of PCsoftware, San Diego, CA

PCsoftware

Order directly from *STONE*™ Software Marketing, or contact your local dealer.

$39.95 — Postage and taxes included.

Visa and Mastercard accepted.

Requires: IBM PC with 64k, one single sided or double sided disk drive, DOS 1.1 BASICA, color graphics card, and color or monochrome monitor.

STONE™
Software Marketing, Inc.
7910 Ivanhoe Ave., Suite 319
La Jolla, CA 92037
(619) 459-9173

IBM PC is a trademark of IBM Corp.
PC Software is a trademark of PC Software.
"My Letters, Numbers, and Words" is a trademark of Nighthawk Computing.

Michael Shabazian, senior vice president, and staff functions to Gary Gapp, vice president of finance and planning. "We find that we have to re-create the company every six months," says Edward Faber, president. The company expects to reach a billion dollars in sales this year, nearly ten times its 1981 total of $151 million. Δ **Roger Lewis**, a former senior vice president at the J. Walter Thompson ad agency, has been named vice president of advertising. Lewis fills a vacancy brought about by reorganizing the marketing department into advertising and communications. Δ Formerly in charge of product operations, **Marian Murphy** has been named vice president of franchise relations. Murphy's old post will be assumed by **Kenneth Waters**, former vice president of development. Δ The development department now comes under the purview of **Robert Bruce**, director of development.

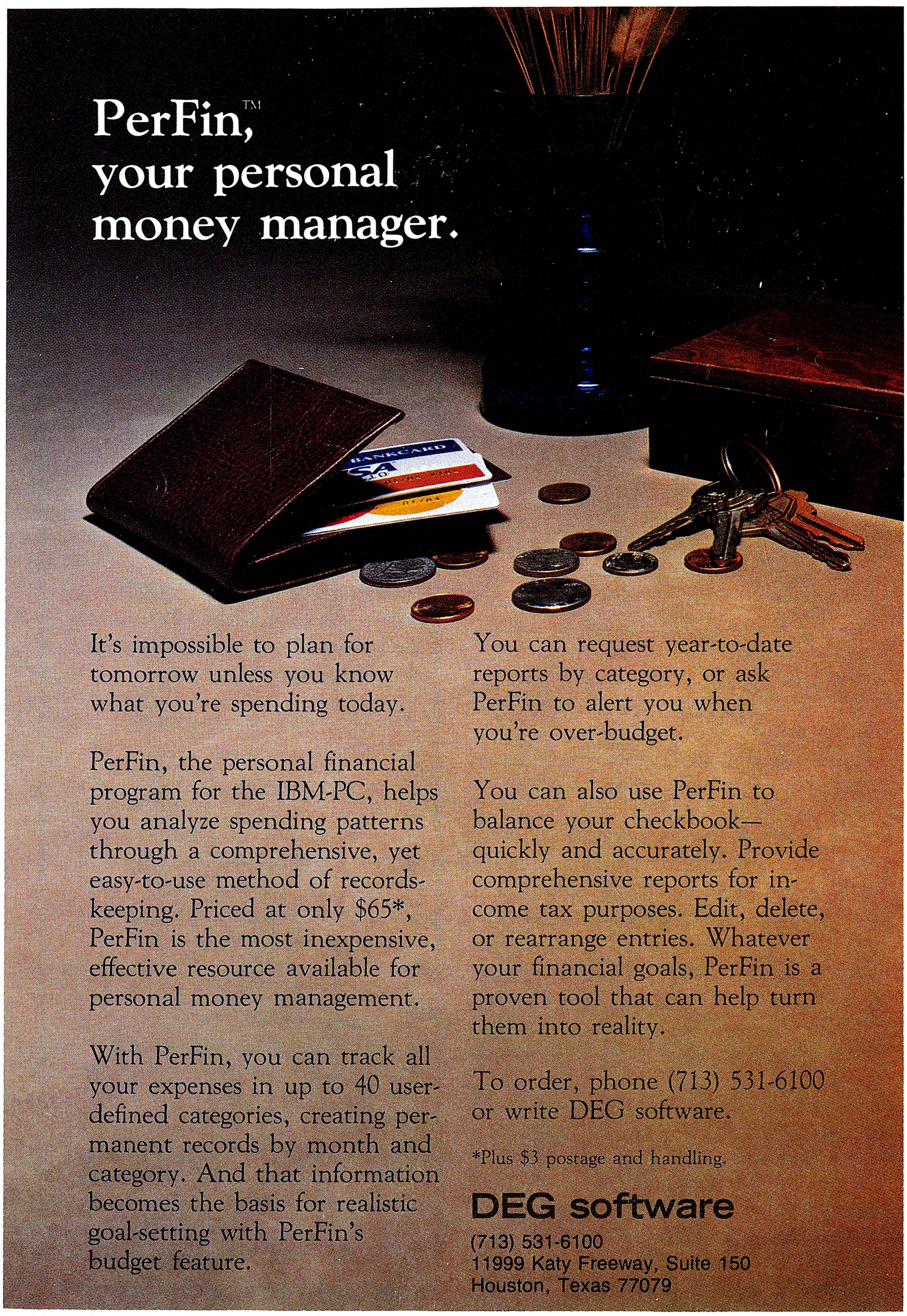
Δ **Spinnaker Software** (Cambridge, MA) has signed up three new authors for its educational and entertainment line of software for home and school use. They are **Jean Rice**, **Frieda S. M. Lekkerkerker**, and **Kenneth S. Madell**. Rice has authored several textbooks, including *My Friend the Computer* and *Computers Are Fun*. She is also founding president of the Minnesota Computer Society. Lekkerkerker, who has taught at both the secondary school and university levels, has produced *Kids on Keys*, a read, write, and type program. She is a native of The Hague, The Netherlands. Madell is a former premed student and a professional musician. He has produced a multiplayer word game called *Catchword* and is the author of *The Visible Solar System* game for Commodore International.

Δ **Digital Research** (Pacific Grove, CA) has selected **Software Distributors** (Culver City, CA) to launch a major applications building program targeted at the professional productivity market. Under the program, Software Distributors will bundle pc and XT software with Digital's Concurrent CP/M-86 operating system. The purpose is to transform the IBMs into powerful workstations, without users having to load and unload software each day. Δ An agreement has been reached whereby Digital will support the *VisiOn* operating environment created by **VisiCorp** (San Jose, CA). Under terms of the agreement, DRI will work with personal computer manufacturers to adapt *VisiOn* software for CP/M systems. Both companies have been working with OEMs on *VisiOn* and CP/M systems, and product announcements are anticipated.

Δ *The Microsystems Segment Analysis Service* will provide ongoing research and analysis of the microsystems market, according to **Infocorp** (Cupertino, CA), which has introduced the service. It will provide focused, in-depth information for specific market segments, including an ongoing quarterly survey of the major micro distribution channels. Supporting the company's staff of seasoned industry analysts is a comprehensive model-by-model historical database built on primary research of manufacturers, distribution channels, and end users.

Δ A new distributor, **Software International** (Tokyo, Japan) has been formed to distribute software in Japan. The full-line organization offers full service and support as well as sales for business, software and compilers, utilities, and communications. The firm's parent company is Japan Systems Engineering, the Japanese representative for Ashton-Tate, Chang Laboratories, Woolf Software, and others. Founders of the new company are **Hidechika Kobayashi**, president; **Bill Smale**, executive vice president; and **Toshihiko Funayama**, executive vice president. Kobayashi was formerly general planning manager of CSK, the largest software house in Japan. Smale was formerly distribution manager at Digital Research. Funayama was formerly general planning division manager for Commodore Japan. Among the company's subdistributors are Lifeboat Japan, Microsoftware Associates, and ASCII Consumer Products, all of which sell directly to users as well as dealers. ▲

Items for this column can be submitted to Tradetalk IBM, Softalk Publishing, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.



PerFin,™ your personal money manager.

It's impossible to plan for tomorrow unless you know what you're spending today.

PerFin, the personal financial program for the IBM-PC, helps you analyze spending patterns through a comprehensive, yet easy-to-use method of records-keeping. Priced at only $65*, PerFin is the most inexpensive, effective resource available for personal money management.

With PerFin, you can track all your expenses in up to 40 user-defined categories, creating permanent records by month and category. And that information becomes the basis for realistic goal-setting with PerFin's budget feature.

You can request year-to-date reports by category, or ask PerFin to alert you when you're over-budget.

You can also use PerFin to balance your checkbook—quickly and accurately. Provide comprehensive reports for income tax purposes. Edit, delete, or rearrange entries. Whatever your financial goals, PerFin is a proven tool that can help turn them into reality.

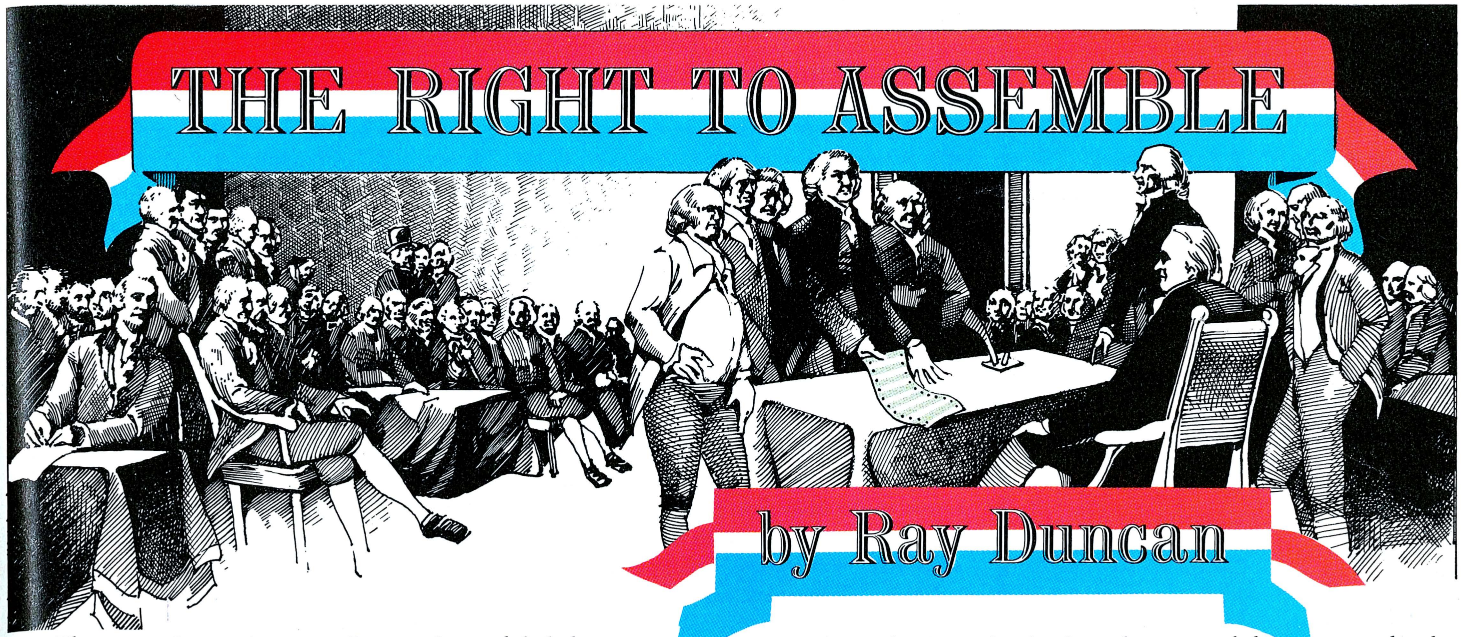
To order, phone (713) 531-6100 or write DEG software.

*Plus $3 postage and handling.

DEG software
(713) 531-6100
11999 Katy Freeway, Suite 150
Houston, Texas 77079

THE RIGHT TO ASSEMBLE

by Ray Duncan



This month's column will introduce some pieces of an assembly language program, review the operation of the Microsoft *Macro Assembler*, and discuss matters of assembly language programming style.

The input to the assembler is called the *source program*, and the file that's created by the assembler is called the *object program*. The source file consists of standard ASCII text, each line terminated by a carriage return-line feed sequence.

Although all the examples in the Microsoft manual use the Edlin line-oriented editor that is supplied with PC-DOS, you can also use almost any of the commonly available screen-oriented editors to write your program. Be careful to set the screen editor's mode so that no unusual control characters or formatting commands are embedded in the text file, as they will often cause the assembler to choke or give an error message. For example, if you're going to use *WordStar*, use it in nondocument mode; if you're using *Volkswriter*, set the right margin with a "/", so that *Volkswriter* doesn't do any right justification or put in end-of-paragraph symbols.

The source program is a mixture of comments, assembly language statements that are translated to executable machine code, and *pseudo-ops* (also known as assembler directives), which are commands that affect the operation of the assembler. Each line of the program consists of up to four fields in the following format:

name operation operand ;comment

The name field is usually optional. The name is made up by the programmer and gives a symbolic identity to a location in the source program. The assembler later associates this symbol with either a numeric value or an actual physical memory address in the object program, depending on whether the labeled statement contains code or data. In the Microsoft assembler, when a name is given to a memory location that contains executable code, it is called a label; applied to a data item, however, it is called a variable-name.

A name may contain any of the characters A through Z, the digits 0 through 9, and the following special characters: ? @ _ . $. There are only three restrictions on the formation of names. The first character cannot be a number; if a period is used, it must be the first character of the name; and only the first thirty-one characters of a name are significant.

The operand field contains a contracted, symbolic term called a *mnemonic*, which must usually match a predefined list built into the assembler. Mnemonics may be either assembler instructions that stand for specific machine instructions and are translated to executable code, or pseudo-ops. Pseudo-ops have diverse actions, such as defining data items, assigning portions of the program to

ES PAINTER

Only $45.00 from

E&S OFTWARE ERVICES

Create your own colorful paintings with ES PAINTER. Simple joystick control makes ES PAINTER easy for children to use.

Nine drawings ready for you to paint are provided on a picture disk with ES PAINTER. You can also save your own drawings on a blank disk.

Runs on the IBM PC with 64K. color display. color graphics card. game control adapter, and joystick.

To order send a check or money order to us for $45.00 plus $2.00 for shipping (MA residents add 5% sales tax).

For more information please call or write:

P.O. Box 238 • Bedford, MA 01730 • (617) 275-8534

PASCAL PROGRAMMERS

Blaise Computing's productivity tools allow the IBM Pascal programmer to develop reliable software taking full advantage of the capabilities of the IBM Personal Computer. All packages have a comprehensive Reference Manual, extensive examples and sample programs.

VIEW MANAGER $275
The screen support system of a mainframe for the IBM Personal Computer. Screens are constructed with a powerful Screen Painter supporting any attribute or color, and the screens are stored efficiently in a Screen Database. A Pascal unit supports access to screens and true block mode data capture and display. Demo diskette and User Manual $35.

TOOLS $125
Total string capability, complete screen access, keyboard handling, a graphics interface, access to all BIOS functions, and much more is provided in 45 procedures. Six units are carefully crafted and documented to give you the information and flexibility you need. Everyone using IBM Pascal should have TOOLS. User Manual $30.
SOURCE CODE INCLUDED

TOOLS 2 $100
The power of DOS 2.0 is supported using high level Pascal procedures. Program chaining, DOS internal and external command execution, use of all available memory, extended file handling, and other utilities are some of the features provided. A general DOS gate allows you to access any DOS function from Pascal. These are the extensions to Pascal you have been waiting for. User Manual $30.
SOURCE CODE INCLUDED

VIEW MANAGER, TOOLS and TOOLS 2 run on the IBM Personal Computer and the XT. TOOLS 2 requires DOS 2.0; TOOLS and VIEW MANAGER can be used with any version of DOS.

BCI BLAISE COMPUTING INC.

1609 ACTON STREET
BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA 94702
(415) 524-6603

different memory segments, controlling the format of the program listing, associating values with names, and defining the limits and attributes of a procedure. The important thing to remember about pseudo-op statements is that they have their effect at assembly time and do not usually result in the generation of executable code for the final program. There's one exception: The powerful pseudo-op called the *macro definition* can be used by the programmer to add new customized instruction mnemonics (temporarily) to the assembler.

The contents of the operand field depend on the type of instruction or pseudo-op found in the operation field. Usually the operand field consists of one or more operands separated by commas; each operand may be a simple or complex expression combining register names, numeric constants, and symbolic values or addresses.

When the operation is one of the microprocessor's arithmetic/logical instructions, the first part of the operand field is called the *destination* and the second part the *source*. For example, the instruction

```
ADD   AX,BX
```

means "add the contents of BX to the contents of AX, leaving the result in register AX." In this case, AX is termed the destination operand, and BX is the source operand.

Unlike some other processors (notably the PDP-11), the 8086 and 8088 won't let you specify memory locations as both the source and destination of a single instruction. So, to move a piece of data from one spot in memory to another, using the 8088, requires two instructions. First you have to load the data from memory into a register, and then, in a separate instruction, you can write the data out to your destination in memory.

The comment field begins with a semicolon and contains free text that is ignored by the assembler. Comments are used to document and explain the assembly code. If the first character in a line is a semicolon, the entire line is treated as a comment; multiple lines of comment text can also be delimited by the COMMENT pseudo-op.

The four parts of an assembly language statement (name, operation, operand, and comment) are separated from each other by at least one blank or tab character. The appearance and readability of your program is vastly improved if names always start in the first character of a line and if tabs are used to align fields vertically. Although the assembler allows your source code lines to be as long as 132 characters, in practice you should keep them much shorter or they will wrap around or be truncated on the program listing.

Using the Microsoft Assembler. The Microsoft *Macro Assembler* distribution disk comes with two versions of the assembler: Asm.com, which omits the macro definition capability and some of the pseudo-ops and requires only 64K of RAM, and Masm.com, which allows macro definitions and requires 96K.

The assembler can be invoked in two ways—either by supplying all the necessary parameters and file names on the command line (this is the more efficient way), or by entering the name of the assembler alone. If you don't enter the parameters on the command line, the assembler will prompt you for them.

When it begins a program translation, the assembler needs to know the following: the name of the file containing the source program, the filename for the object program it's to create, the destination of the program listing, and the filename for the information that will be processed later by the cross-reference utility. The source program filename is the only thing you absolutely must supply; the assembler can provide defaults for the other three parameters (the defaults are usually the same filename as the source file but with different extensions).

In general, the assembler recognizes five file types, which are signified by conventional abbreviations in the extension field of the file specifications, as shown in table 1.

Extension	File's Significance
.ASM	**Assembly language source program. This is the input to the assembler.**
.CRF	**A file created by the assembler that contains information to be processed later by the cross-reference utility.**
.LST	**The program listing created by the assembler. This includes memory locations, machine code, the original program text, and any error messages. This file may be spooled to the printer to produce a hard copy.**
.OBJ	**The machine code output from the assembler, which may be passed through the system linker to create an executable program file.**
.REF	**A printable listing produced by the cross-reference utility from information in the .CRF file.**

Table 1.

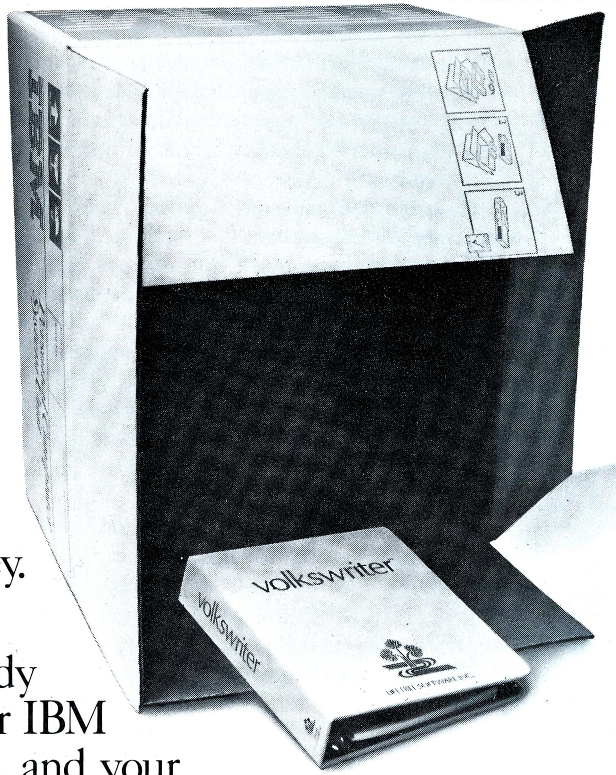
Sections 2 and 3 of the *Macro Assembler* manual provide very detailed examples of the operation of the assembler and the cross-

Volkswriter makes word processing so simple, you may forget to read the instructions.

You learn to use Volkswriter right on the screen of your IBM Personal Computer or compatible. The lesson is in plain English. And in minutes, you're a pro. Simple.

When you need extra help, you don't even have to ask. Volkswriter tells you which key to press to perform your chosen task. One task, one key. Simple.

Volkswriter is ready to use with 1-2-3, other IBM or compatible software, and your own. You just slip it in. Simple.



Volkswriter lets you use your choice of fifteen top printers. Without any reprogramming. Simple.

When you buy Volkswriter for $195, you're getting word processing that's faster, more responsive and simpler to use than others selling for over twice the price. Smart.

And in case you're still wondering which word processor is your wisest choice, the answer is simple.

volkswriter™
The word processor for your
IBM Personal Computer or compatible

LIFETREE SOFTWARE, INC.
brings the world within your reach.

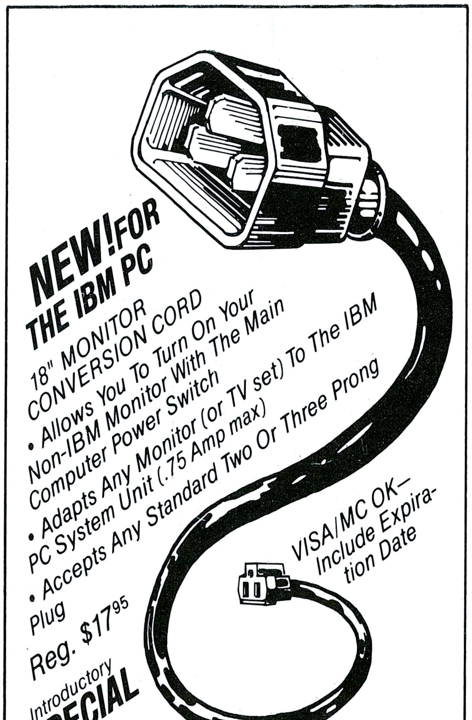
411 Pacific St., Suite 315
Monterey, CA 93940
(408) 373-4718

reference utility, so we won't duplicate that information here.

Assembly Language Programming Style. Because assembly language programs are by nature terse, complex, and machine-dependent, you must do everything humanly possible while writing such programs to make them easy to understand and modify later. Programmers commonly find that they comprehend everything about their program perfectly in the heat of creativity, but several months later the programs will have become "cold" and somewhat mysterious. They're apt to be even more mysterious to someone who wasn't involved in the original design. You can reduce such problems by following a number of simple rules.

First specify in the most excruciating detail the intent of the program, the legal input data, the actions to be taken if illegal inputs are detected, and the output or results to be generated by the program. Then write down a very general flow guide for the program. Here's an example of such a general flow guide:

1. **Open data file.**
2. **Read next record.**
3. **If end of file go to 6.**
4. **Print record.**
5. **Go to 2.**
6. **Close file.**
7. **Eject pages from printer and print statistics on terminal.**
8. **Exit to DOS.**


NEW! FOR THE IBM PC
18" MONITOR CONVERSION CORD
• Allows You To Turn On Your Non-IBM Monitor With The Main Computer Power Switch
• Adapts Any Monitor (or TV set) To The IBM PC System Unit (.75 Amp max)
• Accepts Any Standard Two Or Three Prong Plug
VISA/MC OK— Include Expiration Date
Reg. \$17^{95}
Introductory SPECIAL \$12^{95}
the IRON interface group
1-800-328-5727 Ext. 135B
3938 Meadowbrook Road, Minneapolis, MN 55426.
A Division of Dynalysis Corporation. Dealer inquiries invited.
For tech. info. and Minn. residents, call (612) 938-8697

You can rewrite this pseudo-English sketch over and over with increasing detail until every possible input, processing step, and output of the program has been accounted for and described. Then you can attack the coding problem with less fear that problems will crop up and force you to change your design in midstream.

It's considered good practice to make your program as modular as possible. After you finish the specification of your program, isolate as many functions as possible into procedures or subroutines with clearly defined inputs, outputs, and error handling. It's helpful to keep each subroutine short enough to fit on a single page of program listing; this seems to be as large a chunk of code as can be easily assimilated and comprehended as a single entity by someone trying to read your program.

Precede each subroutine with a comment header that spells out the registers or stack positions used for input values, the registers used to return results, and other registers that might be modified or destroyed and/or preserved during the subroutine's execution. Name all nonlocal variables that are references, and describe conditions under which their contents are changed. If you modify a subroutine after the program has once been completed, add a brief note in the comment header giving the date of and reason for the modification. The more information you build into such comment headers, the better, since documentation not included in the program text often gets lost or ignored or becomes out of date.

Add other comments in addition to the subroutine headers. It's an article of faith among assembly language programmers that you can never have too many comments in the code itself. Many companies consider one comment per line of code to be a *minimum*. Of course, the text of the comment needs to provide a meaningful explanation of the code, not just a restatement of the assembly language instruction. One too often sees comments such as

```
ADD BX,AX ;add register AX to BX
```

This is trivial and a waste of printer ribbon. It's much more helpful to write something like this:

```
ADD BX,AX ;add field length to buffer
           pointer
```

When you're commenting a conditional or unconditional jump or call, explain why the jump or call is being taken and what will happen at the other end. This spares readers the distraction of having to flip pages through the program.

Often in the short assembly language routines printed in popular magazines and books, you'll see a hodgepodge of label names, such as

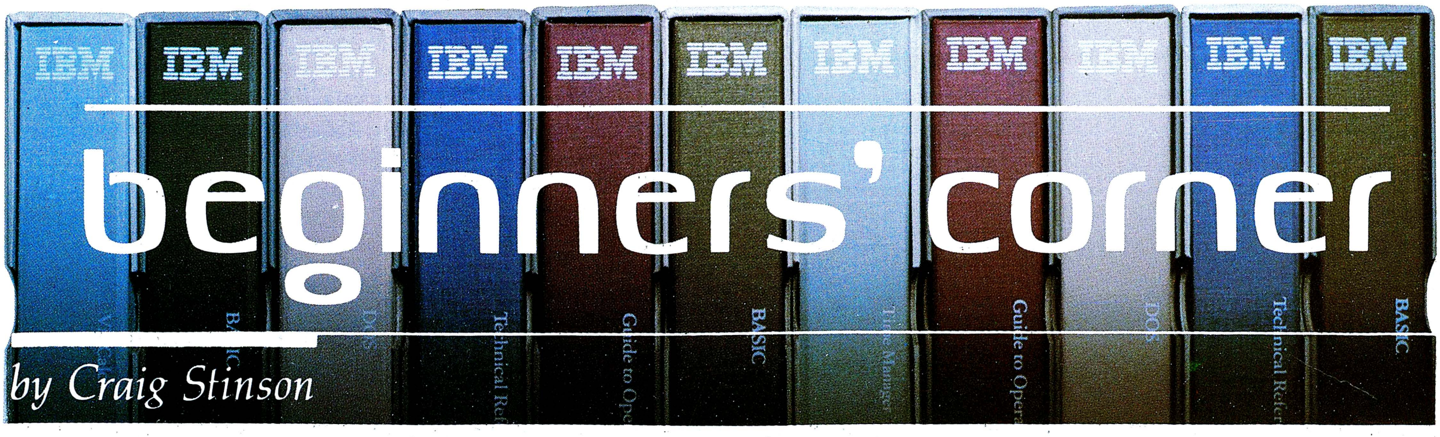
```
start:       push    ax
             .
             .
             .
loop:        .
             .
             .
no_good:     .
             .
             .
next_rec:    .
             .
             .
done:        pop     ax
             ret
```

This is tolerable for short programs but rapidly becomes grotesque and confusing in long assembly language efforts. Such labels carry no implicit positional information, and when you see a statement such as JMP DONE, you have to inspect the pages randomly to find the target label or look it up in the cross-reference listing.

It's a good idea to assign names in a systematic way, adopting a convention that distinguishes executable code labels from variable names. For example, the subsidiary code labels in the subroutine *read* might be assigned (in order) as *read1*, *read2*, *read3*, and so on, while local data variables could be given names like *reada*, *readb*, and *readc*. Other than giving the subroutine as a whole a meaningful name, you can rely on comments, rather than labels, to explain what's going on in your program. This approach prevents many common mishaps, such as collisions in label names and branches to locations that are not executable; it will save you a good deal of time in the debugging process.

Finally, the most important rule in assembly language programming is to keep it simple. Write your code with an eye to making it understandable a year after it's written. Avoid tricks of bit-twiddling. Eschew use of undocumented machine instructions or self-modifying code. Don't employ obscure instruction sequences to try to shave a few machine cycles.

Code that's clean, well organized, and easy to understand is usually fast as well—proving that function may follow form as well as vice versa. ▲



beginners' corner

by Craig Stinson

We left off last month in the middle of a discussion of control characters—their purpose in general and the specific functions commonly associated with certain of them. As you know, the function of any command or character depends upon the context in which it's issued. However, several of the control characters have been more or less universally assigned (by software and hardware developers) particular meanings, and we were in the midst of enumerating this group of quasi-standard codes. We'll finish that discussion this time, and along the way we'll digress to talk a bit about text and binary file types.

Control-M and control-J, you'll recall, usually signify carriage return and line feed respectively. Control-L sends your printer to its next "top-of-form" position, control-I performs horizontal tabs, and control-H is a backspacer.

That top-of-form feature, incidentally, can be a little confusing if you're new to computer printers. Generally what happens is that a printer assumes that it's at the top of a page when you turn it on, and then it keeps count of the number of times it advances a line. Paper comes in standard sixty-six-line forms, so when you send the printer a top-of-form code (or, alternatively, hit the printer's "form feed" button), it rolls the paper until some integral multiple of sixty-six lines has gone by. If you roll the paper manually, of course, the printer no longer knows where it is, and top-of-form codes no longer set you at the top of a page. The easiest remedy for that condition is to take the printer off line, move the paper one line at a time to the top of the next page (using the printer's linefeed button), then shut the power off and turn it back on.

So much for control codes that govern cursor or printhead position. Here are a few other semistandard control character definitions:

Control-C will usually halt a program running under a Basic interpreter. That is, it will halt programs running under most Basic interpreters. It will not however, halt programs running under the IBM Basic interpreter. IBM chose to use control-break (control-scroll lock) instead of control-C; probably they departed from tradition here so that you'd have to use two hands to interrupt a program.

PC-DOS, unlike IBM Basic, does use control-C as a breakout code. It also uses control-break, more or less synonymously with control-C. Either character may be used to abort the execution of a DOS command or a DOS batch file (if you interrupt a batch file, DOS will ask you to confirm the abort by typing Y). There appears to be one difference between control-C and control-break, in terms of their performance in DOS: If your keyboard type-ahead buffer is full (that is, if you've entered as many as fifteen keystrokes for DOS to process as soon as it's done with what it's doing), DOS will not recognize a control-C, but it will respond to a control-break.

Both control-C and control-break cause DOS to print ∧C on your screen. So, oddly, does control-2; but control-2 doesn't have any power to abort. It just puts a ∧C on the screen.

Control-G is a common symbol for beep, or bell. DOS won't do anything impressive with it, but if you type a control-G while

3 WAYS TO BUY A WORD PROCESSOR

1. **Casually.** Buy the first program whose name you remember. [After all, they're pretty much the same.]
2. **Carefully.** Study comparison charts and function lists until your eyes glass over and your jaw goes slack--it's called Feature Shock. [After all that, they still look pretty much the same on paper.]
3. **Confidently.** Walk in to a store and ask to try the **Palantir Word Processor** first. Do look at a couple of others, just so you'll feel good about your choice. [After all, what's important in a word processor is how it feels. You'll spend a lot of time using it. You might as well enjoy using it.]

We recommend method 3. If the store doesn't carry **Palantir** yet, ask them to call us at Designer Software.

If you insist on method 2, we'll be happy to send you our features list and reviews. They're outstanding.

Still sold on method 1? Then remember, it's Pal-an-TEER.

Palantir Word Processor, any way you choose.

Palantir Word Processor runs under CP/M, PCDOS, MSDOS, and equivalent operating systems.
Palantir Word Processor and Designer Software are trademarks of Palantir, Inc.

Designer Software
3400 Montrose Blvd., Suite 718
Houston, TX 77006
(713) 520-8221

you're in Basic, you'll sound the pc chime. Printing chr$(7) in Basic will do the same, as will, in all probability, lprinting chr$(7); most printers will beep when handed a control-G. IBM Basic's beep command does essentially the same thing as the more roundabout print chr$(7).

Control-X, in some contexts on some machines, is a way of cancelling an instruction before the issuance of a carriage return. IBM Basic and PC-DOS use the escape key for that function instead. The backslash character that appears on-screen when you cancel a DOS command by means of the escape key is a fairly standard symbol; systems that use control-X instead of escape for the cancellation of commands generally also signal cancellation by means of a backslash.

Speaking of escape, that's also a control character (its ASCII number is 27). Escape's most common function is to introduce a printer command. Most of the newer printers on the market have very extensive command repertoires to summon all their various font and size options; the majority of these commands consist of the escape character followed by one or more numbers.

Finally, there's control-Z. This character is generally used to signify the end of something—usually the end of a text file. A text file is an assemblage of information encoded by means of ASCII and (most likely) intended to be read eventually as human language. A letter you write in your word processor will be saved on disk as a text file; a program you write in Basic will not (not ordinarily, that is; IBM Basic does give you the option of saving programs as text files, however). Files are saved on disk in units of a definite size (called sectors). Since your file, however, will probably not fill an exact whole number of sectors, your software has to have some way of recognizing where your file does in fact stop, so that it doesn't bring in a lot of gibberish on the tail end of your document. Control-Z is normally used for this purpose.

The fact that control-Z is generally recognized as a termination symbol can be a nuisance in some contexts. There are, for example, terminal programs—designed to facilitate the sending and receiving of information over modems—that quit their transmission activities upon receipt of a control-Z. That's fine if you're sending ordinary text data. Programs, however, and other information not encoded by means of ASCII, may very well contain characters that look to the terminal software like control-Zs, and through misapprehension of these characters' purpose, your terminal software may fail to perform the way you'd like it to.

While we're on the subject of ASCII and text files, let's pause for a moment and consider what kind of information is and isn't likely to be stored by your computer in this manner.

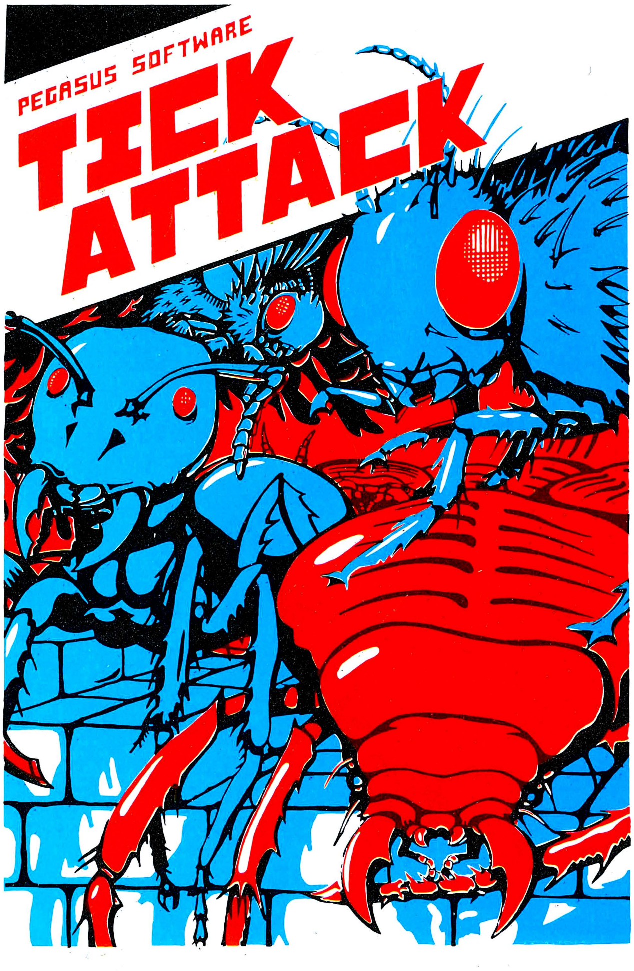
Basic programs, you already know, are not ordinarily stored in ASCII. They're usually stored in what's called a tokenized format. Tokenizing is a way of encoding entire words into single bytes of binary data. Since Basic has a very circumscribed vocabulary, it's possible for the Basic interpreter to encode each legal word in the language with a unique number and store it in a single memory address. That makes for economy on disk as well as in memory; economy in memory translates to speed of program execution, and Basic can use all the help it can get in that regard.

What about data contained within a Basic program? What, for example, if your program contains the statement Print "Enter your name, rank, and serial number"? Those words betweeen the quotes don't fit within the confines of Basic's vocabulary, so they don't get tokenized; they get stored in ASCII instead. So, if you inspect a Basic program by means of a program designed to read ASCII (for example, if you load a program file into your word processor or if you run the DOS type command on a program file), you'll probably see a mixture of unintelligible symbols and plain English.

We're talking here, of course, of programs meant to run under the Basic interpreter. Programs that have been compiled are another story. A compiler (of any language—Basic, Fortran, Pascal, whatever) translates high-level source code into machine level instructions, which are not ASCII. Data contained within such programs, however, may be stored in ASCII, so if you scanned through a compiled program you might still find something intelligible.

Compiled programs and programs written in assembly language are stored in what are sometimes called binary files. That means the files on disk are a bit-for-bit image of something that was once in memory—the file hasn't been translated in any way during its passage from memory to disk. The term binary in this context can be a little confusing. All computer storage—in memory or on disk—is binary. Here the term binary may be understood to mean non-ASCII and nontoken.

Some commercial programs store your data files in a non-ASCII format. This is not the most common practice, but you will run into it from time to time. Lotus Development's *1-2-3* is a good example. Try looking at a *1-2-3* worksheet file by means of the DOS type command and see for yourself. Programs that record your data in this nontypeable fashion probably do so either to conceal some aspect of the program's functioning from you or because they've found some way to compact your data and thereby



"TICK ATTACK"
an
Arcade Style
Machine Language
Game

Featuring Superior
Graphics
Animation
Sound

4 Skill Levels
25 Frames per Skill
Level

Minimum Requirements
IBM-PC*
1 Disk Drive
Color Graphics Card

Optional Joystick

$19.95

At your local computer store
or order direct from:

Pegasus Software
8525 N. Lamar Suite 254
Austin, TX 78753

Add $1.50 for shipping and
handling.

*IBM is a trademark of International
Business Machines.

improve execution speed and save disk space.

Fortunately such programs usually provide the means of translating your data into a standard ASCII form. *1-2-3*, for example, has a translate function to do just that. That seems only fair; it is your data, after all. It's one thing for a software manufacturer to encrypt program code, but you ought to be able to use your own data in any fashion—and with any program—you choose. It's a good idea to steer clear of software that doesn't give you this freedom.

Meanwhile, back to the control alphabet. There's a table on pages G2–G4 of the IBM Basic manual that sets forth the entire IBM extended ASCII code. You'll notice if you look at that table (or many similar standard ASCII tables) that the control characters have some strange two- and three-character names, like EOT, ETX, and DC4.

Some of these names you may recognize. For example, there's BEL for the character whose ASCII value is 7; if you assign ASCII number 1 to control-A and count forward through the alphabet you'll see that character 7 is control-G, which, as you know, is the standard bell ringer. Similarly you can verify that CR (carriage return, character 13) is control-M, LF (line feed, character 10) is control-J, ESC is character 27, or escape, and so on. What's meant by some of the other symbols is not so obvious.

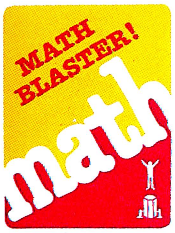
These cryptic names were established quite a while ago to identify the common functions of the control characters in the context of telecommunications. They're a quaint reminder of the fact that the ASCII code, including its control alphabet, has a long and distinguished history, reaching all the way back into times when computer awareness and literacy were still the private domain of the academically annointed. For the most part they have not found their way into the computer vulgate, although you may encounter them from time to time in manuals for modems or printers.

To the left of these shorthand symbols you'll see some happy faces, card symbols, and other odd characters. These are definitely not artifacts of ancient computer history. They're further extensions of the ASCII code made by IBM for your benefit. Since a number of the control characters have no coding function when sent to the video screen (or to most printers), IBM simply made them available as displayable characters.

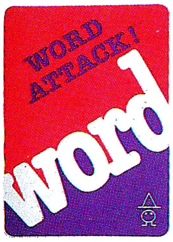
If you look further at this ASCII table, you'll see that there's no mention of control-break, control-numlock, control-alt-delete, or any of several other control-key combinations that you may know and love and use regularly. These characters will be among the topics discussed in next month's Beginners' Corner. ▲

INTRODUCING!

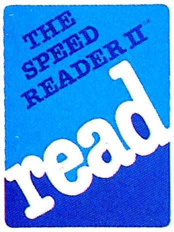
Educational Software That Works



2 disks $49.95



2 disks $49.95



2 disks $69.95

We believe that children have an innate curiosity ... a natural desire to learn, to discover, to understand. Our software was designed with this in mind. Even traditionally tedious subjects like math, reading, and vocabulary building are easily mastered. Why? Because our software makes children want to learn. And when they want to learn, the results are FANTASTIC!

We know our software WORKS because we developed and tested it in the classroom. Let our software WORK for your children too!

For the Apple and IBM PC.*

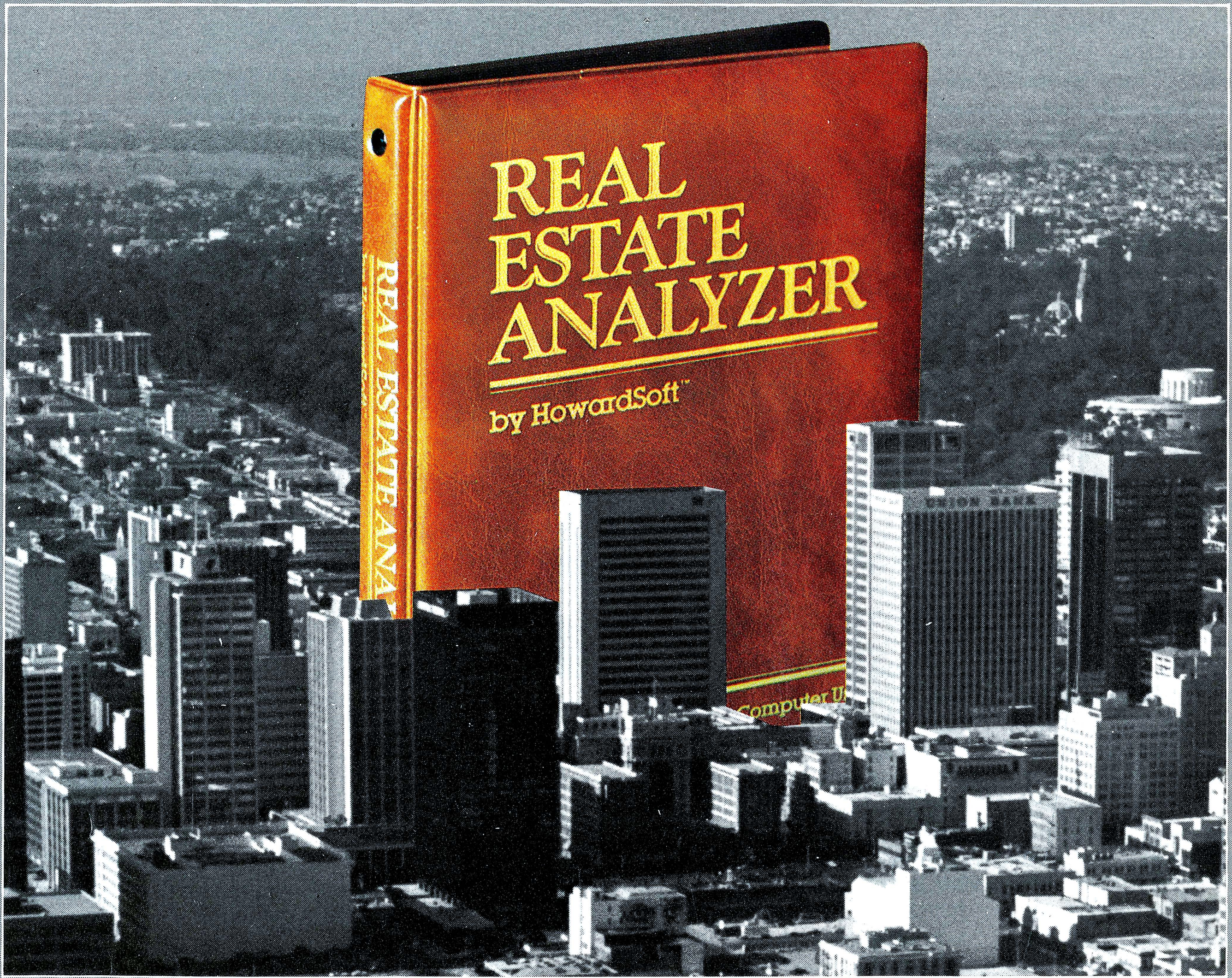
Ask your dealer.

davidson&associates
6069 Groveoak Place #12
Rancho Palos Verdes, CA 90274

MasterCard and Visa cardholders may call collect to order:
(213) 378-7826 / (213) 378-3995

*Apple and IBM are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. and International Business Machines, Corp.

THE BEST STANDS OUT



***PRACTICAL DECISION-MAKING**
aids buy/hold/sell decisions by projecting cash flow & profitability; computes ROI, IRR, ROE, and FMRR.

***REALISTIC SIMULATIONS**
models economy based on 5 separate components of inflation for realistic "what-if" studies

***UP-TO-DATE WITH CURRENT MARKET**
takes into account rent control, runaway inflation, money rates, creative financing, and complex lease packages

***UP-TO-DATE WITH TAX LAWS**
includes latest tax laws for depreciation (including ACRS), recapture, & capital gains

***PROFESSIONAL PRINTOUTS**
detailed 10-year tables of cash flow and ROI in personalized, paginated report format

***ERROR TOLERANT**
designed for ease of use by newcomers to computers; fully tested by real estate professionals

***INSTRUCTIVE MANUAL**
100-page book includes easy-to-follow examples and detailed instruction in investment analysis

The best investment clearly stands out when you use computer-aided decision-making with the Real Estate Analyzer by HowardSoft. Applying the latest techniques in investment analysis, this software produces detailed, objective projections of cash flow and overall investment return for any commercial or residential property. Even the most dissimilar deals are compared fairly because inflation rates, creative loan packages, complex depreciation schedules, involved leases, and complex tax laws are all taken into account.

for all Apple and IBM-PC Computers
at your local dealer

HSS **Howard Software Services**
for the SERIOUS Personal Computer User
8008 Girard Ave., Suite 310 | La Jolla, CA 92037 | (619) 454-0121

softalk presents the bestsellers

Very little has changed this month in the IBM Personal Computer software market. So in place of an analysis of month-to-month changes, here are some random reflections on the current bestsellers and their performance over the past year:

Boffo Box-Office Biggie: Lotus Development. In May *1-2-3* outsold the next two bestselling programs combined. *1-2-3* is so strong, Lotus could probably sell it to Timex-Sinclair owners at full price in its original configuration. Words fail even author Mitch Kapor, as you can tell by its title.

Artistic Achievement: *Microsoft Flight Simulator*. Product procurer Alan Boyd wanted this program to make a statement about sixteen-bit software, and has it ever! Best graphics since Walt Disney.

Best Performer in a Starring Role: *WordStar*. First and still the word processing choice of IBM pc users. This program has legs, as well as advanced features that only Mensa members can cope with.

Most Promising Newcomer: *Multiplan*. A comer, even in the face of *1-2-3*'s market blitz. Gives established leader Microsoft two of the four biggest sellers in May.

Best Translation: *dBase II*. If it was good on the Z-80, it's outstanding on the 8088. Kudos to Ashton-Tate for living up to the host computer. A database manager that actually lives up to that description.

Life Begins at Forty (months): *VisiCalc*. Stood atop the pc market for a long time and pulled *VisiFile* and *VisiTrend/VisiPlot* with it. Buffeted by newcomers *1-2-3* and *Multiplan*, the wily veteran lays in wait to make a comeback in concert with *VisiOn*.

Trail Blaiser: *PFS:File*. Currently the bestselling program written in Pascal and a strong competitor in this and other markets. Looks especially strong when pulling companion *PFS:Report* into the limelight.

Home Is Where the Pocketbook Is: *Home Accountant Plus*. Executive-caliber help in the personal finance department. A long-distance runner in what used to be a short-lived market.

Necessity and Motherhood: *Volkswriter*. If you don't like the software available, write your own. Camilo Wilson did, and *Volkswriter*'s a biggie.

If At First You Don't Succeed: *EasyWriter II*. Information Unlimited Software caught the brickbats for *EasyWriter 1*, but the company made that one good as well as introducing a second good one to the market. Greater love hath no company than to yield up both its first and second born.

Lone Stars Can Be Fun: *FriendlyWare*. Texans are supposed to know about oil and longhorns, but the folks at FriendlySoft specialize in fun. *FriendlyWare PC Arcade* is a current hot one and *FriendlyWare PC Intro Set* is a stayer.

It's a YoYo: *TIM III*. Innovative Software's flagship effort bounces around in sales, but superb customer support and timely updates keep this program in the forefront of databases.

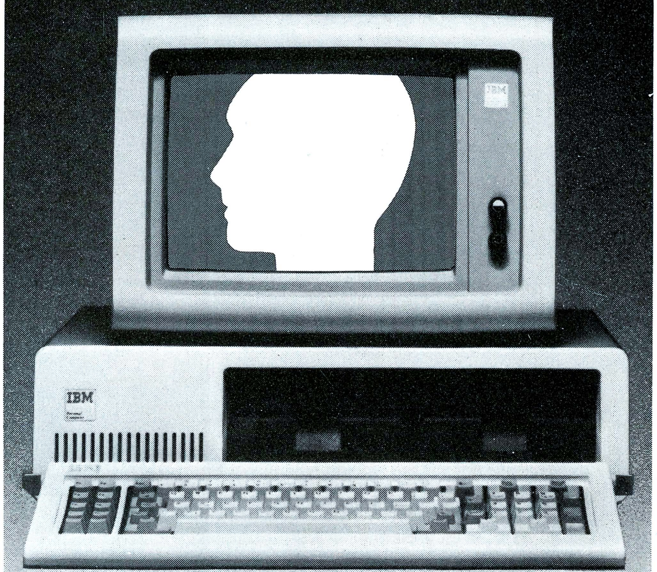
It's a Frog: *Frogger*. Lots of pc owners are willing to aid a hapless frog in romance and in crossing roads and rivers.

No, It's IBM: *Asynchronous Communications Support*. How does IBM's baby talk with the rest of the family? With this program, of course. Judging by sales, the pc has lots to say.

Ancient Age: *Typing Tutor*. Around since the dawn of time, or at least the seventh day, this one helps turn managers' clumsy digits into nimble fingers at the keyboard.

Never Say Die: *Word Plus/pc*. Perseverance is a virtue and the folks at Professional Software are mighty virtuous. Program finally getting its due after remarkable market indifference.

CAN YOURS DO THIS?



DISCOVER muLISP™

The Artificial Intelligence Package for Micros.

muLISP includes:
- An integrated environment for A.I. program development.
- A high performance, pseudo-code compiler and interpreter for the LISP programming language.
- A resident, screen-oriented LISP editor and debugging system.

Available for your IBM PC™, Apple™ II, and CP/M™ computers.

We also offer muMATH™, the symbolic math calculator for micros.

YES! I'd like to know more about muLISP and muMATH.
Please send me more information today.

Name ____________________

Address ____________________

City __________ State __________ Zip __________

Company ____________________

Position ____________________

VISA MASTERCARD

THE SOFT WAREHOUSE

P.O. Box 11174, Honolulu, HI 96828 • (808) 734-5801 (AfterNoon PST)

©1983 The Soft Warehouse

Everybody in Class Take Notes: *PC Tutor*, *The Instructor*, and *Cdex Training for VisiCalc*. Three programs that make life easier by teaching you about the pc or applications. Turn your computer into a sophisticated learning device.

Talk to the Animals: *Crosstalk*. And when your pc doesn't want to talk within the family, then what? It uses this one to communicate. The pc sprout seems to have a wagging tongue.

Phoenix: *SuperCalc II*. A rebirth of the CP/M bellwether, in new clothes and ready to regain market share. Don't count this one out.

By the Numbers: *BPI General Accounting*. Generally the choice of pc owners. A multifaceted finance tool.

Trials Build Character: *MBA*. First with an integrated package, but nearly eclipsed by *1-2-3*. This one hangs in there and yields sales stubbornly.

Adventurous: *Suspended*. Another Infocom text adventure. The delight of controlling six robots has captured the imagination of pc owners.

Rising Star: *InfoStar*. Lots of pc'ers grabbing onto this stellar database.

Long Shot: *Norton Utilities*. Major-league sales from a cottage company.

Big Blue's Finest: *Macro Assembler* and *Personal Editor*. *Macro Assembler*'s been around for a while, doing yeoman duty. *Personal Editor* is just catching on. ▲

the top thirty

This Month	Last Month	Index	
1.	1.	246.38	**1-2-3,** Mitch Kapor and Jonathan Sachs; Lotus Development
2.	2.	98.32	**Microsoft Flight Simulator,** Bruce Artwick; SubLogic
3.	3.	90.12	**WordStar;** MicroPro
4.	5.	76.66	**Multiplan,** Microsoft; IBM
5.	4.	43.31	**dBase II,** Wayne Ratcliff; Ashton-Tate
6.	6.	37.45	**VisiCalc,** Software Arts/Dan Bricklin and Robert Frankston; VisiCorp, IBM
7.	15.	35.11	**PFS:File,** John Page and D. D. Roberts; Software Publishing Corporation
8.	7.	32.77	**Home Accountant Plus,** Mike Farmer, Bob Schoenburg, Larry Grodin, and Steve Pollack; Continental Software
9.	9.	28.68	**Volkswriter,** Camilo Wilson; Lifetree
10.	13.	27.51	**EasyWriter II,** Basic Software Group; Information Unlimited Software
11.	12.	24.58	**FriendlyWare P.C. Arcade,** Michael D. Yaw, James J. Davis, Alan Vanchura, Jr., R. B. Roberts, and Anthony Chumak; FriendlySoft
12.	29.	21.07	**TIM III;** Innovative Software
13.	29.	19.90	**Frogger,** Olaf Lubeck; Sierra On-Line
14.	21.	19.31	**FriendlyWare P.C. Introductory Set,** Michael D. Yaw, James J. Davis, Frank Smith, Alan Vanchura, John Leatherwood, and Bruce W. Moore; FriendlySoft
15.	19.	18.14	**Asynchronous Communications Support 2.0;** IBM
	—	18.14	**Typing Tutor,** Michael Sierchio (Dick Ainsworth and Al Baker); IBM (Microsoft)
17.	—	17.56	**PFS:Report,** John Page; Software Publishing Corporation
18.	27.	16.97	**Word Plus-PC,** Andres Escallon; Professional Software
	13.	16.97	**PC Tutor,** Lora Meise and Rick Lane; Comprehensive Software Support
20.	16.	15.80	**The Instructor,** Jo-L Hendrickson; Individual Software
21.	8.	14.05	**Crosstalk;** Microstuf
	25.	14.05	**SuperCalc II;** Sorcim
	—	14.05	**General Accounting,** John Moss and Ken Debower; IBM (BPI)
24.	11.	13.46	**Cdex Training for VisiCalc,** Dr. Stephen C. Brandt; Cdex
25.	—	12.87	**MBA;** Context Management Systems
	—	12.87	**Macro Assembler,** Microsoft; IBM
27.	18.	12.29	**Suspended,** Infocom
	27.	12.29	**InfoStar;** MicroPro
	—	12.29	**Norton Utilities,** Peter Norton; Peter Norton Inc.
30.	—	11.70	**Personal Editor;** IBM

IBM-franchised retail stores representing approximately 5.85 percent of all sales of IBM and IBM-related products volunteered to participate in the poll.

Respondents were contacted early in June to ascertain their sales for the month of May.

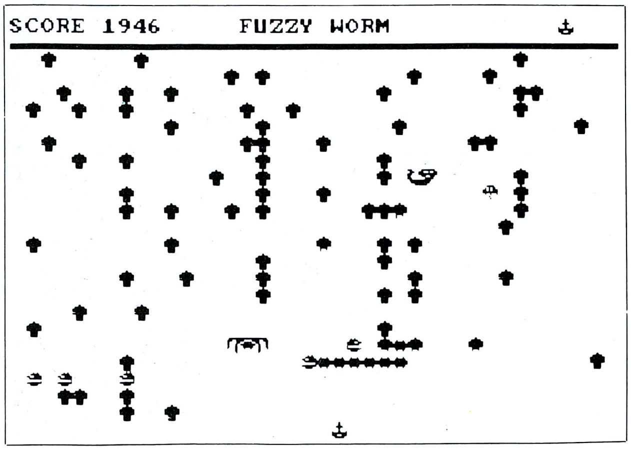
The only criterion for inclusion on the list was the number of units sold; such other criteria as quality of product, profitability to the computer store, and personal preference of the individual respondents were not considered.

Respondents in June represented every geographical area of the continental United States.

Results of the responses were tabulated using a formula that resulted in the index number to the left of the program name in the Top Thirty listing. The index number is an arbitrary measure of relative strength of the programs listed. Index numbers are correlative only to the month in which they are printed; readers cannot assume that an index rating of 50 in one month represents equivalent sales to an index number of 50 in another month.

Probability of statistical error is plus or minus 4.36 percent, which translates roughly into the theoretical possibility of a change of 4.71 points, plus or minus, in any index number.

FUZZY WORM $29.95



FUZZY WORM is an absolute must for everyone who enjoys fast action arcade games. The object of the game is to destroy all of the FUZZY WORMS while avoiding the DROPPERS and the deadly SPIDER. Bonus points can be earned by shooting the FIREBALLS which occasionally make their way onto the screen.

The game is loaded with features
- Extra SHOOTERS are awarded for high scores
- The sounds are fantastic and can be turned ON OFF during the game
- The TOP 10 scores are saved on the disk
- Each succeeding level gets faster and more challenging
- Works with all displays Monochrome, TV, B&W, Color, RGB
- Requires an IBM-PC with at least 64K memory and 1 disk drive

BOISE COMPUTER
2417 BANK DRIVE
SUITE 11
BOISE, IDAHO 83705

VISA

Telephone order line for Bank Card Sales
(208) 344-7202

You Wouldn't Go to Work Without Your Pants

Why Buy an IBM-PC Without FAST FACTS

Your IBM-PC is only half-ready for work if it doesn't have FAST FACTS, the executive's filing system. FAST FACTS, you see, makes full use of the IBM-PC's capability to handle information quickly and efficiently. No matter if you're a business executive or home executive, FAST FACTS can take care of your filing needs. And with its built-in *Report Writer*, FAST FACTS, makes it a snap to summarize selected portions of your files. What's more, FAST FACTS can share information with VISICALC®, 1-2-3™ and WordStar®. It's also priced to fit easily in your computer budget.

So don't purchase an IBM-PC that's only half-ready for work. Get FAST FACTS, the latest introduction of Innovative Software, developers of proven executive businessware for the IBM-PC. (Ask your dealer about T.I.M. III and FAST GRAPHS, two other fine products from Innovative Software.)

Innovative Software® developers of practical businessware for the executive.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542

Innovative Software's products are available at Computerlands®, Sears Business Centers, The Xerox Stores, Computer Marts, Entre' Computer Centers℠, CompuShops® and other quality dealers cdex™

Training for the IBM® Personal Computer Makes Using the IBM® PC Easy.

The IBM® PC is one of the best personal computers manufactured, but it still takes a considerable amount of time to learn how to use. That is . . . until now!

Cdex Training for the IBM® PC Personal Computer makes learning how to use the IBM® PC straight-forward and efficient. In an hour, you can master the material on the Cdex disks and begin using the IBM® PC.

It's tough to learn to use a computer from a book. That's why Cdex Training for the IBM® PC is contained on three disks and is:

Highly Interactive . . .
Creating a dialogue with you and serving as your personal tutor.

Completely Self-paced . . .
You set your own learning time.

Graphically Oriented . . .
Remember, a picture is worth a thousand words.

Usable Now and Later . . .
A clear and concise training and reference program for the first-time or experienced user.

Cdex Training for the IBM® PC and all other Cdex Training Programs are available at your local computer dealer. See how effective a Cdex Training Program can be; ask your dealer for a demonstration.

Cdex™ Training Programs are available for:

The VisiCalc® Program
The WordStar™ Program
The SuperCalc™/SuperCalc²™ Programs
The EasyWriter II™ Program

How to Use Your IBM® Personal Computer

How to Use Your Apple® *IIe* Personal Computer

How to Use Your Texas Instruments Professional Computer

Managing Your Business with the Lotus™ 1-2-3 Program

Managing Your Business with the MULTIPLAN™ Program

Managing Your Business with the VisiCalc® or VisiCalc® Advanced Version Program

Managing Your Business with the SuperCalc™ or SuperCalc²™ Program

The dBASE II® Program

IBM® PC DOS 2.0

DB Master™-Version 4

Cdex™ Training Programs We make it easy.

cdex™

Cdex Corporation
5050 El Camino Real
Los Altos, CA 94022
415 964 7600